LATIN LESSONS

SMITH WEBSON

310-37

A Roman Holiday, with Procession

SMITH'S LATIN LESSONS

REVISED BY

HAROLD G. THOMPSON

SUPERVISOR OF ANCIENT LANGUAGES
NEW YORK STATE DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION

ALLYN AND BACON

BOSTON NEW YORK CHICAGO
ATLANTA SAN FRANCISCO DALLAS

COPYRIGHT, 1929
BY ALLYN AND BACON

ATD

Norwood Press
J. S. Cushing Co. — Berwick & Smith Co.
Norwood, Mass., U.S.A.

PREFACE

THE 1928 edition of Smith's *Latin Lessons* retains the general plan of the previous edition. Changes have been made to accord with the most recent thought and research in the field of Latin, notably the Report of the Classical Investigation. The book makes use of many new plans and ideas which give added emphasis to the four fundamental aims of the previous edition. These aims are to make Latin interesting; to make the first-year study valuable for general culture; to minimize the difficulties of beginning Latin; to prepare thoroughly for the second-year work.

To provide more effectively for the accomplishment of the first two objectives, collateral reading in English has been frequently introduced, based upon the manners and customs and daily life of the Romans. Thus the Romans become a living people and Rome a real city. Connected Latin readings describing interesting events in myths, in Roman history, and in the lives of real Romans occur in almost every lesson after the pupil is well started. Special care has been taken to select readings that will teach proper social attitudes for the boy and girl to-day — honor, patriotism, obedience to authority, respect for law, modesty, and frugality. Derivation work in connection with every vocabulary emphasizes the debt of English to Latin, and in addition calls attention to many special words the history and development of which are unusually interesting. Carefully selected illustrations of real classical value, with descriptions in English attached,

promote culture as well as interest. Eight of the illustrations are in colors.

To minimize still further the difficulties of beginning Latin, rules are emphasized only when necessary to explain a departure from the construction that the English would lead the pupil to expect. Specific constructions with certain words are noted in the vocabularies, instead of in a general rule with many exceptions. The all too prevalent unfamiliarity with English grammar has been recognized and proper provision has been made to supply the needed knowledge. Grammar is taught from the standpoint of similarity to English usage wherever possible. Mastery of fundamentals is made possible by postponing many of the more difficult words, inflections, and constructions to a later part of the book; chief among these are the subjunctive forms and constructions, which occur in the last part of the book so that they can be omitted from the first year's work if desired.

In providing for differences in individual pupils and in different classes, the teacher will find ample material for drill and for reading; from this a judicious selection can be made according to the need. The material provided in Lessons I–XXXV and in Lessons XXXVI–LXVI covers the topics commonly assigned to the first and second half years respectively; but teachers will often find it possible to go further, and for their use the additional lessons, among them the subjunctive, have been included in the latter part of the book as supplementary material. These later lessons present most of the work recommended by the Classical Report for the third half year.

To prepare thoroughly for the reading that must be done in the second year, the Story of Perseus has been included. The Story of Ulysses, also included, may well be used in the

second half year. Much of this story is simple, quite within the powers of pupils at that stage of the work. The more difficult expressions are translated in the notes; such additional help as may be needed, for the time being, can easily be supplied by the teacher. The pupil learns to read by reading; a wealth of interesting connected reading is available here for that purpose. Definite suggestions in the Introduction tell the pupil how to attack this Latin reading successfully.

In short, this revision of *Elementary Latin* aims at greater interest and broader social and cultural value, together with more thorough mastery of minimum essentials and increased ability to read and understand Latin.

Special thanks are due Professor Charles Knapp of Barnard College for helpful suggestions and for scholarly reading of the proofs.

H. G. T.

ALBANY, N. Y.
July 17, 1928

CONTENTS

LESSON		PAGE
	Introduction	xv
I.	The Value of Latin	1
II.	The Latin Cases	4
III.	First Declension	8
IV.	Present Indicative	11
V.	Direct Object	14
	Arēna Rōmāna. *Reading Lesson*	16
VI.	Review	17
	Rome	18
VII.	Second Declension	20
	Lēgātus. *Reading Lesson*	22
VIII.	Conjugation of *Sum*	23
	Gallia. *Reading Lesson*	24
IX.	Second Declension, Neuter	25
	Bella in Galliā. *Reading Lesson*	27
	The Roman House	28
X.	Adjectives	30
	Oppugnātiō Oppidī. *Reading Lesson*	32
XI.	Review	34
	Via Appia. *Reading Lesson*	36
XII.	Principal Parts of Verbs	38
	The Roman House (*Continued*)	40
XIII.	Imperfect and Future Tenses. Indirect Object	41
	Rēgīna Galliae. *Reading Lesson*	44
XIV.	Adjectives (*Continued*). Ablative of Means	46
	Servus Malus. *Reading Lesson*	49

LESSON		PAGE
XV.	Conjugation of *Sum* (*Continued*)	50
	The Roman House (*Continued*)	52
XVI.	Perfect Tense	54
	Triumphus Rōmānus. *Reading Lesson*	56
XVII.	Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses	57
	Lūdī Rōmānī. *Reading Lesson*	58
XVIII.	Expressions of Place	60
	Carolus et Pōma. *Reading Lesson*	63
	The Roman House (*Continued*)	63
XIX.	Review	65
	Appius Claudius. *Reading Lesson*	67
XX.	Third Declension	69
	Pyrrhus. *Reading Lesson*	71
XXI.	Third Declension (*Continued*)	73
	Servus Fīdus. *Reading Lesson*	75
	Early Education of Roman Children	77
XXII.	Second Conjugation	80
	Coriolānus. *Reading Lesson*	82
XXIII.	Third Declension (*Continued*)	84
	Carthāgō. *Reading Lesson*	86
XXIV.	Review	88
	Spartacus et Gladiātōrēs. *Reading Lesson*	90
	Roman Schools	91
XXV.	Passive Voice	94
	Androclus et Leō. *Reading Lesson*	98
XXVI.	Second Conjugation, Passive	99
	Dux Mīlitibus. *Reading Lesson*	101
XXVII.	Third Conjugation	103
	Cincinnātus. *Reading Lesson*	105
	The Dress of Roman Men	106
XXVIII.	Apposition. Parsing	108
	Mūcius Scaevola. *Reading Lesson*	110

LESSON PAGE

XXIX. THIRD CONJUGATION 112
Puer et Pōma. *Reading Lesson* 113

XXX. THIRD CONJUGATION, PASSIVE 116
The Dress of Roman Men (*Continued*) . . 118

XXXI. REVIEW 120
Rēx Galliae. *Reading Lesson* 121

XXXII. FORMATION OF ADVERBS 123
Horātius Cocles. *Reading Lesson* . . . 126
The Dress of Roman Women 127

XXXIII. RELATIVE PRONOUN 129
Brūtus et Ōrāculum. *Reading Lesson* . . . 131

XXXIV. THE DEMONSTRATIVE *Is* 133
Mettius Curtius. *Reading Lesson* . . . 135

XXXV. REVIEW 137
The Dress of Roman Women (*Continued*) . . 138

XXXVI. THIRD DECLENSION. I-STEMS 140
Helvētiī. *Reading Lesson* 142

XXXVII. THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES 144
Auxilium Amīcī. *Reading Lesson.* . . . 146

XXXVIII. THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES (*Continued*) . . 148
The Food of the Romans 149

XXXIX. REVIEW 151

XL. *Possum.* COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE . . . 153
Populus Rōmānus. *Reading Lesson* . . . 155

XLI. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES 157
L. Iūnius Brūtus. *Reading Lesson* . . . 159
Roman Meals 160

XLII. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES IN *-er* AND *-lis* . 162
L. Iūnius Brūtus (*Continued*). *Reading Lesson* . 164

XLIII. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES 165
A Practical Joke. *Reading Lesson* . . . 168

XLIV. FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS . . 169
T. Mānlius Torquātus. *Reading Lesson* . . 171
The Roman Dinner 172

LESSON		PAGE
XLV.	Review	174
XLVI.	Fourth Declension. Genitive of the Whole	176
	The Mouse-Tower, I. *Reading Lesson*	179
XLVII.	Fifth Declension	180
	The Mouse-Tower, II. *Reading Lesson*	182
XLVIII.	Fourth Conjugation	184
	Roman Slaves	186
	C. Fabricius. *Reading Lesson*	187
XLIX.	Fourth Conjugation, Passive	188
	Cornēliae Ōrnāmenta. *Reading Lesson*	190
L.	Review	192
	Forum Rōmānum. *Reading Lesson*	194
	Roman Slaves (*Continued*)	194
LI.	Infinitives and Their Uses	197
	Obsidiō Trōiae. *Reading Lesson*	201
LII.	*Ūnus, Duo,* and *Trēs*	203
	The Weather-Wise Donkey. *Reading Lesson*	205
LIII.	Third Conjugation Verbs in *-iō*	207
	Librī Sibyllīnī. *Reading Lesson*	208
	The Roman Family	209
LIV.	Numerals	211
	A Breach of Discipline. *Reading Lesson*	213
LV.	Prepositions and Compounds	215
	Orgetorīx. *Reading Lesson*	217
LVI.	Review	218
	Nāsīca et Ennius. *Reading Lesson*	221
LVII.	Interrogative Pronouns	222
	The Beginnings of Rome. *Reading Lesson*	224
LVIII.	Personal Pronouns	226
	Romulus and Remus. *Reading Lesson*	228
LIX.	Possessive Adjectives	230
	Ānserēs Sacrī. *Reading Lesson*	232
	The Roman Family (*Continued*)	234

LESSON PAGE

LX. Review 236
The Death of Amulius. *Reading Lesson* . . 237

LXI. Demonstrative Pronouns 238
Decius, Cōnsul Rōmānus. *Reading Lesson* . . 240

LXII. Participles 242
The Naming of Rome. *Reading Lesson* . . . 245

LXIII. Ablative of Description 247
Cloelia. *Reading Lesson* 249
Police and Fire Protection 250

LXIV. Dative with Intransitive Verbs 251
Atalanta. *Reading Lesson* 252

LXV. Word Formation 254
The Reign of Romulus. *Reading Lesson* . . 256

LXVI. Review 258
The Appearance of Roman Streets 259

LXVII. Adjectives of Peculiar Declension . . . 262
Deucaliōn et Pyrrha. *Reading Lesson* . . . 264

LXVIII. Subjunctive Clauses of Purpose 266
Numa and Tullus. *Reading Lesson* . . . 269

LXIX. Sequence of Tenses 270

LXX. Indirect Discourse (*Continued*). Indirect Question 274
The Fourth and Fifth Kings. *Reading Lesson* . 276

LXXI. Review 277
The Public Games 279

LXXII. Deponent Verbs 282
Servius Tullius. *Reading Lesson* 284

LXXIII. Subjunctive of Result 285
The Public Games (*Continued*) 287

LXXIV. *Ferō* and Its Compounds 289
Tarquin the Proud. *Reading Lesson* . . . 291

LXXV. Indefinite Pronouns 292

LESSON PAGE

LXXVI. Review 295
Tarpeia. *Reading Lesson* 297
The Public Games (*Continued*) 298

LXXVII. Ablative Absolute 299
Domus Rōmāna. *Reading Lesson* . . . 302

LXXVIII. Subjunctive with *Cum* 304

LXXIX. Conditional Sentences 307
Robert, King of Scots, I. *Reading Lesson* . 311

LXXX. Review 313
Robert, King of Scots, II. *Reading Lesson* . 315
The Roman Theater 315

LXXXI. *Eō*. Dative with Intransitive Verbs . . 318

LXXXII. *Volō, Nōlō, Mālō*. Dative of Purpose . . 320
Virginēs Vestālēs. *Reading Lesson* . . . 322

LXXXIII. Semi-Deponents. Dative of Possessor . . 324
The First Punic War. *Reading Lesson* . . 326

LXXXIV. Gerund and Gerundive 327
The Capture of Regulus. *Reading Lesson* . 330

LXXXV. Future Active and Passive Participles with *Sum* 331

LXXXVI. Review of Cases 335

LXXXVII. Review of Cases 337

LXXXVIII. Review of Subjunctives 339
The Heroism of Regulus. *Reading Lesson* . 340

Supplementary Reading
The Story of Perseus 343
The Story of Ulysses 347

Songs 359

Appendix 367

Vocabulary 1

Index 73

ILLUSTRATIONS

A Roman Holiday, with Procession (*colored*) . . *Frontispiece*

PAGE

A Roman Amphitheater in Gaul 6
Relief from the Arch of Titus at Rome 8
Pugnant 12
Rōma Aeterna 14
Arēna Rōmāna 16
Roman Ruins at Ostia 19
Equī 21
Lēgātus 22
The Colosseum Seen Through the Arch of Titus 26
A Roman House in Pompeii 28
Storming a Town 32
Via Appia 36
The Pyramid of Cestius and Porta San Paolo (*colored*) *facing* 40
The Dying Gaul 43
Barbarī 47
Roman Sword and Javelin 50
A Roman House 52
A Roman School 59
The Claudian Aqueduct 67
Pyrrhus 72
The Roman Forum 76
Romans Boxing 78
A Roman Triumph (*colored*) . . . . . *facing* 82
View of Carthage 87
The Colosseum 90
Discipline in a Roman School 92
Mīlitēs Rōmānī 102
Agrī Rōmānī 105
A Roman Wearing the Toga 107
Equī Rōmānī 109
Hunter and Dog 114
A Roman Boy with Cap and Tunic 118
The Appian Way (*colored*) . . . . . *facing* 122
Porta Rōmāna 125

PAGE
Etruscan Tombs at Orvieto 126
Roman Matron Wearing the Palla 128
Ruins of the Temple of Apollo at Delphi, Greece . . . 131
Forum Rōmānum 135
A Roman Woman 139
The Rhine 143
Nāvēs Rōmānae 146
Moenia Rōmāna 155
Pōns Rōmānus 159
A Roman Street Scene (*colored*) . . . . . *facing* 164
A Roman Camp 167
Domus Rōmāna 177
The Mouse-Tower 183
Cornelia and Her Jewels 190
Forum Rōmānum 195
Nāvēs Rōmānae 204
Along the Appian Way (*colored*) . . . . . *facing* 208
Roman Writing Materials 213
A Roman House in Pompeii 220
Mars 224
The Famous Capitoline Wolf 229
A Roman Altar 237
The Colosseum 243
The Palatine Hill (*colored*) . . . . . *facing* 250
Forum Rōmānum 257
A Street in Pompeii 260
The Amphitheater at Verona 279
A Vestal Virgin 280
Gladiator Killing a Tiger 287
The Tarpeian Rock 297
A Pompeian Mosaic 302
A Roman House (*colored*) . . . . . *facing* 302
Roman Theater at Pompeii 316
Site of the Temple of Vesta 322
Excavations at Carthage 326
The Citadel and Harbor at Carthage 330
Julius Caesar 333
View from the Citadel of Carthage 340
Perseus 343
Medūsa 344
Perseus and the Gorgon's Head 345
The Ruins of Troy 347
Mount Aetna in Sicily 350
Ulysses 351
Laocoön 353

INTRODUCTION

I. The Romans and the Latin Language. — Latin is the language of the ancient Romans. Rome was located in a district named **La'tium,** whose inhabitants were called **Latī'nī.** From the name of these people we obtain the word "Latin."

Rome is now the capital of Italy but for centuries it was the chief city of the world. Because the Romans were so proud of their city, and were so sure of its future, they called it "the Eternal City." It is situated in the central part of Italy on the river Tiber, a few miles from where the river empties into the sea.

Legends tell us that Rome was founded seven hundred and fifty-three years before the birth of Christ.

Originally a small settlement sprang up on the site of the present city, probably because a shallow ford made it easy to cross the river there. This favorable location for trading purposes and the possibility of fortifying the neighboring hills for protection against hostile neighbors helped this little settlement to grow and flourish.

Many legends are told about the founding of Rome and its early history. The story of the early Romans, their hardships and their virtues in the days when their republic was fighting its way to greatness and world-mastery are comparable with those of the founders of our own republic. Like the early American colonists the Romans furnish splendid examples of courage, self-sacrifice, humility, patriotism and honor.

Eventually Rome became the greatest and most powerful city in the ancient world. She ruled all the lands about the Mediterranean Sea, together with the western part of modern Europe. Through all these conquered nations she spread her manners and customs, her laws, her government and

her language. Even after the Romans lost their power and the conquered peoples revolted and won their freedom, the Roman language and civilization remained.

Down through the ages until today the civilization of Rome has been handed on to us in our government, our laws, our architecture, our professions, and, above all else, in our language. The Latin language is not "dead." It lives in over 50% of our English words; it lives in the languages of France, Spain, Italy, Portugal, and Roumania. "Roumanian" is only another form of "Roman," and these last-named languages are called "Romance" languages because of their descent from the language of Rome.

II. The Latin Alphabet. — Not only have English and Latin many similar words and constructions, but the Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that it has no **j** and no **w**. **I** is both a vowel and a consonant; it is generally a consonant between vowels, and at the beginning of a word before a vowel: **eius, iubeō.** As a consonant it takes the place of *j*.

(*a*) The vowels are **a, e, i, o, u, y.**
(*b*) The diphthongs are **ae, au, oe, ei, eu, ui.**
(*c*) The double consonants are **x** (= *cs* or *gs*) and **z** (= *ds*).

III. Vowels. — English vowels have various sounds, as *a* in *fate, fat, far,* and *fall.* But Latin vowel sounds are simple and uniform.

The *quantity* of a vowel refers to the length of time given to its pronunciation. A vowel is either long or short. About twice as much time should be given to the pronunciation of a long vowel as to a short one. A long vowel is marked ¯. The sounds are as follows:

LONG	SHORT
ā as in *father:* **lātus.**	**a** as in *idea:* **ab.**
ē as in *they:* **lātē.**	**e** as in *net:* **et.**
ī as in *machine:* **dīcō.**	**i** as in *cigar:* **in.**
ō as in *old:* **mōns.**	**o** as in *wholly:* **rosa.**
ū as in *rude:* **mūrus.**	**u** as in *put:* **sub.**

IV. Diphthongs. — Latin diphthongs are easy to learn. They are always long and each has always the same sound, so that a pupil does not have the trouble a foreigner has in learning to pronounce English *hear, heard, head,* and *heart.*

ae like *ai* in *aisle:* **prae.**
au like *ow* in *how:* **laudō.**
oe like *oi* in *oil:* **proelium.**
ei like *ei* in *reign:* **hei.**
eu like *eu* in *feud:* **neuter.**
ui like *we:* **cui** (kwe).

V. Consonants. — Latin consonants, except *v*, *x*, and *i*, are pronounced like the corresponding consonants in English. Some English consonants have more than one sound, but each Latin consonant has only one.

c like *c* in *can:* **castra.**
g like *g* in *get:* **gerō.**
s like *s* in *yes:* **cōnsul.**
t like *t* in *tin:* **tertia.** (Never soft like *sh.*)
v like *w* in *went:* **ventus.**
x like *x* in *vex:* **rēxit.**
z like *dz* in *adze:* **zōna.**
i (consonant) has the sound of *y* in *yet:* **iubeō.**
ch has the sound of *k:* **pulcher.**
bs and **bt** have the sound of *ps* and *pt:* **urbs, obtineō.**
gu like *gu* in *sanguine:* **lingua.**
ph like *ph* in *philosophy:* **pharetra.**
th like *th* in *thin:* **theātrum.**

VI. Quantity of Vowels. — The quantity of vowels should be learned by observation. A few rules, however, are given:

(*a*) A vowel is long before **nf, ns, nx,** and **nct;** also when it is the result of contraction.
(*b*) A vowel is short before another vowel or **h,** and before **nd** or **nt.**

VII. Syllables. — There are as many syllables in Latin words as there are vowels or diphthongs, **mī'les, lau'dant, puel'la, per-suā'dē.**

In the division of words into syllables,

(*a*) A single consonant goes with the following vowel, as in **fe'rō.**
(*b*) If two or more consonants are between two vowels, the division is *generally* made before the last consonant, as **ma gis'ter, temp'tō.**

Exceptions: (1) If the last consonant of the group is **h, l,** or **r,** the last two consonants go with the following vowel: **pa'tria, tri-um'phō, pū'bli-cus.** (2) Compound words are divided into their original parts: **pēn-īn'su-la, dē-scen'dō.** (3) **x** goes with the preceding vowel: **dūx'ī.**

VIII. Quantity of Syllables. — A syllable is long or short, according to the time required in pronouncing it.

(*a*) A syllable is long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong.
(*b*) A syllable is generally long if it contains a short vowel followed by two or more consonants or by *x* or *z*.
(*c*) Otherwise a syllable is short.

IX. Accent. — Unlike English, Latin accent is very simple and uniform.

(*a*) Words of two syllables are always accented on the first, as **tu'ba.**
(*b*) Words of more than two syllables are accented on the next to the last (the penult) if that is a long syllable, otherwise on the one before the penult (the antepenult): **Rō mā nō'rum, in'co lae.**

X. Gender.[1] — The gender of the great majority of Latin nouns is determined by the ending of the nominative singular. The rules for the gender of such nouns are given with the various declensions. The following general rules, however, may be a help to pupils in determining gender:

(*a*) Names of males, rivers, winds, and months are masculine.
(*b*) Names of females, trees, and countries are feminine.
(*c*) Indeclinable nouns, infinitives, phrases, and clauses used as nouns are neuter.
(*d*) The gender of most other nouns is determined by the ending of the nominative singular. See §§ 8, 32, 45, etc.

XI. Practice in Reading Latin. — The ability to read and pronounce Latin correctly is gained at first largely by imitation of the teacher. Listen carefully as the teacher reads the Latin below. After she has read it through, pronounce each word carefully after her. Then try each sentence as she reads it again for you.

---

[1] Compare § 633.

"Latin" lingua antīquōrum Rōmānōrum est. Urbs Rōma in patriā Rōmānōrum erat. Incolae huius patriae Latīnī appellātī sunt. Rōma in rīpīs flūminis Tiberis erat. Prīmō urbs parva sed tandem maxima erat. Antīquīs temporibus virī fortissimī erant et auxiliō hōrum virōrum Rōma saepe servāta est.

XII. Practice in Division into Syllables and Accent. — Using the rules in VII, VIII, and IX regarding quantity of syllables and accent, practice dividing the Latin words in the preceding story into syllables, indicating the place of the accent in each word; for example, **Rō mā nō′rum.**

XIII. How to Read and Translate Latin. — When we *read* Latin, we obtain the idea that is expressed in the Latin sentence. When we *translate* Latin, we express the thought of the Latin in English.

The first aim of the pupil should be to be able to read and understand what the Latin sentence means. To do this he must take in the meaning of each word and word-group — and so gradually, of the whole sentence — just as it stands in the Latin order. The meaning and use of Latin words are determined by their *endings*, the meaning and use of English words by their *position* in the sentence. For example, *The man sees the boy* has its meaning entirely changed if the order of words is different, as *The boy sees the man.* In Latin, **Vir videt puerum, Vir puerum videt, Puerum vir videt,** all mean "The man sees the boy." Change of position in Latin merely changes the emphasis. The Latin endings show whether the word is subject or object in the sentences just given. Here **Puer-um** is the object. If it were the subject, it would be **puer.** The position of the word in the sentence does not alter the case as it does in English.

Ability to read and translate Latin depends on a knowledge of three factors, (1) vocabulary (knowing what the word means), (2) inflections (knowing the endings and different

forms of the words), (3) syntax (knowing the grammatical rules that determine the different forms of words used in the sentence). These three items *must* be thoroughly mastered if the pupil is to be able to read and translate Latin well.

To learn to read Latin you must practice constantly. First read the passage through several times, preferably aloud. Take each word or word-group in order. As you do this, try to think of the basic meaning of each Latin word. Then from its form and ending try to reason out its probable relation to the other words. Its position in the sentence will often help you, as will also the context, that is, a knowledge of what has preceded.

Don't try to do too much at once. The first time you read the Latin, concentrate on the root meanings of the words. This will tell you what it's all about. On the second reading, pick out familiar endings. This will tell you who did what, and sometimes how, when, and where. When you come to a word which you do not know, study it carefully to see if it does not resemble some English word which will give an idea of its meaning. This meaning must be in keeping with the meaning of that part of the sentence which is already known. The sentence must make sense; if the meaning you give to the word in question does not make sense, it is wrong. Never look up a word until you have tried every other way to find its meaning.

When the meaning of the sentence is clear, translate it, that is, express the thought of the Latin exactly in clear and natural English. Whether an oral or a written translation is required, it *must* be in correct and natural English. Try to avoid the usual poor translation which results from replacing the Latin word with an English equivalent without regard to the natural way of expressing the thought in English.

The practice of reading the Latin with attention to proper emphasis and grouping of words should be continued through-

out the year. At first it may take considerable time, but eventually it will amply repay the effort, as it will create a "feeling" for the language. If you cannot read it aloud in your study periods, pronounce it to yourself inaudibly. But always read it aloud when you are alone.

LATIN LESSONS

LESSON I

THE VALUE OF LATIN

Labor omnia vincit. — Work wins everything.[1]

1. English and Latin. — More than half our English words are derived, directly or indirectly, from the Latin. Some, like *area*, *terror*, and *animal*, come directly with no change, that is, they are exactly alike in both languages. Others, like *cause*, *form*, *note*, closely resemble their Latin originals (*causa*, *fōrma*, *nota*). Still others come indirectly, like *people*, *space*, *peace* (*populus*, *spatium*, *pāx*).

Many English words which are commonly misspelled offer no difficulty to students of Latin. A few examples are: *library*, from the Latin noun *librārium*; *laboratory*, from *labōrātōrium*; *committee*, from *com-mittere*; *supersede*, from *super-sedēre*; *accommodate*, from *accommodātus*, the perfect passive participle of *accommodāre*; and *separate*, from the perfect passive participle of *sēparāre*.

2. An English-Latin Letter. — The value of Latin is well shown in the following letter, written by a business man — a firm believer in Latin — to his son. The son was registering for his first year work in high school while his father was away on a business trip.

"I am sorry that some of your friends have tried to persuade you not to take Latin. Your mother and I had always

[1] Literally: *Labor conquers all things.* The motto of Oklahoma.

thought that there was no question about it. I realize that we should have explained just why we felt that way, and, although late, I am going to tell you now.

"Latin will be a great help to you in everything you study. In bookkeeping you won't confuse *debit* and *credit*, if you know their derivation. In mathematics you will know the meaning of *equation* and *integer*. In biology you will know what *auditory* and *duct* mean. In all the sciences you will find that most of the technical words come from Latin (or Greek).

"But it is in English — the most everyday, practical study of all — that you will find Latin most useful. You will not misspell words like *separate*, *laudable*, *accommodate*, and so on, if you know Latin. Often without knowing it you will be using Latin words constantly in fully half the words you speak or write, like *animal*, *radius*, and *conductor*, which are exactly the same in both languages, and like *timid*, *longitude*, and *vehicle*, which have only slightly different endings. In your reading, a knowledge of Latin will often explain troublesome quotations and many references to mythology.

"Your French teacher will like it much better if you have studied Latin first, for French comes from Latin and it will make her work and yours much easier.

"Lastly, Latin will make you a careful and accurate student. You will learn to reason things out and to express yourself in clear and correct English. You will read at first hand the literature of some of the world's greatest writers, which is so much better than reading it second hand in English, and you will obtain a background of culture which every successful man should have.

"I hope you will take Latin, son. It isn't the easiest subject in high school, but it will make you a better student

and a more cultured man. You will probably need it for college, too. Try it and see if I am not right.

"P. S. Here's an illustration of what I meant about Latin helping you with your English. You see a poster:

High School *versus* Academy

Game called at 3 *P.M.*

Do you know the italicized words and letters? In the game only *bona fide* students are allowed to play; others are unfit to represent your *Alma Mater*. You go to the game and pay your money (which has *e pluribus unum* stamped on it) to the manager, who is *ex officio* gate-keeper. Your team beats the others (or *vice versa*) and the captain makes an *ex tempore* speech. You pretend the other team is dead, and you hold a *post mortem* celebration, parading the streets with a big banner with a *facsimile* of the rival school marked *Requiescat in pace*.

"If the principal opposes athletics, you may argue *pro* and *con(tra)*, urging a *referendum* to the students. A single *lapsus linguae* may spoil your case *in toto*. You may use an effective *a priori* argument, or say there is *prima facie* evidence that football is a good thing; but if you fail to make your point, things remain *in statu quo*, the principal gives his *ultimatum*, and you make your *exit*.

"And so I could go on *ad infinitum* not only about football, but about *fiat* money, *ad valorem* tariff duties, *ex post facto* laws, and *ante bellum* days, when the *per capita* income of the country was less *per annum* than it is now. But you ought to be studying your Latin, instead of reading about it; so I will stop."

LESSON II

THE LATIN CASES

Tempus fugit. — Time flies.

3. English and Latin Inflection. — The perfect passive participle of *dēfendō* (defend) is *dēfēnsus*, that of *scrībō* (write) is *scrīptus*. From this we see that the perfect passive participle in Latin is not formed as in English by prefixing words like *having been*. Instead, the form is changed merely by varying the ending.

This change of form or ending is called *inflection*.[1] The inflection of verbs is called *conjugation;* that of nouns, pronouns, and adjectives is called *declension*. Accurate knowledge of these inflections is of great practical value in mastering English spelling and is essential to intelligent reading of Latin.

4. Declension. — In English the form of a noun changes only in the possessive and in the plural. The objective is like the nominative, and the same form is used with a preposition to show other relations.

In Latin a noun usually changes its form not only for the possessive and the plural, but for the objective case as well. And many uses which in English are indicated by prepositions are shown in Latin by changing the form of the noun.

These changes in the form are made by adding certain endings to a permanent part of the word which we call the *base*. To *decline* a noun is to give all its different forms in a

[1] English has some inflection, as *I, me, mine; love, loved, loving;* but there is so little that English is usually called an *uninflected* language.

regular order. These forms taken together are called the *declension* of a noun.

5. The Cases. — In declining Latin nouns we may give six cases: the **nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, vocative,** and **ablative.** The table below shows their uses and their English equivalents.

Latin case	Use in the sentence	English case
Nominative	Subject	Nominative
Genitive	To denote possession and other relations	Possessive or the objective with *of*
Dative	Indirect object	The objective with *to* or *for*
Accusative	Direct object	Objective
Vocative	Case of address	Nominative independent
Ablative	Adverbial phrases, often with a preposition	The objective with *from; with* or *by; in, on,* or *at*

These cases correspond in general to the English, except the ablative, which expresses three fundamental ideas: (1) that of *separation* (English *from*); (2) that of *association* (English *with*) or *means* (English *by*); and (3) that of *place where* (English *in, on,* or *at*), all expressed in English by the objective case after the preposition.

6. English Grammar. — The following definitions are convenient for reference:

Sentence: a group of words which *must* have a subject and a predicate and make complete sense.

Subject: the person or thing (noun or pronoun) which the sentence is talking about.

Verb: a word showing some kind of action, or thinking, or being (I *am* hungry).

Direct object: a word receiving the action of the verb.

Indirect object: a word showing to whom something is given, shown, told, etc., although the "to" is often omitted in English.

Appositive: a word used to limit or define a preceding noun or pronoun and meaning the same person or thing, as, "My friend, *John.*"

Caution. — In English the predicate noun or adjective is nearly always in the nominative case, as "He was elected *governor.*"

7. *Tell what case is used in Latin to express each noun in the following sentences:*

1. Students, see the illustration in this lesson. 2. It is an amphitheater of the Romans in Gaul. 3. In the games there they gave splendid prizes to the victors. 4. Caesar, a Roman, was an enemy of the Gauls. 5. He showed the Gauls new ideas in warfare. 6. Part of Gaul is now called France.

A Roman Amphitheater in Gaul.

Gaul and the Gauls are often mentioned in these sentences and throughout the book. The reason is that the story most often read in second year Latin is Caesar's account of his conquest of Gaul. In this story Caesar tells of his battles, many of which were fought on the same fields as battles of the World War; he, too, had a battle of the Marne. And the trenches with which he fortified his camps were like the modern trenches, and the helmets the Roman soldiers wore resembled the "tin hats" of our American soldiers.

After Caesar had conquered Gaul, the Romans "modernized" it: they built roads, bridges, theaters, arenas, temples, ornamental arches, and waterworks. One of their amphitheaters is shown in the picture above. It is at Nîmes in southern France.

Nîmes was an American "leave area" during the World War and American soldiers played football and basketball in this amphitheater, the interior of which is shown on page 16.

7. There are many other evidences of the Romans' occupation of Gaul. 8. We can see temples and aqueducts which were built by the Romans. 9. They brought stone from the nearby mountains. 10. The stone was carved by skilled workmen, with chisels. 11. On the building in the illustration there are beautiful carved decorations.

LESSON III

FIRST DECLENSION

Experientia docet. — Experience is the best teacher.[1]

8. First declension nouns end in **-a** in the nominative singular and in **-ae** in the genitive singular. They are feminine, except a few which are obviously masculine from their meaning: as **agri'cola,** *farmer.*

RELIEF FROM THE ARCH OF TITUS AT ROME.

This shows the famous seven-branched candle-stick from Jerusalem, and two trumpets.

Tu'ba, fem., *a trumpet.* BASE, **tub-**

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
CASES			TERMINATIONS			TERMINATIONS
Nom.	tu'**ba,**	*a trumpet*	**a**	tu'**bae,**	*trumpets*	**ae**
Gen.	tu'**bae,**	*of a trumpet*	**ae**	tub**ā'rum,**	*of trumpets*	**ārum**
Dat.	tu'**bae,**	*to a trumpet*	**ae**	tu'**bīs,**	*to trumpets*	**īs**
Acc.	tu'**bam,**	*a trumpet*	**am**	tu'**bās,**	*trumpets*	**ās**
Abl.	tu'**bā,**	*by* or *with a trumpet*	**ā**	tu'**bīs,**	*by* or *with trumpets*	**īs**

[1] Literally: *Experience teaches.*

(*a*) The vocative case is omitted in the paradigms, since it is generally like the nominative.

(*b*) The base is obtained by dropping the termination (ending) of the genitive singular: **tubae,** base **tub-.**

(*c*) There is no word in Latin for *a, an,* or *the.* **Tuba** may be translated by *trumpet, a trumpet, the trumpet,* according to the sense.

(*d*) Note that the ablative singular differs from the nominative singular in having a long ending. Note also which forms are identical.

(*e*) To learn the declension pronounce all the forms with their meanings, being careful of the accent. Write the forms in order, marking all long vowels. Write the declension from memory and then give it orally. Work for accuracy and speed.

9. VOCABULARY

agri'cola, -ae,[1] m., *farmer.*
a'qua, -ae, f., *water.*
fē'mina, -ae, f., *woman.*
Gal'lia, Gal'liae, f., *Gaul.*
lit'tera, -ae, f., *letter* (of the alphabet) ; pl., *letter, epistle,* or *letters.*
nātū'ra, -ae, f., *nature.*
poē'ta, -ae, m., *poet.*
prōvin'cia, prōvin'ciae, f., *province.*
puel'la, -ae, f., *girl.*
ter'ra, -ae, f., *earth, land.*
tu'ba, -ae, f., *trumpet* (the straight Roman war trumpet).
vī'ta, -ae, f., *life.*

(*a*) Decline each of these nouns like **tuba.** Avoid accenting the last syllable.

(*b*) Answer with complete statements:

1. What are the *five* important cases of a Latin *noun?*
2. Which case is usually omitted from the declension and why?
3. What part of a Latin word is most important and why?
4. What is the rule for gender in the first declension?
5. What two cases (and only two) have identical endings?
6. What three cases have identical endings?

10. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

aquatic terrestrial literature feminine

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence. The definition should always name the part of speech of the word being defined.

---

[1] In the vocabularies the genitive singular ending is placed after the nominative to indicate the declension. "m." signifies masculine gender, "f." feminine.

EXERCISES

11. *Pronounce, give case and number, and translate:* [1]

1. In Galliā. 2. Litterīs (*ablative*). 3. Terra. 4. Prōvinciae (*three ways*). 5. Agricolārum. 6. Fēminam. 7. Terrā. 8. Tubārum. 9. Puellae (*three ways*). 10. Vītās. 11. Poētīs (*dative*).

12. *Give case and number and translate; mark all long vowels in written work:*

1. To the farmers. 2. Of Gaul. 3. For the provinces. 4. The earth (*acc.*). 5. The girls (*acc.*). 6. Of the water. 7. For the women. 8. With a trumpet. 9. By a letter. 10. Of the poets. 11. By nature.

---

[1] Remember what was said in § 8, *c*.

LESSON IV

PRESENT INDICATIVE

Excelsior. — Onward and upward.[1]

13. The **person** and **number** of a Latin verb are shown by its ending, which is called its **personal ending.** On account of these personal endings the pronoun subject of a verb is expressed only when it shows emphasis or contrast.

The following are the regular personal endings of the active voice:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
First Person.	**-ō** *or* **-m,**	*I.*	**-mus,**	*we.*
Second Person.	**-s,**	*thou, you.*	**-tis,**	*you.*
Third Person.	**-t,**	*he, she, it.*	**-nt,**	*they.*

14. **Por'tō,** *I carry*

Present Tense

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
1. por'tō,	*I carry.*	1. portā'mus,	*we carry.*
2. por'tās,	*you carry.*	2. portā'tis,	*you carry.*
3. por'tat,	*he carries.*	3. por'tant,	*they carry.*

(*a*) Latin has no progressive or emphatic forms. **Portō** means *I carry, I am carrying,* or *I do carry.*

15. **VOCABULARY**

a'mō, *I love.*
lau'dō, *I praise.*
oc'cupō, *I seize.*
pa'rō, *I prepare.*
por'tō, *I carry.*
pug'nō, *I fight.*
spec'tō, *I look at.*
vo'cō, *I call.*

Conjugate each of these verbs like **portō.**

[1] The motto of New York State and the title of a poem by Longfellow. Literally: *Higher.*

16. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

laud vocation portable pugnacious

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence. The definition must name the part of speech of the word being defined.

RULES

17. Subject. — The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case.

The girl loves. **Puella amat.**
The farmers are fighting. **Agricolae pugnant.**

18. Agreement of Verb. — A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

The girls are praising. **Puellae laudant.**
The farmer is fighting. **Agricola pugnat.**

PUGNANT.
This Roman mosaic was found at Trier in Germany.

EXERCISES

19. (*a*) *Divide into syllables, indicate the accent, and pronounce:*

occupāmus fēminās portātis agricolārum

Give the construction[1] *of each noun and translate:*

(*b*) 1. Laudā**mus.** 2. Vocā**tis.** 3. Spectā**s.** 4. Parō**.** 5. Occupa**nt.**

(*c*) 1. Puella amat. 2. Agricola**e** pugna**nt.** 3. Spectā**mus.** 4. Fēmina**e** lauda**nt.** 5. Parā**tis.**

20. *Translate, marking all long vowels:*

(*a*) 1. You (*plural*) fight. 2. They praise. 3. We do love. 4. I am carrying. 5. The farmers are calling.

(*b*) 1. You (*singular*) seize. 2. The woman is calling. 3. We are preparing. 4. The girls are praising. 5. You (*plural*) are looking.

---

[1] By *construction* we mean the case and the rule for the case.

LESSON V

DIRECT OBJECT

Roma aeterna. — Rome the eternal.

21. Direct Object. — The direct object of a verb is in the accusative case.

I am carrying water. **Aquam portō.**
We love poets. **Poētās amāmus.**

RŌMA AETERNA.

This view of Rome is taken from the Pope's Palace, the Vatican, beside St. Peter's Church. In the distance are the Alban Mountains.

22. VOCABULARY

amīci'tia, -ae, f., *friendship.*
fortū'na, -ae, f., *chance, fortune.*
lin'gua, -ae, f., *tongue, language.*
memo'ria, memo'riae, f., *memory.*
nōn, adv., *not.*
pa'tria, pa'triae, f., *country, native land.*
sil'va, -ae, f., *forest, woods.*
vi'a, -ae, f., *way, road.*
mēn'sa, -ae, f., *table.*
dīligen'tia, -ae, f., *diligence, care.*

Decline each noun like **tuba.**

23. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

memorial patriot linguist silvan viaduct

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES

24. *Divide into syllables, accent, give the construction of each noun, and translate:* [1]

(*a*) 1. Agricola patriam amat. 2. Puellae aquam portant. 3. Tubās nōn portāmus. 4. Fēminae silvam amant. 5. Agricolās vocās. 6. Dīligentiam agricolae laudant.

(*b*) 1. Viā. 2. Memoriam. 3. Linguis 4. Litterās parāmus. 5. Prōvinciam occupātis. 6. Puella mēnsam parat.

25. *Translate, marking the long vowels:*

(*a*) 1. They praise (their) [2] native land. 2. I am carrying the trumpet. 3. A girl is preparing the table. 4. The farmers seize the province. 5. You (*sing.*) are preparing the road.

(*b*) 1. The women do not carry water. 2. The farmer is calling the girls. 3. He does not praise the farmer. 4. You (*plu.*) are seizing Gaul. 5. We love diligence.

26. Latin Questions. — When asking a question which may be answered either by *yes* or by *no*, append **-ne** to the emphatic word, usually the first word. The accent is on the syllable before the **-ne.**

Is the girl calling the farmer? **Vocatne puella agricolam?**
No. **Puella agricolam nōn vocat.**

Note that Latin has no words corresponding exactly to *yes* and *no*. *Yes* is usually expressed by an affirmative statement; *no* by a negative statement, usually with **nōn,** *not.*

---

[1] Notice that the usual Latin order is subject, direct object, verb.

[2] The words *his, her, their* in parentheses are not to be translated. Other words in parentheses are helps to translation.

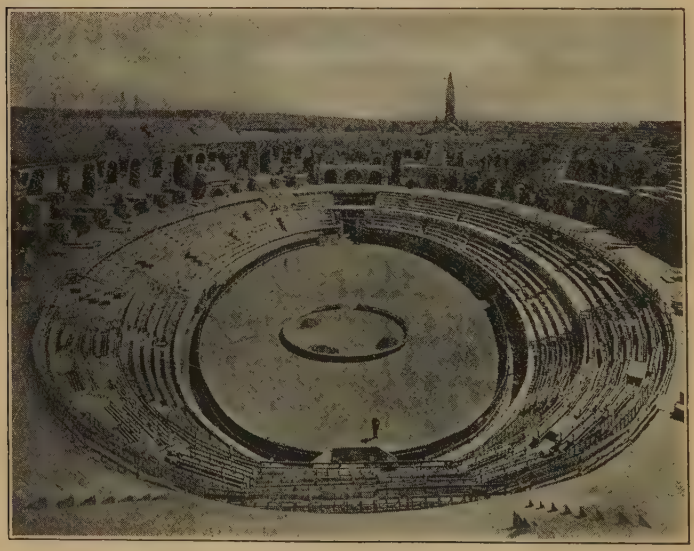
ORAL EXERCISE

27. *Answer these questions in Latin, taking care to change the person of the verb when necessary.*

1. Portās'ne litterās? 2. Occupās'ne prōvinciam? 3. Amās'ne patriam? 4. Puellās'ne laudātis? 5. Vocō'ne fēminam?

Arēna[1] Rōmāna

Ecce pictūra. Arēna[2] est (*it is*). Arēna in Galliā est. Gallia patria[2] agricolārum est. Agricolae Galliam amant.



Arēna Rōmāna.
This is the interior of the amphitheater pictured on page 6.

Rōmānī (*the Romans*) Galliam occupant. Viās parant. Agricolae nōn pugnant. Gallia prōvincia[2] Rōmānōrum[3] est. Silvās et agricolās Galliae amāmus.

---

[1] New words will be found in the General Vocabulary.
[2] Predicate nominative (§ 41). [3] *of the Romans.*

LESSON VI

REVIEW

Facta, non verba. — Deeds, not words.

28. Derivatives. — (*a*) Write all the English words you can that seem to be derived from the following:

aqua	portō	pugnō	terra
vocō	fēmina	laudō	spectō
lingua	silva	vīta	patria

(*b*) With the aid of an unabridged English dictionary, study carefully the form and meaning of the following and compare with the Latin originals:

sinister dexterity salute alumnus virtue

29. Word Drill. — Give the nominative singular, genitive singular, and gender of the Latin words for the following:

girl	Gaul	native land	farmer
poet	nature	forest	trumpet

The following words of the first declension have the same form in both Latin and English: **alumna, antenna, arena, formula, inertia, larva, nebula, vertebra.** Look up the meanings of all that you do not know.

30. Form Drill. — 1. Decline **terra.** 2. Conjugate **occupō** in the present tense. 3. Write the names of the six Latin cases and the corresponding English case or usage for each. 4. Write the personal endings of the first conjugation and the equivalent English pronouns.

31. Questions. — 1. What gender are nouns of the first declension? 2. Give the rule for the agreement of a verb

with its subject. 3. Give the rule for the direct object. 4. What are the personal endings of a verb? 5. In what three ways may **pugnant** be translated? 6. What two cases are alike in the singular of the first declension? 7. What two are alike in the plural? 8. What three cases are alike in the first declension? 9. How are the following pronounced[1]: **ē, e, ae, ī, i, ā, a, v, c?** 10. How is the number of syllables[2] in a Latin word determined? 11. Divide into syllables, indicate the accent, and pronounce the following: **virī, amīcīs, lēgātum, nūntius, via, vocō, oppidum, parvus.**

Rome

You may have heard the saying "All roads lead to Rome." In the days of her greatest power Rome was the seat not only of government but also of art, trade, and learning. It was the gathering place of all the Mediterranean world. Rome was literally the goal of all travelers by sea and by land.

Augustus, the ruler of Rome at the time of Christ's birth, boasted that he found Rome a city of brick and left it a city of marble. Later emperors each added some glorious stone monument to themselves: a temple, a triumphal arch, an amphitheater, or great public building. While the Romans lacked the Greek appreciation of beauty, they nevertheless built magnificent structures of great splendor, remarkable for their size and their massive, enduring architecture. The Romans perfected the arch, so necessary in building operations for supporting great weights, and were the first extensive users of concrete.

The city of Rome is on the river Tiber, about fifteen miles from the sea. The harbor at the mouth of the Tiber was

---

[1] See Introduction, III, IV, and V. [2] See Introduction, VII.

named "Ostia," which means "River Mouth." Rome's situation near this seaport, yet sufficiently far inland to be protected from the Mediterranean pirates of early days, was one of the causes of her growth. Another means of security

ROMAN RUINS AT OSTIA.

were the " seven hills " which were fortified in the early days of the city. Far to the north were the Alps, for years a barrier against hostile nations. Thus protected, Rome grew to be a city of one million or more people nearly two thousand years ago.

LESSON VII

SECOND DECLENSION

Errare humanum est. — To err is human.

32. There are **five declensions** of Latin nouns. They are distinguished by the ending of the *genitive singular*. **Second declension** nouns end in **-ī** in the genitive singular. They are usually *masculine* if they end in **-us, -er,** or **-ir** in the nominative singular.

33. **Amī'cus,** m., *friend.* **Pu'er,** m., *boy.* **A'ger,** m., *field.*

	Base, **amīc-**	Base, **puer-**	Base, **agr-**	
		SINGULAR		TERMINATIONS
Nom.	amī'**cus**	pu'**er**	a'**ger**	**us, er**
Gen.	amī'**cī**	pu'er**ī**	a'gr**ī**	**ī**
Dat.	amī'c**ō**	pu'er**ō**	a'gr**ō**	**ō**
Acc.	amī'c**um**	pu'er**um**	a'gr**um**	**um**
Abl.	amī'c**ō**	pu'er**ō**	a'gr**ō**	**ō**
		PLURAL		
Nom.	amī'c**ī**	pu'er**ī**	a'gr**ī**	**ī**
Gen.	amīc**ō'rum**	puer**ō'rum**	agr**ō'rum**	**ōrum**
Dat.	amī'c**īs**	pu'er**īs**	a'gr**īs**	**īs**
Acc.	amī'c**ōs**	pu'er**ōs**	a'gr**ōs**	**ōs**
Abl.	amī'c**īs**	pu'er**īs**	a'gr**īs**	**īs**

(*a*) Nouns of the second declension ending in **-ius** and **-ium** regularly form their genitive singular in **-ī** instead of in **-iī.** The accent rests on the penult, the next to the last syllable.

(*b*) **Fīlius** and proper nouns ending in **-ius** form their vocative singular in **-ī** instead of in **-ie.**

(*c*) Nouns of the second declension ending in **-us** like **amīcus** have the vocative singular in **-e,** as **amīce,** *O friend!*

(*d*) With the exception of the two cases mentioned in (*b*) and (*c*), the vocative in Latin is usually like the nominative in both singular and plural. For that reason, only the exceptions need to be learned and the vocative is not given in the paradigms for this or any other declension.

34. VOCABULARY

a'ger, a'grī, m., *field.*
amī'cus, -ī, m., *friend.*
e'quus, e'quī, m., *horse.*
nūn'tius, nūn'tī, m., *messenger.*
lēgā'tus, -ī, m., *lieutenant ; ambassador.*
pu'er, pu'erī, m., *boy.*
vir, vi'rī, m., *man.*

35. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

legate	puerile	amicable
equine	virile	agrarian

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

36. Use of the Genitive Case. — The genitive case is used in Latin to limit or define a noun. It may usually be translated into English by "of." When the genitive denotes possession, either "of" or the apostrophe with "s" may be used to translate it.

The horse of the man or *The man's horse.* **Equus virī.**

A friend of the ambassador or *The ambassador's friend.* **Amīcus lēgātī.**

Equi.

A Roman relief showing the Emperor Marcus Aurelius in his chariot.

EXERCISES

37. *Translate, and give the construction of each noun:*

(*a*) 1. Lēgātī Galliam occupant. 2. Amīcum agricolae amat. 3. Equōs virī vocāmus. 4. Puer tubam lēgātī portat. 5. Nūntius fēminās vocat.

(*b*) 1. Amīcī agricolārum viam occupant. 2. Linguam prōvinciae nōn laudāmus. 3. Amīcus puellae silvās spectat. 4. Fēmina memoriam puellārum laudat. 5. Agrōs virōrum occupātis.

38. *Translate, giving special attention to noun and verb endings:*

(*a*) 1. We seize the provinces. 2. The girl praises the boy's memory. 3. The farmers are calling the women's friends. 4. The messenger calls the man's friend. 5. The boy praises the lieutenant's horse.

(*b*) 1. The girl is praising the man's country. 2. You (*sing.*) love the forests of Gaul. 3. I am praising the boy's friend. 4. The farmers love the land. 5. The boys do not carry the lieutenants' trumpets.

ORAL AND DICTATION EXERCISE

LĒGĀTUS.

39. (*a*) *Answer these questions in Latin, taking care to change the person of the verb when necessary:*

1. Pugnāsne? 2. Vocantne amīcōs? 3. Laudāsne equum virī? 4. Spectāsne silvās? 5. Lēgātīne pugnant?

(*b*) *Read aloud in the Latin and translate:*

LĒGĀTUS

In pictūrā lēgātum spectātis. Lēgātus in Galliā pugnat. Agricolās Galliae nōn amat sed agrōs Galliae laudat. Nūntius amīcus lēgātī est et tubam portat. Nūntius in pictūrā nōn est. Puellās et fēminās in pictūrā nōn spectātis. Puellae aquam portant et fēminae in casīs labōrant.

LESSON VIII

CONJUGATION OF *SUM*

Ave, Maria.—Hail, Mary.

40. Sum, *I am,* is an irregular verb.

Present Tense

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. **sum,** *I am.*	**sumus,** *we are.*
2. **es,** *thou art (you are).*	**estis,** *you are.*
3. **est,** *he, she, it is.*	**sunt,** *they are.*

41. Predicate Nominative. — A noun or pronoun used in the predicate with an intransitive verb is in the nominative case. This is called the *predicate nominative.* In this lesson it is used exactly as in English.

Adjectives are used in this construction exactly as nouns and pronouns are used, and are called *predicate adjectives.*

The boy is a messenger. **Puer nūntius est.**
The girl's friend is a lieutenant. **Amīcus puellae lēgātus est.**

EXERCISES

42. *Read the Latin and translate:*

(*a*) 1. Sumus amīcī. 2. Nūntiī agricolae sunt. 3. Amīcus puerī lēgātus est. 4. Vir nūntius est. 5. Estis fēminae.

(*b*) 1. Es puer. 2. Tubam lēgātī nōn portās. 3. Patria agricolae Gallia est. 4. Estis puellae. 5. Virī agricolae sunt.

43. *Translate, giving special attention to noun and verb endings:*

(*a*) 1. You are farmers. 2. The boys are friends. 3. I am a messenger. 4. They are the farmer's horses. 5. Boys fight.

(*b*) 1. The boy praises the girl's memory. 2. You are not the woman's friend. 3. Are the messengers calling the lieutenant? 4. Are you the boy's friend? 5. Gaul is the farmer's native land.

ORAL EXERCISE[1]

44. *Answer these questions in Latin, taking care to change the person of the verb when necessary:*

1. Estne vir lēgātus? 2. Amīcīne sumus? 3. Laudāsne equum amīcī? 4. Lēgātīne estis? 5. Esne amīcus virī?

Gallia

Gallia prōvincia est. Gallia patria est agricolārum. Agricolae terram et linguam Galliae amant. Occupantne agricolae silvās? Agricolae pugnant et silvās occupant. Puellae Galliae silvās amant. Virī viās Galliae parant. Puerī et puellae litterās portant. Memoriam virōrum laudāmus.

---

[1] The material of this section may at times be used profitably for dictation purposes.

LESSON IX

SECOND DECLENSION, NEUTER

Post proelium, praemium.—After the battle, the reward.

45. Second declension nouns which end in **-um** in the nominative singular are *neuter.*

(*a*) Neuter nouns of all declensions have the *nominative and accusative cases alike,* and in the plural these cases always end in **-a.**

46. **Bel'lum,** n., *war.* BASE, **bell-**

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
Nom.	bel'**lum**	**um**	bel'**la**	**a**
Gen.	bel'**lī**	**ī**	bellō'**rum**	**ōrum**
Dat.	bel'**lō**	**ō**	bel'**līs**	**īs**
Acc.	bel'**lum**	**um**	bel'**la**	**a**
Abl.	bel'**lō**	**ō**	bel'**līs**	**īs**

47. VOCABULARY

bel'lum, -ī, n.,[1] *war.*
frūmen'tum, -ī, n., *grain.*
īn'sula, -ae, f., *island.*
op'pidum, -ī, n., *town.*
prae'mium, prae'mī, n.,[2] *reward.*
rēgī'na, -ae, f., *queen.*
rēg'num, -ī, n., *kingdom, royal power.*
et (conjunction), *and.*

(*a*) Decline the above neuters like **bellum.**

48. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

premium insular reign belligerent

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

---

[1] The letter "n." in the vocabularies denotes neuter gender.
[2] See § 33, *a.*

The Colosseum Seen through the Arch of Titus.

49. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Oppida nōn occupātis. 2. Virī bellum amant. 3. Frūmentum agricolārum portāmus. 4. Est[1] praemium. 5. Rēgīna rēgnum occupat.

(*b*) 1. Estne īnsula? 2. Puer frūmentum et aquam portat. 3. Estne rēgīna Galliae? 4. Agricolae agrōs amant. 5. Lēgātī pugnant et oppidum occupant.

50. *Translate, giving special attention to the nouns:*

(*a*) 1. The boy and the girl are friends. 2. The men seize the island. 3. The boys carry grain. 4. We love rewards. 5. You (*sing.*) are praising the queen.

(*b*) 1. Does the queen love the kingdom? 2. The queen carries the reward. 3. The messenger and the lieutenant praise the farmer's horses. 4. The men love (their) country. 5. Do you carry water?

ORAL EXERCISE

51. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Amatne rēgīnam? 2. Laudāsne puerōs? 3. Amantne praemium? 4. Puellāsne vocāmus? 5. Tubāsne portant?

Bella in Galliā

In Galliā Rōmānī multa bella parant. Gallia īnsula nōn est. Est prōvincia Rōmāna. Oppida in Galliā sunt. Rōmānī oppida occupant. Frūmentum et oppida praemia bellī sunt. Rōmānī agrōs Galliae occupant. In (*into*) oppidum puerōs et puellās portant. Gallī Rōmānōs nōn amant.

Translate:

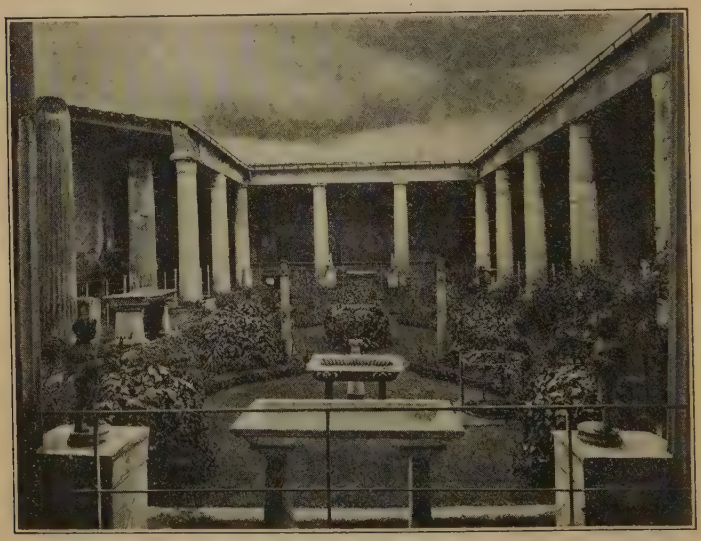
1. The queen's native land is Gaul. 2. The queen loves (her) country. 3. She does not like the lieutenant. 4. He seizes the towns and grain. 5. The towns are the reward of war.

---

[1] **Est** and **sunt** are often translated *there is* and *there are.*

The Roman House

When he approached the front door of a Roman house the visitor was greeted by the janitor or doorkeeper. The Latin word for front door is **iānua** and our English word "janitor" is derived from it. Often the doorkeeper had a dog to help him guard the house, but sometimes there was a mosaic picture of a fierce dog in the pavement of the



A Roman House in Pompeii.

entrance. Occasionally, in early times, the doorkeeper was chained to his place near the entrance.

If the doorkeeper was satisfied that the visitor would be welcome, he allowed him to enter the **ātrium,** a large public reception room just beyond the entrance at the front of the house. Here the master greeted his friends and clients. The clients were supported by him as the peasants were

supported by their lords in the days of chivalry. These clients served their masters in many different ways. It was customary for the master to receive them early in the morning, and to give them presents and orders for anything he wanted done during the day. Sometimes these gifts consisted of money and sometimes of food.

The atrium was lighted by a large opening in the roof and just under this was a pool to catch the water from the roof opening and from the fountain, if there was one. Around the walls were statues and vases and the roof was supported by beautiful marble columns. The walls were decorated with paintings done upon the wall itself and the floor had brilliantly colored mosaic pictures.

LESSON X

ADJECTIVES

Pro bono publico.—For the public good.

52. Latin Adjectives. — Latin adjectives are declined like nouns. They have masculine, feminine, and neuter forms to agree with their nouns in gender.

Adjectives of the first and second declensions have their feminine forms like nouns of the first declension, and their masculine and neuter forms like masculine and neuter nouns of the second declension.

53. **Magnus,**[1] *great, large.* BASE, **magn-**

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
		SINGULAR	
Nom.	mag'nus	mag'na	mag'num
Gen.	mag'nī	mag'nae	mag'nī
Dat.	mag'nō	mag'nae	mag'nō
Acc.	mag'num	mag'nam	mag'num
Abl.	mag'nō	mag'nā	mag'nō
		PLURAL	
Nom.	mag'nī	mag'nae	mag'na
Gen.	magnō'rum	magnā'rum	magnō'rum
Dat.	mag'nīs	mag'nīs	mag'nīs
Acc.	mag'nōs	mag'nās	mag'na
Abl.	mag'nīs	mag'nīs	mag'nīs

What is the vocative singular of **magnus?** See § 8, *a*, and § 33, *c* and *d*.

[1] Few other forms are used so constantly and in so many different ways as those in this section. They should be learned so that they "say themselves."

54. VOCABULARY

al'tus, al'ta, al'tum, *high, deep.*
bo'nus, bo'na, bo'num, *good, kind.*
lon'gus, lon'ga, lon'gum, *long, tall.*
no'vus, no'va, no'vum, *new.*
mag'nus, mag'na, mag'num, *great, large.*
mul'tus, mul'ta, mul'tum, *much;* plural, *many.*
par'vus, par'va, par'vum, *small, little.*

Decline **via longa, agricola bonus, puer parvus, praemium magnum.**

55. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

long magnify multiply novelty

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

RULE

56. Agreement of Adjectives with Nouns. — An adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.[1]

The boy is small. **Puer parvus**[2] **est.**
The farmers are good. **Agricolae bonī**[2] **sunt.**

Notice that the adjective does not always end like the noun. **Agricolae,** although of the first declension, is masculine from its meaning; so **bonī** is masculine, nominative, plural, to agree with it.

EXERCISES

57. *Translate, giving the reason for the ending of each adjective:*

(*a*) 1. Īnsula magna est. 2. Multa bella longa sunt. 3. Multum frūmentum portāmus. 4. Memoria lēgātī bona est. 5. Puer parvus nova praemia amat.

(*b*) 1. Vir longam tubam puerī parvī laudat. 2. Rēgīna puerōs bonōs vocat. 3. Puellae novōs equōs amant. 4. Lēgātī agrōs agricolārum occupant. 5. Multa oppida magna sunt.

---

[1] This is true whether the adjective is in the predicate or directly attached to the noun.

[2] Predicate adjective; see § 41.

58. *Translate, marking all long vowels:*

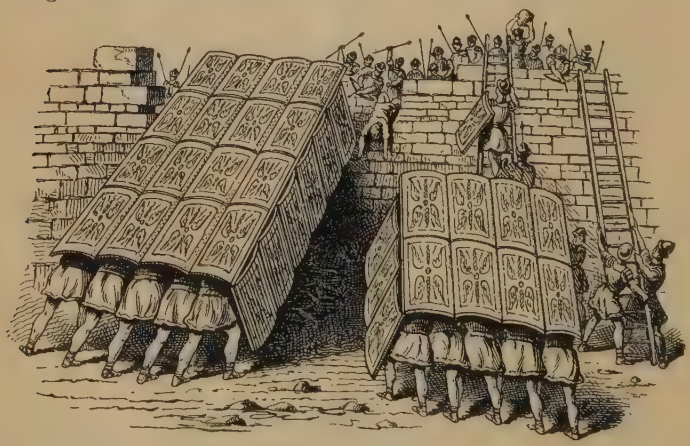
(*a*) 1. The towns are large. 2. The men seize the town. 3. The man's trumpet is large. 4. The good farmers are preparing (their) fields. 5. You are a good friend.

(*b*) 1. The water is deep. 2. The messenger's horse is small. 3. The rewards are great. 4. The boy is a good friend. 5. The lieutenant loves (his) country.

ORAL EXERCISE

59. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Equusne puerī magnus est? 2. Bellane longa sunt? 3. Bonīne virī pugnant? 4. Estne ager agricolae parvus? 5. Lēgātīne multās īnsulās occupant?



STORMING A TOWN.

OPPUGNĀTIŌ OPPIDĪ[1]

Oppidum magnum est. In oppidō sunt virī et puerī. Virī pugnant; puerī nōn pugnant. Puerī parvī sunt. Multum frūmentum in oppidō est.

[1] Read aloud in the Latin before translating.

Lēgātus bellum parat. Lēgātus et nūntius amīcī sunt. Nūntius lēgātum laudat. Equus nūntium portat. Lēgātus virōs vocat. Virī pugnant et oppidum occupant.

Translate:

1. The good men are fighting in Gaul. 2. In the large town are women and girls. 3. The war is long and the rewards are great. 4. The lieutenant likes the war and is summoning (his) men. 5. War is not good.

LESSON XI

REVIEW

Absit omen! — May there be no ill omen.[1]

60. Derivatives. — (*a*) Write all the English words you can that seem to be derived from the following:

magnus	longus	multus	novus
equus	īnsula	parō	vir

(*b*) With the aid of an unabridged English dictionary, study carefully the form and meaning of the following and compare with the original Latin word:

umbrella trivial lunatic urbane actor

61. Word Drill. — (*a*) Give the nominative and genitive singular and the gender of the Latin words for the following:

queen	lieutenant	war	kingdom
friend	man	girl	life
reward	grain	horse	town
messenger	field	language	boy

(*b*) Give the English meaning of each of the following:

īnsula	terra	amīcitia	longus
et	poēta	via	memoria
novus	spectō	bonus	multus
altus	parō	patria	magnus

(*c*) The following words of the second declension have the same form in both Latin and English: **album, alumnus, animus, campus,**

[1] Literally: *May the omen be absent!* Just as we say: "*Knock on wood!*"

chorus, circus, data (*plu.*), **dictum, focus, forum, frustum, fulcrum, fungus, genius, insignia** (*plu.*), **locus, maximum, medium, memorandum, minimum, minister, odium, radius, rostrum, stratum, syllabus, terminus, vacuum, vinculum.** Look up the meanings of all that you do not know.

62. Form Drill. — 1. Decline **lēgātus, rēgnum, bonus.** In how many seconds can you write the declension of **magnus?** In how many seconds can you recite it? 2. Conjugate **sum** and **pugnō** through the present tense.

(*a*) Translate exactly each of the following, using the words "subject" or "object" or using a preposition if necessary (the numbers in parentheses indicate that there are two or three meanings for a single form; if so, give them all):

equum, tubā, rēgīnae (3), lēgātī (2), virōrum, nūntiīs (dative), puellās, puerō (dative).

(*b*) Translate each form:

est pugnātis sumus laudat sunt vocant

63. Questions. — 1. What is the gender of nouns of the second declension? 2. What cases are alike in the neuter gender? 3. What is the ending of these cases in the plural? 4. What use do you know for the genitive case? the accusative? 5. What case in English corresponds to each of these? 6. What two uses do you know for the nominative? 7. Why must an adjective have three genders? 8. When you have an adjective modifying masculine nouns like **agricola** and **poēta,** why must you be particularly careful?

ORAL EXERCISE

64. *Translate:*

1. Es amīcus nūntiōrum. 2. Sumus bonī amīcī rēgīnae. 3. Magna oppida Galliae occupātis. 4. Tuba parva est. 5. Multae īnsulae sunt parvae.

Via Appia

Pictūra est pulchra. Pictūra[1] Viae Appiae est. Via Appia antīqua via est. Via Appia est longa et alba. Aquaeductus aquam nōn portat. Aquaeductus in ruīnīs est.

Via Appia.

Arborēs sunt in agrō. Sunt (*there is*) frūmenta[2] in agrīs. Vir frūmentum in (*into*) oppidum portat. Via Appia pulchra est.

In (*on*) Viā Appiā Rōmānī ambulant. Agricolae frūmentum portant et amīcōs salūtant. Poētae in viā ambulant et spectant virōs et agrōs. Poētae nātūram amant. Iūlia et puellae Rōmānae in viā ambulant. Iūlia salūtat agricolam et equum laudat. Hodiē multī agricolae in viā sunt. In Ītaliā sunt multae et bonae viae.

---

[1] See § 41. [2] Used in the plural to indicate standing grain.

Translate:

1. The men praise the Appian Way (road). 2. It is a long and a good road. 3. They walk on the road and look at the towns. 4. The girls and boys look at the horses. 5. The horses are carrying much grain. 6. There are many farmers on the road.

LESSON XII

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS

Cor unum, via una. — One heart, one way.

65. The **Principal Parts** of a Latin verb are the *Present Indicative*, *Present Infinitive*, *Perfect Indicative*, and *Perfect Passive Participle*. These are called principal parts because, when they are known, all the other forms of the verb may readily be formed.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*Perf. Pass. Part.*
por'tō	**portā're**	**portā'vī**	**portā'tus**

Form the principal parts of **amō, laudō, occupō, parō, spectō.**

66. Verb Stems. — The fixed parts of a verb, to which the different endings are added, are called **stems.** Every regular verb has three stems: *present*, *perfect*, and *participial*, corresponding to its principal parts.

To find the *present stem* of a verb drop **re** from the present infinitive active: **portāre**; stem, **portā-.**

67. The first conjugation includes all verbs whose present infinitive ends in **-āre.** The present stem ends in **ā-.**

Each form of the **present indicative** is composed of the *present stem* plus the proper *personal ending*.[1]

Present Indicative

por'tō, *I carry.*	portā'**mus**, *we carry.*
por'tās, *you carry.*	portā'**tis**, *you carry.*
por'tat, *he carries.*	por'ta**nt**, *they carry.*

[1] Notice that **ā** of the stem is dropped before **-ō** in the first person singular and that **ā** becomes short before **-t** and **-nt.**

68. VOCABULARY

dō, da're, de'dī, da'tus,[1] *give.*
su'perō, superā're, superā'vī, superā'tus, *surpass, conquer, defeat, overcome.*
con'vocō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *call together, call.*
cō'pia, -ae, f., *abundance, plenty, supply;* plural, *troops, forces.*
nau'ta, -ae, m., *sailor.*
nunc, adv., *now.*[2]
exspec'tō, exspectā're, exspectā'vī, exspectā'tus, *look out for, wait for, await.*
vul'nerō, vulnerā're, vulnerā'vī, vulnerā'tus, *wound, injure.*

Conjugate each of these verbs in the present indicative.

69. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

expect copious vulnerable nautical donate dative

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES

70. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Puella bona nautās convocat. 2. Puerī equōs parvōs nōn exspectant. 3. Agricola multum frūmentum portat. 4. Agricolam superāmus. 5. Amīcum nunc vulnerātis.

(*b*) 1. Puer praemia dat. 2. Cōpiās nunc convocās. 3. Vītae longae sunt. 4. Lēgātī agricolās nunc superant. 5. Amīcum nautae laudāmus.

71. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. We conquer the forces of Gaul. 2. The sailor is now the small boy's friend. 3. The man wounds (his) friend's horse. 4. The sailor is carrying a trumpet. 5. The girl gives small rewards.

---

[1] This verb has short **a** in the present stem, except in the forms **dās,** the imperative **dā,** and the participle **dāns.**

[2] The adverb is usually placed just before the verb.

(*b*) 1. The woman calls together the good sailors. 2. There is an abundance of grain. 3. We are now carrying a small letter. 4. The towns are large. 5. Many men love war.

ORAL EXERCISE

72. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Superāsne? 2. Vulneratne amīcum? 3. Dantne praemia? 4. Amātisne īnsulam? 5. Exspectāsne nūntium?

The Roman House (*Continued*)

Just back of the **ātrium** or main reception room was the **tablīnum,** a rectangular room, whose history and use are not clear to us. It was, perhaps, a room for records. It could be shut off by curtains.

When the curtains were drawn back, one could look through into the **peristȳlium** or garden court, open to the sky. To us who live in colder lands, this room appears the most attractive in the whole house. The atrium was a more formal room, while the peristyle was the living room, and was much more beautiful. In the center of the peristyle beneath the beautiful Italian sky were a glistening marble pool and fountain, about which were chairs and rugs. Here the mother and her daughters spent most of their time.

Around the peristyle were beautiful marble columns and a colonnade which afforded protection in bad weather. Curtains or hangings could be drawn between the columns to give protection, if desired, against the hot sun. Around the pool grew grass and flowers and plants. Houses like this are possible only in warm countries.

The walls were decorated with marvelous colored frescoes and all about were statues. How enjoyable and healthful it was to be able to spend so much time in the open air instead of in close rooms.

THE PYRAMID OF CESTIUS AND THE PORTA SAN PAOLO.

LESSON XIII

IMPERFECT AND FUTURE TENSES. INDIRECT OBJECT

Da dextram misero. — Lend a hand.[1]

73. The **imperfect**[2] **indicative** consists of the *present stem* plus the *tense sign* **-bā-** or **-ba-** plus the *personal endings.*

Imperfect Indicative

portā′**bam**, *I was carrying.*	portā**bā**′mus, *we were carrying.*
portā′**bās**, *you were carrying.*	portā**bā**′tis, *you were carrying.*
portā′**bat**, *he was carrying.*	portā′**ba**nt, *they were carrying.*

The personal ending **-m** is always used for the first person singular of the imperfect tense in the active voice.

74. The **future indicative** consists of the *present stem* plus the *tense sign* **-bi-** plus the *personal endings.* The **i** of the tense sign is dropped before the personal ending **-ō** in the first person singular, and appears as **u** before the ending **-nt** in the third person plural.

Future Indicative

portā′**bō**, *I shall carry.*	portā′**bi**mus, *we shall carry.*
portā′**bis**, *you will carry.*	portā′**bi**tis, *you will carry.*
portā′**bit**, *he will carry.*	portā′**bu**nt, *they will carry.*

Notice the "shall" and "will" uses in the English translations.

---

[1] Vergil. Literally: *Give the right hand to the unfortunate.*

[2] The imperfect indicative represents an act as *going on* in past time or as *repeated* in past time. "I was carrying," "I kept carrying," "I used to carry," "I did carry," "I carried," are possible translations, but the best in most cases is the one given you to learn.

75. VOCABULARY

fā'ma, -ae, f., *reputation, rumor.*
fu'ga, -ae, f., *flight.*
lū'na, -ae, f., *moon.*
a'nimus, -ī, m., *mind, spirit;* plu., *courage.*
Gal'lī, -ō'rum, m., *Gauls.*

Compare **Gallia** and **Gallī.**

fac'tum, -ī, n., *deed.*
ser'vus, -ī, m., *slave* (male).
sig'num, -ī, n., *signal,* (*military*) *standard.*
in, prep. with abl., *in, on.*
sed, conj., *but.*

76. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

fugitive sign fact servant

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

DRILL ON VERB FORMS

77. *Analyze*[1] *each form and translate:*

(*a*) 1. Vulnerābam, vocābis, amātis. 2. Parat, portāmus, occupābunt. 3. Damus, laudābat, vocābunt. 4. Pugnābis, spectābant, superāmus. 5. Vulnerābit, occupābimus, dabunt.

(*b*) 1. Parābās, laudābātis, exspectābimus. 2. Occupant, vulnerābit, dabitis. 3. Portō, laudābit, amābunt. 4. Vulnerābāmus, vulnerābitis, dās. 5. Superābam, parābō, vulnerātis.

78. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. They will fight, I was fighting, we shall fight. 2. We are calling, he will call, I am calling. 3. They are, they are awaiting, they were awaiting. 4. You were praising, we shall praise, they praise. 5. I shall give, you (*plu.*) are giving, they will give.

(*b*) 1. We are, we are carrying, they will carry. 2. You (*sing.*) were giving, we shall give, he gives. 3. We shall prepare, you are

---

[1] To analyze a verb form divide it into *stem, tense sign,* and *personal ending.* Notice that the active verb is translated from right to left.

portā ba m } *I was carrying.*
carrying was I }

I shows the person and number, *was* the tense, and *carrying* the meaning of the simple verb.

preparing, we were preparing. 4. I am, I call, I shall call. 5. We were seizing, they seize, he calls together.

THE DYING GAUL.
A famous statue in Rome.

RULE

79. Indirect Object. — The indirect object is expressed by the dative case. It is used to show to whom something is said, given, shown, told, etc. Notice particularly that in English we often omit the preposition "to" in this construction. The indirect object is generally placed before the direct object.

The farmer gives a horse to the boy. **Agricola puerō equum dat.**
The lieutenant is giving the messenger a signal. **Lēgātus nūntiō signum dat.**

EXERCISES

80. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Lēgātō praemium datis. 2. Vir servō signa dabit. 3. Agricolae bonī equīs frūmentum dabunt. 4. Virī amīcīs agrōs dabant. 5. Īnsulae sunt parvae.

(*b*) 1. Memoria puerī est longa. 2. Sumus bonī servī. 3. Fāma oppidī est bona. 4. Agricolae in silvīs lūnam exspectābant. 5. Gallī in Galliā pugnābant.

81. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. The friends of the Gauls are many. 2. The wars in Gaul are long. 3. The boy will give a reward to (his) friend. 4. The girls were giving trumpets to the boys. 5. Poets love a large moon.

(*b*) 1. We shall seize the towns in the province. 2. The queen will praise the reputation of the boys and girls. 3. We were wounding the Gauls. 4. The horses of many farmers are large. 5. The slaves await the standard and the messenger.

ORAL EXERCISE

82. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Servusne equōs laudābit? 2. Dabisne bonō puerō praemium? 3. Puerīne in agrō magnō sunt? 4. Nūntiusne Gallīs tubās dabat? 5. Gallīne in multīs bellīs pugnābant?

Rēgīna Galliae

Gallī magnī virī erant (*were*) sed nōn amīcī Rōmānōrum. Multa et longa bella cum (*with*) Rōmānīs parābant. Rēgīna Gallōrum facta virōrum[1] Galliae laudat sed nōn amat fāmam Rōmānōrum. Rēgīnae est[2] animus magnus et memoria longa. Lēgātus Rōmānōrum virīs signum dabit et Gallōs vulnerābit. Occupābit oppida et rēgnum rēgīnae. Rēgīna et servī mox (*soon*) in fugā erunt (*will be*).

---

[1] **Virōrum** here = "heroes."

[2] Literally, "To the queen is," but translate, "The queen has."

Translate:

1. In Gaul there is a good queen. 2. In the kingdom are many towns. 3. The Romans will fight and will wound many Gauls. 4. They will give rewards to the new slaves. 5. The queen loves life and (her) native land. 6. She will fight but the Romans will seize the towns.

LESSON XIV

ADJECTIVES (*Continued*). ABLATIVE OF MEANS

Alis volat propriis.—She flies with her own wings.[1]

83. **Miser,** *wretched.* BASE, **miser-**

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
		SINGULAR	
Nom.	mi′ser	mi′sera	mi′serum
Gen.	mi′serī	mi′serae	mi′serī
Dat.	mi′serō	mi′serae	mi′serō
Acc.	mi′serum	mi′seram	mi′serum
Abl.	mi′serō	mi′serā	mi′serō
		PLURAL	
Nom.	mi′serī	mi′serae	mi′sera
Gen.	miserō′rum	miserā′rum	miserō′rum
Dat.	mi′serīs	mi′serīs	mi′serīs
Acc.	mi′serōs	mi′serās	mi′sera
Abl.	mi′serīs	mi′serīs	mi′serīs

84. **Pulcher,** *beautiful.* BASE, **pulchr-**

		SINGULAR	
Nom.	pul′cher	pul′chra	pul′chrum
Gen.	pul′chrī	pul′chrae	pul′chrī
Dat.	pul′chrō	pul′chrae	pul′chrō
Acc.	pul′chrum	pul′chram	pul′chrum
Abl.	pul′chrō	pul′chrā	pul′chrō
		PLURAL	
Nom.	pul′chrī	pul′chrae	pul′chra
Gen.	pulchrō′rum	pulchrā′rum	pulchrō′rum
Dat.	pul′chrīs	pul′chrīs	pul′chrīs
Acc.	pul′chrōs	pul′chrās	pul′chra
Abl.	pul′chrīs	pul′chrīs	pul′chrīs

[1] The motto of Oregon. Used for *to stand on one's own feet.*

85. VOCABULARY

ae'quus, -a, -um, *level, equal; just.*
cer'tus, -a, -um, *fixed, certain.*
crē'ber, -bra, -brum, *thick, close, frequent.*
lī'ber, -era, -erum, *free.*
ma'lus, -a, -um, *bad.*
fī'dus, -a, -um, *loyal, faithful.*
mi'ser, -era, -erum, *wretched, unhappy.*
pul'cher, -chra, -chrum, *beautiful.*
ves'ter, -tra, -trum, *your, yours.*[1]
tu'us, -a, -um, *your, yours.*[1]
bar'barus, -a, -um, *foreign, barbarous.*

Note that **līber** and **miser** retain the **e**, like **puer**; **pulcher** and **vester** drop it, like **ager**.

BARBARĪ.

This picture shows the Romans beheading some of their barbarian captives.

86. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

liberty miserable certain equal

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

---

[1] *Tuus* refers to one person only, *vester* to more than one.

RULE

87. Ablative of Means or Instrument. — Means or instrument is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. Notice that it is used of *things*, not persons.

They carry grain with horses. **Frūmentum equīs portant.**
The slave gives the signal with a trumpet. **Servus tubā signum dat.**

88. *Translate, naming the case of each noun and giving the reason for the use of that case:*

(*a*) 1. Factum servī malum est. 2. Gallī barbarī tubīs crēbra signa dabant. 3. Lūna pulchra est. 4. Puella bona est, sed puer est malus. 5. Aequīs[1] lēgātīs bona fāma est.

(*b*) 1. Servus virī malus nōn est. 2. Puellae equum pulchrum dabō. 3. Virī miserī in fugā pugnābant. 4. Tuās puellās laudābimus. 5. Virī līberī servōs vestrōs vulnerābant.

89. *Translate, always marking the long vowels:*

(*a*) 1. The foreign men are in the large town. 2. Your messenger is not loyal. 3. They will seize the small island. 4. They were giving frequent signals to the wretched messenger. 5. The rewards of good boys and good girls are certain.

(*b*) 1. Bad boys were fighting. 2. The Gauls will conquer the slaves with long wars. 3. The girl's friend will give your reward to the foreign messenger. 4. The lieutenant was giving a signal to (his) just friend with a trumpet. 5. The bad slaves will not conquer the free men.

ORAL EXERCISE

90. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Suntne puerī fīdī? 2. Pugnābisne equīs? 3. Laudābisne lūnam? 4. Dabuntne signum tubā? 5. Estne vestra fāma bona?

---

[1] See footnote 2, page 44.

Servus Malus

In oppidō erat (*was*) vir. Equus virī in agrō erat. Mārcus, puer[1] līber, amīcus virī erat. Mārcus equum amābat, sed servus virī equum nōn amābat.

In agrō fossa alta erat (*there was*). Servus pīlum longum in fossā cēlat. Factum malum in animō[2] est. Mārcus servum spectat, tum exclāmat, "Equumne pīlō vulnerābis? Equus nōn tuus sed virī[3] est." Mārcus virō signum dat et virum vocat. Vir servum gladiō[4] vulnerat. Servus pīlō equum nōn vulnerat.

Vir dīligentiam Mārcī laudat et puerō ēgregiō magnum numerum librōrum pulchrōrum dat. Servī[3] malī supplicium nōn parvum est.

Translate:

1. Marcus is a good boy. 2. He loved the man's horse. 3. The bad slave will wound the horse with a sword. 4. But Marcus summons the man and the man overcomes the slave. 5. The man praised the boy's good deed. 6. The reputation of the slave is bad.

---

[1] Apposition.
[2] Supply *his* in translating.
[3] See § 36.
[4] See § 87.

LESSON XV

CONJUGATION OF *SUM* (*Continued*)

Sum quod eris.—I am what you will be.[1]

91. Conjugation of the irregular verb *sum*. — For the present tense see § 40.

Imperfect Indicative

e'**ram**, *I was.*	erā'**mus**, *we were.*
e'**rās**, *you were.*	erā'**tis**, *you were.*
e'**rat**, *he was.*	e'**rant**, *they were.*

Future Indicative

e'**rō**, *I shall be.*	e'**rimus**, *we shall be.*
e'**ris**, *you will be.*	e'**ritis**, *you will be.*
e'**rit**, *he will be.*	e'**runt**, *they will be.*

ROMAN SWORD AND JAVELIN.

92. VOCABULARY

do'minus, -ī, m., *master, lord.*
gla'dius, gla'dī, m., *sword.*
li'ber, li'brī, m., *book.*
magis'ter, -trī, m., *teacher.*
Mār'cus, -ī, m., *Marcus.*
nu'merus, -ī, m., *number.*
pecū'nia, -ae, f., *money.*
sum, es'se, fu'ī, *be.*
iam, adv., *already, by this time.*
-que, conj., *and* (always connects words of like construction. It is translated *before* the word to which it is appended ; it is called an *enclitic*).

nōnne, interrogative particle, used when the answer *yes* is expected.
num, interrogative particle, used when the answer *no* is expected.

Compare **liber** and **līber.** The words *library* and *liberate* will help you remember how they are declined.

[1] Inscription sometimes seen on tombstones.

93. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

gladiator library dominant numerous

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES

94. *Translate, naming the case of each noun and giving the reason for the use of that case:*

(*a*) 1. Mārcus gladiō longō pugnābit. 2. Gallī agricolaeque tubā lēgātō signum dabunt. 3. Gladiō Mārcum amīcumque vulnerābimus. 4. Līberī virī erāmus et servīs pecūniam dabāmus. 5. Servī gladiīs iam pugnābant.

(*b*) 1. Malus dominus eris. 2. Equus magnus virī in silvā est. 3. Librī magistrī erant pulchrī. 4. Servī miserī dominōs malōs nōn amant. 5. Vestra rēgīna virōrum bona facta amābit.

95. *Translate, marking all long vowels:*

(*a*) 1. I shall be a good teacher. 2. Many Gauls are free. 3. The new slaves were wretched. 4. The bad master fights with a sword. 5. With the trumpet we shall give the signals to the men.

(*b*) 1. I shall look at the small horse in the forest. 2. The books were beautiful. 3. The teacher and the queen will give rewards and money to many boys. 4. You (*plu.*) will give the swords to (your) friends. 5. (There) was a large number of boys and girls in the town.

96. Interrogative Particles. — When a negative answer (no) is expected, the question is introduced by **Num**; when an affirmative answer (yes) is expected, the question is introduced by **Nōnne.**

The slaves are not good, are they? **Num servī bonī sunt?**
Are not the slaves good? **Nōnne servī bonī sunt?**

ORAL EXERCISE

97. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Nōnne lēgātī gladiīs pugnant? 2. Num servī miserī erant? 3. Eritne numerus Gallōrum in oppidō magnus? 4. Eratne fāma virī bona? 5. Nōnne dominī gladiīs pugnābunt?

A Roman House.
This is a view looking from the atrium into the peristyle.

The Roman House (*Continued*)

The dining room (**trīclīnium**) adjoined the peristyle. It too was beautifully decorated with marble columns, wall frescoes, and statuary, and furnished with dining couches, tables, and sideboards.

Opening off from the peristyle under the colonnade at the sides were the doors to the sleeping rooms of the family. Some of the upper slaves slept on the first floor but for the

most part the rooms there were reserved for the family and guests. Sleeping rooms also opened off from the atrium.

In the rear of the house there were a breakfast room, kitchen, library, bathroom, and, in fact, the various rooms that we expect to find in a large modern home.

Outside of the house itself and inclosed by a high wall was a little garden laid out and planted artistically and with great care.

The sleeping rooms of the slaves on the second floor were very small and poorly furnished. They were called **cellae,** from which we derive our English word " cell."

Under the house there was a cellar for the storage of provisions and there was the strong room where the master locked up bad slaves, held fast by a set of stocks and manacles fastened to the floor.

LESSON XVI

PERFECT TENSE[1]

Laborare est orare. — To labor is to pray.[2]

98. The perfect stem is found by dropping **ī** from the perfect indicative active — **portāvī**: stem, **portāv-** (§ 65).

99. The perfect indicative active has the following **characteristic personal endings.**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
First Person.	**-ī**	**-imus**
Second Person.	**-istī**	**-istis**
Third Person.	**-it**	**-ērunt**

100. Perfect tense = *perfect stem + the characteristic personal endings.*

Perfect Indicative Active

I have carried, I carried, I did carry

portā'**vī**	portā'**vimus**
portā**vis'tī**	portā**vis'tis**
portā'**vit**	portāv**ē'runt**

(*a*) The perfect indicative represents an act as completed at the time of speaking (*have carried*), or merely as having occurred in past time (*carried*). *I have carried* is known as the perfect definite; *I carried* is known as the perfect indefinite or historical perfect.

The imperfect expresses an action as going on in past time: *I was carrying*. See § 73 and note.

(*b*) Following the same rules as for **portō,** conjugate **sum** through the perfect indicative (§ 614).

(*c*) Conjugate in the perfect each of the verbs in the following vocabulary.

---

[1] Compare §§ 662 and 664.

[2] Motto of the Benedictine monks.

101. VOCABULARY

an'nus, -ī, m., *year.*
ar'ma, -ō'rum, n. (plu.), *arms, implements.*
poe'na, -ae, f., *penalty, punishment.*
appel'lō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *name, call.*
com'parō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *make ready, buy, compare.*
cōnfir'mō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *strengthen, assert, arrange for.*
lī'berō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *set free.*
nūn'tiō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *announce.*
ser'vō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *save, guard.*
si'ne, prep. with abl., *without.*

102. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

confirmation conserve liberator penalty

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

103. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Appellāvērunt. 2. Cōnfirmāvistis. 3. Poenam nūntiāvī. 4. Puerō librum comparāvimus. 5. Agrōs servāvistis.

(*b*) 1. Puerī malī sine amīcīs fuērunt. 2. Bonus poēta erit. 3. Mārcō gladium dedimus. 4. Magistrī miserī nōn fuērunt. 5. Gladiō virum vulnerāvistī.

104. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. You (*plu.*) have announced. 2. The good messenger called the boys and girls with a trumpet. 3. The bad men seized (their) native land. 4. We shall save the small town with swords and arms. 5. The Gauls have fought without arms.

(*b*) 1. The teachers have saved many boys. 2. Marcus has given a book to (his) new friend. 3. We have been good masters. 4. The number of the small boy's books is great. 5. The men will save the life of the poet.

105. ORAL EXERCISE

Answer these questions in Latin:

1. Servāvistīne patriam? 2. Fuistīne bonus puer? 3. Num virī servōs malōs līberāvērunt? 4. Nōnne oppidum servāvit? 5. Num in Galliā fuistis?

Triumphus Rōmānus

A Roman Triumphal Procession

Dux (*leader*, subject) Rōmānus multās terrās superāvit. Prōvinciās et oppida occupāvit. Per (*through*) Rōmam in magnō triumphō ad Capitōlium (*Capitol*) vehitur (*he is borne*). Rōmānī hanc (*this*) pompam (*procession*) "triumphum" appellāvērunt. In triumphō erant arma et equī et servī et pecūnia et interdum (*sometimes*) rēgīna. Poētae et puellae et fēminae ducem (*leader*, obj.) spectant et eum (*him*) laudant. Memoria factōrum eius (*his*) longa erit. Bellum longum erat sed fortūna Rōmānōrum bona. Dant Rōmānī multa praemia mīlitibus, pulchra arma et pecūniam. Dux et virī triumphum amant.

Translate:

1. The Roman hero[1] has conquered many kingdoms with the sword. 2. The poets announce the good fortune to (their) friends. 3. The war was long but he seized the provinces and great towns. 4. The memory of the good fortune will strengthen the men. 5. They are carrying (their) rewards and they praise beautiful Rome.[2]

---

[1] **vir.** [2] **Rōma, -ae, f.**

LESSON XVII

PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT TENSES

Dux femina facti.—A woman was the leader of the deed.[1]

106. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses indicative active are formed on the perfect stem.

Pluperfect tense = *perfect stem* + *tense sign* **-erā-** or **-era-** + *regular personal endings.*

Future perfect tense = *perfect stem* + *tense sign* **eri** + *regular personal endings.*

107. **Pluperfect Indicative Active**

I had carried

portā'**veram**	portā**verā'**mus
portā'**verās**	portā**verā'**tis
portā'**verat**	portā'**verant**

Future Perfect Indicative Active

I shall have carried

portā'**verō**	portā**ve'rimus**
portā'**veris**	portā**ve'ritis**
portā'**verit**	portā'**verint**

Following the same laws, conjugate **sum** through the pluperfect and future perfect indicative tenses (§ 614).

108. A synopsis of a verb is a group of forms of any person and number of that verb throughout all the tenses.

The synopsis of **portō** in the first person singular indicative active is: **portō, portābam, portābō, portāvī, portāveram, portāverō.**

[1] Vergil.

EXERCISES ON VERB FORMS

109. *Analyze each form:*

(*a*) 1. Pugnāverat, pugnābunt, pugnāvistī. 2. Comparābat, cōnfirmāvērunt, nūntiat. 3. Occupāvī, occupābam, occupāverit. 4. Dedimus, dant, dederās. 5. Servābit, servāvistī, servāvērunt.

(*b*) 1. Vocābāmus, vocāveritis, vocāvistis. 2. Laudāverat, laudāmus, laudāverō. 3. Erāmus, fuerint, fuērunt. 4. Fuistī, fuerās, fuerit. 5. Līberābant, appellāvērunt, servābō.

(*c*) Give the synopsis in the indicative active of the following in the person and number in which the forms occur: laudō, pugnās, occupat, sumus, datis, vulnerant.

110. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. I have called, you were calling, you will call. 2. We shall have given, he gave, they had given. 3. You had wounded, they will have wounded, we are wounding. 4. They have seized, we shall seize, he seizes. 5. They will have prepared, I shall prepare, we prepare.

(*b*) 1. You have set free, I had set free, they set free. 2. They have been, he was, you will have been. 3. They had been, we shall be, I have been. 4. You have been, he had been, we shall have been. 5. I shall await, they wounded, he had announced.

ORAL EXERCISE

111. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Pugnāvistīne? 2. Nōnne fuerās līber? 3. Num puerō gladium dederat? 4. Nōnne in Galliā eris? 5. Dedistīne Mārcō pecūniam?

Lūdī Rōmānī

In lūdō (*school*) Rōmānō fuērunt puerī sed nōn multae puellae. Lūdus bonus erat et puerī magistrō pecūniam dabant. Magister saepe (*often*) erat servus quī (*who*) in bellō captus erat (*had been captured*). Docuit (*He taught*) puerōs

grammaticam, rhētoricam, arithmēticam.[1] Sī puerī bonī discipulī (*pupils*) erant, eōs (*them*) laudāvit. Sī puerī malī et nōn studiōsī (*eager to learn*) erant, eōs (*them*) castīgāvit (*chastised*). Paedagōgus[2] puerōs exspectāvit et librōs portāvit. Fortūna puerōrum nōn mala erat sī puerī bonī erant.

A Roman School.
From an ancient relief.

Puellae domī (*at home*) erant. Mātrēs (*mothers*, subject) puellās artēs domesticās docuērunt (*taught*). Nōnne vītae puellārum bonae erant?

Translate:

1. The teacher will praise the good boys. 2. The punishment of the bad boys will be great. 3. The Roman boy did not carry (his) books. 4. They gave the slave, (their) teacher, money. 5. The teacher's reward was small.

[1] **Doceō** takes two accusatives, one of the person taught, the other of the thing.

[2] Pedagogue, a slave who accompanied boys to and from school.

LESSON XVIII

EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE

Ad maiorem Dei gloriam. — To the greater glory of God.[1]

112. Place. — In general, place is expressed as follows:

Place *in* or *on* which — **in** with the *ablative* case.
Place *from* which — **ā** or **ab** with the *ablative* case.
Place *out of* which — **ē** or **ex** with the *ablative* case.
Place *down from* which — **dē** with the *ablative* case.
Place *in front of* which — **prō** with the *ablative* case.
Place *under, close to* which — **sub** with the *ablative* case.
Place *into* which — **in** with the *accusative* case.
Place *toward* which — **ad** with the *accusative* case.
Place *under, close to, up to* which (with verbs of motion) — **sub** with the *accusative* case.
Place *behind* which — **post** with the *accusative* case.

Note. — **Ab** and **ex** must be used before a word beginning with a vowel or *h*; before consonants **ā** or **ab, ex** or **ē** may be used.

In studying a vocabulary always look carefully at new verbs to see how they are formed, for many are formed by the use of prefixes. Notice the effect of the following prefixes:

ā (ab, abs)-, *away:* **abdūcō**, *lead away.*
ad-, *to, on, toward:* **addūcō**, *lead to.*
con-, *with, together:* **convocō**, *call together.*
con- (with an intensive meaning), *thoroughly, completely:* **commoveō**, *move thoroughly, alarm.*

[1] Motto of the Jesuits.

dē-, (*down*) *from:* **dēpōnō**, *put down, lay aside.*
ē (ex)-, (*out*) *from:* **ēdūcō**, *lead out.*
in-, *in, on, toward, into:* **indūcō**, *lead on.*

113. VOCABULARY

cas′tra, -ō′rum, n. pl., *camp.*
fī′lia, -ae, f., *daughter* (**-ā′bus** in dat. and abl. plu.).
fī′lius, fī′lī, m., *son.*
pug′na, -ae, f., *fight, battle.*
ā or **ab,** prep. with abl., *from.*
ad, prep. with acc., *to, toward.*
dē, prep. with abl., *down from, concerning.*
ē or **ex,** prep. with abl., *out of, from.*
in, prep. with abl., *in, on;* with acc., *into, against.*
post, prep. with acc. (of place), *behind;* (of time), *after.*
prō, prep. with abl., *in front of, in proportion to, for* (instead of, in defense of, in behalf of).
sub, prep. with abl., *under, close to;* with acc., *under, up to, close to.*

EXERCISES ON PREPOSITIONS

114. *Translate:*

1. Ad oppidum. 2. In fugā. 3. In bellum. 4. Ex oppidō. 5. In agrīs. 6. Ab nūntiō. 7. In patriam. 8. Ad silvās. 9. In Galliā. 10. Ex prōvinciā. 11. Sub castra.[1] 12. Sub terrā. 13. Dē castrīs.[1] 14. Dē fugā. 15. Post oppidum. 16. Prō oppidō. 17. Prō patriā. 18. Post bellum.

115. *Translate, marking all long vowels:*

1. To the island. 2. In the towns. 3. To Gaul. 4. From the town. 5. On land. 6. From the fields. 7. Into the province. 8. Out of the woods. 9. From the island. 10. Into Gaul. 11. Down from the town. 12. Concerning war. 13. Under water. 14. Up to the town. 15. In front of the camp. 16. Behind the island. 17. After the signal. 18. For (in defense of) the kingdom.

---

[1] In deciding what meaning of the preposition to use assume the camp is on a hill.

116. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

filial pugnacious insuperable

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES

117. *Translate, giving the construction of each noun:*

(*a*) 1. Post bellum fuērunt castra in Galliā. 2. Dominus servōs ā prōvinciīs vocāverit. 3. In castrīs virōs servāverās. 4. Gallī ex oppidō in castra frūmentum portāverant. 5. Vir fīliīs et fīliābus librōs dedit.

(*b*) 1. Post castra Gallōs gladiīs superāverint. 2. Prō Galliā pugnāvimus. 3. In castra gladiōs et pecūniam portāvistis. 4. Fīlia fēminae ad magistrum librōs multōs et magnōs portāvit. 5. Servus dominō bonō cōpiam magnam armōrum comparāverat.

118. *Translate, marking all long vowels:*

(*a*) 1. The free men bought grain on the island. 2. The messenger calls the boys out of the field into the forest. 3. The Gauls gave beautiful rewards to (their) sons and daughters. 4. The slaves will have carried grain from the small town to the camp. 5. The girl was carrying water up to the town.

(*b*) 1. The messengers had reported concerning the battle in the town. 2. The good farmer's sons and daughters had bought (their) books. 3. The signal of the messenger saved the men. 4. You had wounded your friends with swords. 5. You will give a book to (your) daughter, but a sword to (your) son.

ORAL EXERCISE

119. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Puerīne[1] ex agrō equum vocāvērunt? 2. Nōnne in Galliā erātis? 3. Portāverāsne frūmentum ad castra? 4. Nōnne servus est miser? 5. Num fīlia puella mala fuit?

---

[1] Think of the words in groups and pronounce them in groups: **Puerīne ex agrō equum vocāvērunt?**

Carolus et Pōma[1]

Carolus agricolae fīlius erat et bonus puer, sed malōs amīcōs habēbat (*had*). Agricola fīliō calathum pōmōrum magnōrum plēnum dedit. In calathō erant multa et bona pōma, sed pauca vitiāta.

Puer pōma cēlāvit, sed vitiāta pōma maculāvērunt bona, et mox nūllum bonum erat. Tum agricola fīlium monuit (*warned*): "Pauca vitiāta pōma maculant multa bona. Sīc malī amīcī bonōs puerōs vitiābunt."

Translate:

1. Charles was a good boy but his[2] friends were bad. 2. The farmer loved (his) son but not bad boys. 3. He saved (his) son from evil friends. 4. The reward of the good boys will be great. 5. The son is wretched, but he praises the deed of the farmer.

The Roman House (*Continued*)

The fine dwellings at Rome such as you are reading about were usually built of concrete faced with brick, stone, or stucco. The interior was faced with marble or had beautiful painted walls. The roof was built of tiles. The floors in the more important rooms were of mosaic, but of stone and rough tile in the others. Generally heat was supplied by the sun, or by little charcoal stoves moved about from room to room.

The chambers opened almost entirely upon the interior court with the result that the rooms were much darker than today when we value sunlight so highly. Of course we must remember that the Romans spent very little time in their own rooms. Once in a while the masters' rooms had windows

---

[1] Refer to the General Vocabulary for new words. [2] Eius.

with a poor sort of glass that let light through, but was difficult to see through.

The frescoes that have been mentioned were wall-paintings, used for decoration as we use wall paper. In the best houses they were beautifully painted in many colors by great artists. The art objects all showed the influence of Greek civilization upon Rome.

LESSON XIX

REVIEW

Nihil dictum quod non dictum prius. — We can say nothing but what hath been said.[1]

120. Derivatives. — (*a*) Translate the following words; then write all the English words you can that seem to be derived from them:

fuga	servō	animus	fīlius
lūna	signum	līber	liber
gladius	numerus	dominus	dō
exspectō	vulnerō	cōnfirmō	poena

(*b*) With the aid of an unabridged English dictionary, study carefully the form and meaning of the following and compare with the original Latin word:

janitor peculiar cellar reporter tabernacle vespers

121. Word Drill. — (*a*) See how many seconds it takes you to give the nominative and genitive singular and the gender of the Latin words for the following:

master	sword	signal	book
number	memory	flight	teacher
slave	Marcus	deed	daughter
son	reputation	reward	island

[1] Terence. Literally: *Nothing has been said which has not been said before.* The English is from Burton's *Anatomy of Melancholy.*

(*b*) Translate the following Latin words exactly, using the words "subject" or "object," or a preposition if necessary (sometimes there will be two or three possible meanings for a single form; if so give them all):

lūnam, factum (2), signī, rēgīnae (3), animum, armōrum, fīliīs (dative), fīliās, dominō (dative).

(*c*) *Translate each form exactly:*

damus	exspectābat	eram	nūntiāverās
superābunt	eris	cōnfirmāvimus	līberāverint

122. Form Drill. — 1. Name the principal parts of a verb. 2. Name the six indicative tenses in order. 3. Give the formula for making each. 4. Give the principal parts of **dō** and conjugate it through the indicative. 5. Give the principal parts of **sum** and conjugate it through the indicative. 6. Give a synopsis in the indicative active of the following forms in the person and number shown here: **sum, dās, līberat, vulnerāmus, servātis, nūntiant.**

123. Questions. — 1. What case denotes possession? the direct object? the indirect object? What is the English equivalent of each? 2. What case and what preposition are used to express place *in* which, *into* which, *to* which, *from* which, *out of* which? 3. How is the *present* stem of a verb found? the *perfect* stem? 4. What tenses are formed on the *present* stem? on the *perfect* stem? 5. What tenses have tense signs? Name the tense signs. 6. What tense has characteristic endings? Name them. 7. What English tense is equivalent to the pluperfect? 8. What special form has the Latin word **fīlia** in certain cases of the plural? 9. In what letter do the nominative and accusative plural of neuter nouns end?

ORAL EXERCISE

124. *Translate:*

1. Fēminae in īnsulīs erunt. 2. Puellae praemium dabis. 3. Virī memoriam servōrum laudābunt. 4. Equus in agrum puerum portābat. 5. Erimus bonī amīcī magistrī. 6. Numerus servōrum in Galliā magnus erat.

Appius Claudius

Rōmae (*At Rome*) erat vir, Appius Claudius nōmine (*by name*). Magnum et longum aquaeductum aedificāvit (*built*). Rōmānī hunc (*this*) aquaeductum ab eius (*his*) nōmine

The Claudian Aqueduct.

(*name*) appellāvērunt. Aquaeductus bonam aquam in Rōmam, magnum oppidum, portāvit.

Appius Claudius etiam (*besides*) longam et bonam viam ad Capuam, oppidum Ītaliae, aedificāvit. Patriam suam (*his*) amābat et cum hostibus (*enemies*) Rōmānōrum semper

(*always*) pugnābat. Via et aquaeductus in Ītaliā hodiē (*today*) manent (*remain*).

Translate:

1. In Italy there was a man, Appius Claudius. 2. He was a good man and loved his country. 3. He built[1] a long road and an aqueduct.[2] 4. Good water has saved the lives of many Romans. 5. We praise the reputation and the deeds of the man.

---

[1] **aedificō** (like **portō**).

[2] **aquaeductum.**

LESSON XX

THIRD DECLENSION

Ad astra per aspera. — To the stars through bolts and bars.[1]

125. The third declension includes all words whose genitive singular ends in **-is.** They may be masculine, feminine, or neuter.

Many nouns of the third declension have their nominative just like the base, or the base and the nominative differ only in the quantity of the last vowel. Note that masculines and feminines are declined alike.

	Cōnsul, m., *consul*		**Soror,** f., *sister*	
	BASE, **cōnsul-**		BASE, **sorōr-**	
		SINGULAR		
				TERMINATIONS
Nom.	cōn′sul	*Nom.*	so′ror	—
Gen.	cōn′sul**is**	*Gen.*	sorō′r**is**	**is**
Dat.	cōn′sul**ī**	*Dat.*	sorō′r**ī**	**ī**
Acc.	cōn′sul**em**	*Acc.*	sorō′r**em**	**em**
Abl.	cōn′sul**e**	*Abl.*	sorō′r**e**	**e**
		PLURAL		
Nom.	cōn′sul**ēs**	*Nom.*	sorō′r**ēs**	**ēs**
Gen.	cōn′sul**um**	*Gen.*	sorō′r**um**	**um**
Dat.	cōnsu′l**ibus**	*Dat.*	sorō′r**ibus**	**ibus**
Acc.	cōn′sul**ēs**	*Acc.*	sorō′r**ēs**	**ēs**
Abl.	cōnsu′l**ibus**	*Abl.*	sorō′r**ibus**	**ibus**

Note. — Compare the following case endings :

Declension	I	II	III
Accusative singular :	**-am**	**-um**	**-em**
Genitive plural :	**-ārum**	**-ōrum**	**-um**
Accusative plural :	**-ās**	**-ōs**	**-ēs**

[1] The motto of Kansas and an appropriate one for school classes. Literally : *To the stars through difficulties.*

126. VOCABULARY

ar'bor, -oris, f., *tree.*
cōn'sul, -ulis, m., *consul.*
imperā'tor, -ō'ris, m., *commander-in-chief, general.*
so'ror, -ō'ris, f., *sister.*
vic'tor, -ō'ris, m., *victor.*
victō'ria, -ae, f., *victory.*
lā'tus, -a, -um, *broad, wide.*
quis, interrogative pronoun, *who?*
u'bi, interrogative adverb, *where;* relative adverb, *where, when.*
per, prep. with accus., *through, by, by means of.*

Decline the above nouns in **-or** like **soror.** Note, however, that the **o** in **arbor** is short throughout.

127. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

arbor	victor	imperative
sorority	latitude	victory

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

RULE

128. Parsing. — To parse a noun give (1) declension, (2) nominative and genitive singular, (3) gender, (4) number, (5) case, (6) rule for the case.

In 129, (*a*) 1, **oppidum** would be parsed as follows : **oppidum :** *second declension;* **oppidum, oppidī ;** *neuter* (*gender*) ; *singular* (*number*) ; *accusative* (*case*), *direct object* of the verb **occupāvērunt.**

EXERCISES

129. *Translate, parsing the nouns and giving synopses of the verbs:*

(*a*) 1. Victōrēs oppidum magnum per virōs occupāvērunt. 2. Erat magna victōria. 3. Amīcī cōnsulis agrōs multōs et lātōs spectābant. 4. Magister sorōrī parvae pulchrum librum dedit. 5. Fīlius imperātōris tubā cōnsulī victōriam magnam nūntiat.

(*b*) 1. Es fīlia bona. 2. Ad fēminam bonam praemia pulchra per agrōs portāverāmus. 3. Dominus bonus servōs novōs līberāverat. 4. Fuērunt in silvā multae et magnae arborēs. 5. Lēgātī ex oppidō in castra imperātōrem vocāvērunt.

130. *Translate, marking long vowels:*

(*a*) 1. There will be a new victory. 2. The consul's sister had been in the victor's field. 3. The just consul has set free many slaves in (his) native land. 4. The woman will praise (her) son's victory. 5. The lieutenants have not conquered the Gauls.

(*b*) 1. The victors gave many large horses to (their) sons, but will not give the boys swords. 2. You are a good man, but you are not free. 3. The commander-in-chief will announce the victory by (through) messengers to your consul. 4. The man called (his) sons and daughters out of the forest into the town. 5. We had given the beautiful trees to (our) friends.

131. Questions. — Questions which cannot be answered by *yes* or *no* are introduced by an interrogative pronoun or adverb. In such questions **ne** is not used.

Where was the consul? **Ubi erat cōnsul?**
Who is the general? **Quis est imperātor?**

ORAL EXERCISE

132. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Ubi soror puerī erat? 2. Quis es? 3. Nōnne magna victōria fuit? 4. Esne amīcus imperātōris? 5. Num numerus magnus erat?

Pyrrhus[1]

Pyrrhus erat imperātor bonus et rēx Ēpīrī (*of Epirus*) in Graeciā. In Ītaliā Graecī multī cum Rōmānīs pugnābant. Pyrrhum in Ītaliam vocāvērunt et bellum in Rōmānōs parāvērunt. Cum (*With*) anxiō animō Graecī in Ītaliā Pyrrhum exspectābant. Tandem (*at last*) cum elephantīs et multīs

[1] A "Pyrrhic victory" is one in which so many men are killed and wounded on the victor's side that the victory is as bad as a defeat.

PYRRHUS.

virīs Pyrrhus ad Ītaliam nāvigāvit. In prīmā pugnā Graecī superāvērunt quod (*because*) elephantī Rōmānōs terruērunt. Sed Rōmānī multōs Graecōs vulnerāvērunt et in proximā pugnā Pyrrhum et virōs Graecōs superāvērunt.

Translate:

1. In Italy there were Greek[1] towns. 2. The men in the towns were not friends of the Romans. 3. The Greeks called Pyrrhus[2] from (out of) Greece to Italy. 4. The elephants[3] of Pyrrhus were large and killed[4] many Romans. 5. But the Romans conquered in the war and the Roman general was the victor.

---

[1] **Graecus, -a, -um.**
[2] **Pyrrhus, -ī, m.**
[3] **elephantus, -ī, m.**
[4] **necō, -āre.**

LESSON XXI

THIRD DECLENSION (*Continued*)

Cum grano salis. — With a grain of salt.[1]

133. In many nouns of the third declension the nominative differs a little from the base. Notice that the English derivative usually is formed from the base and not from the nominative. *Military* — **mīlit**; *fratricide* — **frātr.**

	Mīles, m., *soldier*	**Dux**, m., *leader*	**Frāter**, m., *brother*
	BASE, **mī'lit-**	BASE, **duc-**	BASE, **frā'tr-**
		SINGULAR	
Nom.	mī'les	dux	frā'ter
Gen.	mī'lit**is**	du'c**is**	frā'tr**is**
Dat.	mī'lit**ī**	du'c**ī**	frā'tr**ī**
Acc.	mī'lit**em**	du'c**em**	frā'tr**em**
Abl.	mī'lit**e**	du'c**e**	frā'tr**e**
		PLURAL	
Nom.	mī'lit**ēs**	du'c**ēs**	frā'tr**ēs**
Gen.	mī'lit**um**	du'c**um**	frā'tr**um**
Dat.	mīli't**ibus**	du'c**ibus**	frā'tr**ibus**
Acc.	mī'lit**ēs**	du'c**ēs**	frā'tr**ēs**
Abl.	mīli't**ibus**	du'c**ibus**	frā'tr**ibus**

134. VOCABULARY

Cae'sar, -aris, m., *Caesar.*
de'cimus, -a, -um, *tenth.*
dux, du'cis, m., *leader.*
frā'ter, -tris, m., *brother.*
le'giō, -ō'nis, f., *legion.*
lī'bertās, -ā'tis, f., *freedom.*
mā'ter, -tris, f., *mother.*
mī'les, -itis, m., *soldier.*
pa'ter, -tris, m., *father.*
tē'lum, -ī, n., *missile, weapon.*

oppug'nō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *attack, storm.*
cum, preposition with ablative, *with.*

[1] Taking a remark *cum grano salis* implies that the remark is an exaggeration.

(*a*) Note carefully :

līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,	*to set free.*	Compare the English *liberate, liberal, liberty.*
līber, -era, -erum,	*free.*	
lībertās,	*freedom.*	
liber, librī,	*book.*	*library.*

135. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

fraternity	decimal	militia	paternal
duke	maternal	legion	fraternal

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

136. Ablative with *Cum* to Express Accompaniment. — "With," in English, when it refers to persons and has the idea of "in company with" or "along with," is expressed in Latin by the ablative with **cum.** This use is called the **Ablative of Accompaniment.**

The boy is with his father. **Puer cum patre est.**

Caesar with his soldiers freed the town. **Caesar cum mīlitibus oppidum līberāvit.**

Note. — **Cum** with the ablative must *never* be used to tell with what means or instrument an act is done. The "means" idea is expressed by the ablative *without* a preposition, as you have already learned, § 87.

He fights with a sword. **Gladiō pugnat.**

EXERCISES

137. *Translate, and give construction of each noun:*

(*a*) 1. Dux cum frātre erat. 2. Māter cum fīliō erit. 3. Gallī cum Caesare pugnābant. 4. Pater cum fīliābus est. 5. Caesar cum decimā legiōne oppidum Gallōrum oppugnāvit.

(*b*) 1. Mīles tubā decimae legiōnī victōriam nūntiāvit. 2. Malus vir tēlō mīlitem vulnerāverit. 3. Multa tēla in oppidō fuerant. 4. Fīliī cōnsulis patrī tēla dabunt. 5. Ducēs cum multīs mīlitibus oppida magna oppugnāverant.

138. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. The soldiers fought with the tenth legion. 2. The men saved the town of (their) fathers. 3. The leaders will storm the camp. 4. The girl was with (her) brother in the native land of the Gauls. 5. Caesar gives a signal to (his) new legions.

(*b*) 1. The general and (his) sons are good friends. 2. The consul's mother and sister were unhappy. 3. The messenger carried money from the town to the farmer. 4. The lieutenants have announced the victories of the soldiers. 5. The leader's soldiers were in camp and (there) had been great deeds.

ORAL EXERCISE

139. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quis cōnsul erit? 2. Pugnāvistīne tēlīs? 3. Quis cum Gallīs pugnābat? 4. Mīlitēsne oppidum oppugnāvērunt? 5. Ubi erant bonī puerī?

Servus Fīdus

Bellum erat. Cōnsul multōs mīlitēs vocāvit et castra in silvā locāvit. Cōnsul dux mīlitum erat et bellum amābat, sed fīliī et fīliae mīlitum bellum nōn amābant.

Barbarī castra oppugnant.[1] Cōnsul decimam legiōnem ēvocat. Mīlitēs pugnant et barbarōs superant. Tum cōnsul,[2] "Iam patriam servāvistis. In oppidō patrēs mīlitum et mātrēs et frātrēs et sorōrēs et fīliī et fīliae fāmam dē victōriā exspectant. Quis nūntius erit et victōriam nūntiābit? Longa est via ā castrīs ad oppidum, et silvae dēnsae sunt. In silvīs multī barbarī sunt. Mīlitēs dēfessī sunt. Ubi est servus nōn timidus?"

Tum servus parvus litterās ē castrīs in oppidum portāvit

---

[1] In narrative the present tense is often used instead of the perfect.

[2] Supply *said*.

THE ROMAN FORUM.

The Forum was the political and artistic center of the Roman World. The upper picture looks southeast. At the right, above the Basilica Julia and the Temple of Castor and Pollux, are the imperial palaces on the Palatine Hill. The lower picture looks northwest. In the center it shows the rostrum from which so many famous speeches were made. Beyond is the Capitoline Hill with the Temple of Juno and the Arx or citadel.

et victōriam nūntiāvit. Cōnsul servum fīdum līberāvit. Tum servus cōnsulī ob factum bonum grātiās ēgit.[1]

Nōnne servus lībertātem amāvit?

Translate:

1. Slaves will not fight but they will carry letters. 2. If[2] they are good, the master gives the slaves money and freedom. 3. The soldiers conquered the barbarians and the slave announced the victory in the town. 4. The boys,[3] girls, men, and women were waiting for the messenger. 5. He carried the letter from the general to the town. 6. It was a good deed and we like a faithful messenger.

Early Education of Roman Children

In ancient Rome, as now, the training of children, both boys and girls, up to the age of seven, was largely in the hands of the father and mother. The early home training of the Roman child laid emphasis upon the development of character and morals rather than on scholastic attainment. Children were taught to be absolutely obedient, to respect the law, to reverence the gods, and to be truthful and honest. To this excellent early home training and parental interest is due in a large part the greatness which Rome attained, because the prosperity and greatness of every nation depend upon the training of the children who are to be its future citizens.

The children constantly associated with their parents, particularly with their mothers, who taught them the three "R's." The Roman boy was also the companion of his father much more than was the case with other nations.

---

[1] From **agō**. [2] **Sī**.

[3] The Latin uses **et** to connect all the words of a series of words or else omits it altogether.

When the Roman boy was seven years old he went to school, usually outside the home. The girls for the most part stayed at home and learned from their mothers the details of housekeeping and managing the slaves, of whom there were very many in the homes of the well-to-do. Going to school in Rome was largely confined to boys, because girls

ROMANS BOXING.

Contests and games which developed skill and courage were very popular among the Romans.

married early and had so many practical things to learn in a short time.

The Roman father taught his sons riding, swimming, wrestling, and games which would increase their strength, because they were likely to serve as soldiers. He also took his sons, in the early days of Rome, to the Senate and courts, where they heard the greatest orators of the day and saw how the government was carried on. The son also stood near his father when the father received his clients in the morning. In this way the Roman boy learned to be seen and not heard, and gained a great deal of information

which would be useful to him when he grew up. As fathers became busier and had less time to devote to their sons, boys were trained by slaves and others; under this scheme they had more mental training, but not the good old-fashioned moral training which the parents gave them. As a result they grew up to be inferior citizens and the State suffered.

LESSON XXII

SECOND CONJUGATION

Auribus teneo lupum. — I've caught a Tartar.[1]

140. The Four Conjugations. — There are in Latin four regular conjugations of verbs. They are distinguished by the vowel before **-re** in the present infinitive active. Their stems are all found in the same way as those of **portō.** See §§ 66 and 98.

	Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*Perf. Pass. Part.*	*Stem Vowel*
1st	**por'tō**	**portā're**	**portā'vī**	**portā'tus**	**ā**
2d	**mo'neō**	**monē're**	**mo'nuī**	**mo'nitus**	**ē**
3d	**dū'cō**	**dū'cere**	**dūx'ī**	**duc'tus**	**e**
4th	**au'diō**	**audī're**	**audī'vī**	**audī'tus**	**ī**

141. The Second Conjugation. — The same rules as to stem, tense sign, and personal ending are followed for forming the various indicative tenses in the second conjugation as in the first. The *present stem* is **monē-**; the *perfect stem*, **monu-**.

In the first person singular of the present tense **ē** of the stem is retained before the personal ending **-ō, moneō,** but it is shortened.

142. Conjugation of **mo'neō,** *I advise, warn.*

Indicative Active

PRESENT		PERFECT	
I advise, warn		*I have advised, warned*	
mo'neō	**monē'mus**	**mo'nuī**	**monu'imus**
mo'nēs	**monē'tis**	**monuis'tī**	**monuis'tis**
mo'net[2]	**mo'nent**	**mo'nuit**	**monuē'runt**

[1] Terence. Literally: *I hold a wolf by the ears.*

[2] Note that the quantity of **e** corresponds to that of **a** in the first conjugation. See § 67 and footnote.

IMPERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
I was advising, warning		*I had advised, warned*	
monē'**bam**	monē**bā'**mus	monu'**eram**	monu**erā'**mus
monē'**bās**	monē**bā'**tis	monu'**erās**	monu**erā'**tis
monē'**bat**	monē'**bant**	monu'**erat**	monu'**erant**
FUTURE		FUTURE PERFECT	
I shall advise, warn		*I shall have advised, warned*	
monē'**bō**	monē'**bimus**	monu'**erō**	monu**e'rimus**
monē'**bis**	monē'**bitis**	monu'**eris**	monu**e'ritis**
monē'**bit**	monē'**bunt**	monu'**erit**	monu'**erint**

143. VOCABULARY

ha'beō, -ē're, -uī, -itus, *have, hold, consider.*

mo'neō, -ē're, -uī, -itus, *warn, advise.*

mo'veō, -ē're, mō'vī, mō'tus, *move;* (with **castra**), *break up.*

remo'veō, -ē're, -mō'vī, -mō'tus, *move back, remove.*

permo'veō, -ē're, -mō'vī, -mō'tus, *alarm, influence.*

te'neō, -ē're, -uī, ——, *hold.*

reti'neō, -ē're, -uī, -ten'tus, *restrain, detain, retain.*

ti'meō, -ē're, -uī, ——, *fear, be afraid of.*

vi'deō, -ē're, vī'dī, vī'sus, *see.*

144. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

admonish	timid	tenacious
visible	movable	motion

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES ON VERB FORMS

145. *Analyze each form:*

(*a*) 1. Habēbam, habuit, habēbunt, habuerātis. 2. Vidēmus, vīdimus, videt, vīdit. 3. Timēbō, timuērunt, timuerint, timuit. 4. Movēbunt, remōvimus, permovent, remōverātis. 5. Tenēbant, retinuistī, retinuit, tenuerint.

(*b*) 1. Portat, laudāvī, timuī, nūntiāvit. 2. Parāvistis, vīdistis, dedistis, appellābāmus. 3. Timēs, retinuerō, habēbat, vīdērunt. 4. Vidēbant, cōnfirmās, monet, mōvit. 5. Portāvit, monuit, dedit, fuit.

(*c*) Give synopses in the indicative active of:

habeō, tenēs, timet, movēmus, vidētis, movent

146. *Translate, marking long vowels:*

(*a*) 1. We were moving, they had moved back, he will alarm. 2. I shall warn, you had warned. 3. We have feared, they have seen, I shall have. 4. You have stormed, we were having. 5. They gave, they had been, they were seeing.

(*b*) 1. He warned, he gave, he saw. 2. He will have seen, he had held back, you (*plu.*) are fearing. 3. You (*sing.*) were seeing, I had moved, you will have held. 4. They warn, we seized, he carries. 5. They had called, I am seeing, you removed.

ORAL EXERCISE

147. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Movēbisne? 2. Num mīlitem vīdistis? 3. Nōnne frātrem monuerās? 4. Habuistīne tēla? 5. Timetne cōnsul?

Coriolānus

Coriolānus malus Rōmānus erat sed bonus mīles. Rōmānī nūllum frūmentum habēbant et timēbant magnam famem. Rēx Siciliae multum frūmentum mīserat (*had sent*) sed Coriolānus frūmentum pauperibus (*the poor*, dat.) nōn dedit. Pauperēs (*The poor people*) Coriolānum ex oppidō ēgērunt (*drove*).

Posteā Coriolānus dux Volscōrum (*of the Volscians*) erat et cum mīlitibus Rōmānīs pugnābat. Rōmānōs multīs pugnīs superāverat. Rōmānī dīxērunt (*said*), "Mox Coriolānus Rōmam occupābit."

Māter igitur Coriolānī et uxor et fīliī et fīliae ex oppidō properāvērunt. Māter dīxit (*said*), "Parce (*spare*, w. dat.) Rōmae, Coriolāne." Coriolānus respondit, "Rōmae parcam (*I will spare*), māter. Servāvistī Rōmam sed amīsistī (*you have lost*) tuum fīlium." Tum Coriolānus cum mīlitibus abiit (*went away*) et māter eum (*him*) numquam posteā vīdit.

A Roman Triumph.

Translate:

1. The Romans feared Coriolanus because (**quod**) he was bad. 2. Coriolanus was besieging the town and the Romans did not have grain. 3. The consuls fought with Coriolanus but he conquered. 4. He will capture the town and the Romans will be slaves. 5. Coriolanus loved (his) mother and called (his) soldiers from the battle.

LESSON XXIII

THIRD DECLENSION (*Continued*)

Mens sana in corpore sano.—A sound mind in a sound body.[1]

148. The terminations of **neuters** of the third declension differ from those of masculines and feminines in the nominative and accusative, singular and plural. Compare § 45, *a*.

	Caput, n., *head*	**Flūmen,** n., *river*	**Corpus,** n., *body*	
	BASE, **capit-**	BASE, **flūmin-**	BASE, **corpor-**	
		SINGULAR		TERMINATIONS
Nom.	ca′put	flū′men	cor′pus	—
Gen.	ca′pit**is**	flū′min**is**	cor′por**is**	**is**
Dat.	ca′pit**ī**	flū′min**ī**	cor′por**ī**	**ī**
Acc.	ca′put	flū′men	cor′pus	—
Abl.	ca′pit**e**	flū′min**e**	cor′por**e**	**e**
		PLURAL		
Nom.	ca′pit**a**	flū′min**a**	cor′por**a**	**a**
Gen.	ca′pit**um**	flū′min**um**	cor′por**um**	**um**
Dat.	capi′t**ibus**	flūmi′n**ibus**	corpo′r**ibus**	**ibus**
Acc.	ca′pit**a**	flū′min**a**	cor′por**a**	**a**
Abl.	capi′t**ibus**	flūmi′n**ibus**	corpo′r**ibus**	**ibus**

149. VOCABULARY

ca′put, ca′pitis, n., *head.*
cele′ritās, celeritā′tis, f., *swiftness, speed.*
cor′pus, cor′poris, n., *body.*
flū′men, flū′minis, n., *river.*
ho′mō, ho′minis, m., *man, human being.*
lātitū′dō, -inis, f., *width.*
pēs, pe′dis, m., *foot.*
rēx, rē′gis, m., *king.*
vir′tūs, virtū′tis, f., *manliness, bravery.*
labō′rō, -ā′re, -ā′vī, -ātū′rus, *labor, work.*
pro′perō, -ā′re, -ā′vī, -ātū′rus, *hurry, hasten.*
quid, interrogative pronoun, *what?*

[1] Juvenal.

Note. — In studying a vocabulary always look carefully at new words to see how they are formed. The following endings or suffixes show that the words are nouns formed from adjectives :

-tās, -tūdō, -(t)ia. Equivalent English endings include: *-ship, -ness, -tude, -(t)y.* These suffixes help to form abstract nouns which denote "condition or quality."

Latin words of this sort are :

-tās — hūmānitās, lībertās, līberālitās, aequitās, sānitās, dignitās, celeritās, fertilitās, brevitās, difficultās, ūtilitās, etc.

EXAMPLE: **līber** (*free*) + **tās** = **lībertās,** *liberty, freedom*

-tūdō — lātitūdō, multitūdō, magnitūdō, longitūdō, altitūdō, cōnsuētūdō, fortitūdō, etc.

EXAMPLE : **magnus** (*great*) + **tūdō** = **magnitūdō,** *greatness, magnitude*

-(t)ia — miseria, memoria, iniūria, grātia, audācia, invidia, etc.

EXAMPLE : **miser** (*wretched*) + **ia** = **miseria,** *misery, wretchedness*

150. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

capital	regal	pedestrian
pedestal	corporal	corpse

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

151. Ablative with *Cum* in Expressions of Manner. — The manner of doing something (*how* it is done, as opposed to the means *by which* or *with which* it is done) is expressed by the ablative with **cum.** **Cum,** however, may be omitted when the ablative is modified by an adjective. This usage is called the **Ablative of Manner.**

He works with care. **Cum dīligentiā labōrat.**
He works with great care. **Magnā**[1] **cum dīligentiā labōrat.**
Magnā dīligentiā labōrat.

Note. — Review the rule dealing with *means,* § 87, and with *accompaniment,* § 136.

---

[1] When the noun of a prepositional phrase is modified by an adjective, the adjective is often placed before a monosyllabic preposition.

EXERCISES

152. *Translate, and give principal parts of each verb:*

(*a*) 1. Homō cum celeritāte ad flūmen properābit. 2. Mīlitēs cum virtūte oppidum servāvērunt. 3. Magistrī magnā cum amīcitiā puerōs spectāvērunt. 4. Caesar magnā cum dīligentiā decimam legiōnem in castrīs retinuerit. 5. Pedēs et corpus equī vidēmus; equus cum dīligentiā labōrat.

(*b*) 1. Fīlius rēgis bonōs amīcōs habēbit. 2. Hominēs decimam legiōnem timuerant. 3. Rēx magnam lātitūdinem flūminis vīdit. 4. Hominēs castra remōverint. 5. Bonus equus corpus magnum sed caput parvum habet.

153. *Translate, marking long vowels:*

(*a*) 1. The good teacher will advise the brother and sister with great care. 2. With great speed the soldiers hastened from the town. 3. The boys feared the man's friend. 4. We fought with bravery with bad men, but were not victors. 5. The man's body was large, but (his) feet were small.

(*b*) 1. The men had wounded the horse's head with long weapons. 2. We saw the lieutenant and the king on the river. 3. Many men fear deep rivers. 4. The Gauls have soldiers in (their) towns. 5. With great friendship the commander-in-chief had looked at the soldiers.

ORAL EXERCISE

154. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quid vīdistī? 2. Suntne magnae īnsulae in flūmine? 3. Habēsne amīcum? 4. Num ducēs castra mōvērunt? 5. Quis habet magnum caput?

Carthāgō

Carthāgō oppidum in Āfricā erat. Rōmānī Carthāginiēnsēs nōn amābant. Rōmānī Hannibalem, ducem Carthāginiēnsium (*of the Carthaginians*), timēbant, quod magnā

cum virtūte pugnāvit. Hannibal ducēs Rōmānōrum multīs pugnīs superāverat. Erat homō magnae virtūtis. Multōs annōs (*For many years*) Rōma et Carthāgō pugnāvērunt sed tandem Rōmānī Carthāginem occupāvērunt. Eō tempore

View of Carthage.

(*At that time*) Hasdrubal, frāter Hannibalis, erat dux Carthāginiēnsium. Hasdrubal bonus dux erat, sed nōn pār (*equal to*, w. dat.) Hannibalī. Quod (*Because*) timēbant Carthāginem, Rōmānī eam (*it*) dēlēvērunt.

Translate:

1. Hannibal was a good general. 2. He had many men and they were good soldiers. 3. They do not fear the Roman weapons. 4. With their swords and weapons they will fight with bravery. 5. But the leader of the Romans will conquer and will save Rome.

LESSON XXIV

REVIEW

Consensus facit legem. — General consent makes a law.

155. Derivatives. — (*a*) Write all the English words you can that seem to be derived from the following:

arbor	lātus	victōria	fēmina
dux	frāter	pater	mīles
decimus	caput	corpus	homō
pēs	moveō	teneō	videō

(*b*) With the aid of an unabridged English dictionary, study carefully the form and meaning of the following and compare with the Latin originals:

pavement, volcano, principal, candor, bonus, miser

156. Word Drill. — (*a*) Give the nominative and genitive singular and the gender of the Latin nouns for the following:

brother, sister, mother, river, father, legion, king, leader

(*b*) Give the genitive singular and gender of the following, also the English meaning:

vir, corpus, tēlum, victōria, arbor, mīles, pēs, caput

(*c*) See how many seconds it takes you to give the principal parts of the Latin verbs for the following:

fear, see, seize, hold, storm, conquer, warn

(*d*) Give the principal parts of the following and their English meaning:

moneō, līberō, moveō, habeō, nūntiō, dō

(*e*) The following words of the third declension have the same form in English and Latin: **animal, apex, arbor, ardor, axis, bases, candor, censor, cognomen, color, competitor, consul, dictator, error, favor, finis, furor, genus, gladiator, honor, horror, interior, janitor, labor, languor, liquor, major, minor, multiplex, odor, omen, onus, opus, orator, pallor, pastor, posterior, prior, ratio, senator, senior, speculator, splendor, superior, tutor, ulterior, vapor, vertex, victor, vigor.** Look up the meanings of those you do not know.

157. Form Drill. — 1. Decline **cōnsul, imperātor, flūmen, dux, virtūs.** 2. Conjugate **videō** through the indicative active. 3. Give the genitive singular ending of nouns of the first, second, and third declensions; also the accusative singular, genitive plural, and accusative plural endings. 4. Make two statements in Latin, one containing an ablative showing "with what" the action was done (means) and the other an expression showing "with whom" the action was done (accompaniment). 5. Make a statement in Latin containing an ablative showing "how" or "in what way" the action was done (manner).

158. Questions. — 1. Of what gender are nouns of the first declension? of the second? of the third? 2. What are the nominative singular endings of masculine nouns of the second declension? of neuter nouns of the second declension? 3. How are the four conjugations of verbs distinguished? 4. How does the present stem of the first conjugation usually end? the present stem of the second conjugation?

ORAL EXERCISE

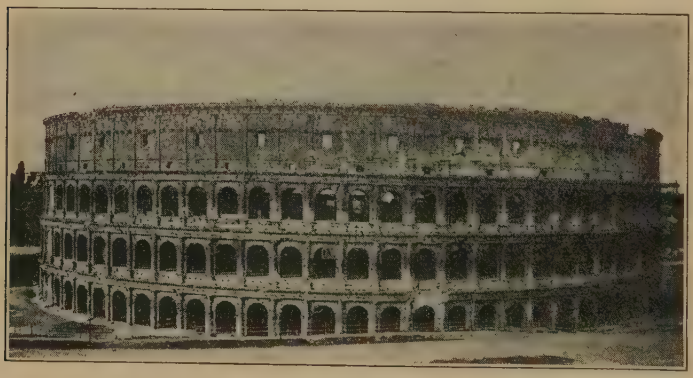
159. *Translate:*

1. Puella fēminae librum dedit. 2. Multa aqua in agrō fuit. 3. Tēla mīlitis multa et magna erant. 4. Pater fīliābus librōs

pulchrōs dedit, sed fīliīs gladiōs. 5. Multī ducēs magnam mīlitum virtūtem laudant. 6. Virī malum cōnsulem nōn amāverant. 7. Soror rēgis legiōnēs et flūmina vidēbit. 8. Hominēs decimam legiōnem timuerant. 9. Servus ā dominō ad rēgem praemia pulchra portābat. 10. Multī rēgēs flūmina et īnsulās vidēbunt.

Spartacus et Gladiātōrēs

In Ītaliā erant multī servī quī (*who*) in lūdīs (*games*) pūblicīs pugnāvērunt. Rōmānī hōs (*these*) servōs gladiātōrēs appellāvērunt. Spartacus dux gladiātōrum erat.



The Colosseum.
This is where the gladiators fought.

Gladiātōrēs crēbrās pugnās nōn amāvērunt. Cum cēterīs servīs et cum Spartacō duce gladiātōrēs ā dominīs dēfēcērunt (*revolted*). Magnā cum celeritāte ad Vesuvium properāvērunt. Multae legiōnēs Rōmānōrum cum servīs pugnāvērunt sed servī lībertātem amāvērunt et Rōmānōs superāvērunt.

Tandem Spartacus dēcrēvit (*decided*) servōs ex Ītaliā ēdūcere (*to lead out*). Sed servī īre nōn volēbant (*did not wish to go*). Cum Rōmānīs igitur servī iterum pugnāvērunt, sed Rōmānī superāvērunt. Crassus dux Rōmānōrum erat et

Spartacus servōrum. Tenētisne memoriā ōrātiōnem Spartacī ad gladiātōrēs?

Translate:

1. There were many slaves in Italy. 2. Spartacus was the leader of the slaves in the war. 3. They fought with the Romans with swords and weapons. 4. The slaves were men of great bravery. 5. They defeated many legions and prepared a great camp. 6. The consul with many legions saved Rome and announced the victory.

Roman Schools

You have learned that Roman children, up to the age of seven, received their training at home, usually from their parents. Sometimes there was an educated slave in the household, much better educated than his master, because many educated Greeks were captured in war. Under such circumstances it was natural to have this slave assist in the education of the children of the household. Oftentimes the father allowed children of his friends to come to his house to be taught there. Eventually, however, this became inconvenient except for the very wealthy and schools were started in suitable locations.

These schools were usually conducted by a Greek slave who received small presents from his pupils and thus might perhaps be able to buy his freedom some day. There were good schools and bad schools, depending upon the teacher. The school was frequently a shed adjoining some centrally located building and open to the street. School began before sunrise and pupils carried candles to study by until it was light. These schools were not a very good place to study with all the street noises and confusion so near to the pupils.

In these schools boys learned reading, writing, and arithmetic, and recited long selections from the great Roman writers. A Roman school was a noisy place when pupils shouted their answers to the teacher or declaimed selections. It was also noisy when the boys were whipped, which happened very often. The teacher and Roman parents believed firmly in the old saying, "Spare the rod and spoil the child."

DISCIPLINE IN A ROMAN SCHOOL.

A famous Roman poet called his teacher "Orbilius the Pounder."

A slave known as a **paedagōgus,** from which name we have our word "pedagogue," accompanied the wealthy Roman boy to and from school, carried his books, and kept him out of mischief and trouble.

Sons of wealthy families, after attending the elementary school, which was of course always "private" in the sense that every child paid tuition, went on to "grammar" schools

and schools of "rhetoric." Most of these children knew Greek, which they learned from their nurse or tutor, and they continued this study in the "grammar" school. The schools of "rhetoric" were higher schools principally for training orators and public officials, and corresponded to our colleges. They were organized like the Greek schools, with Greek teachers, and a great deal of time was spent in declamation, argumentation, and debate.

Travel was another means of education of which the wealthy always took advantage, particularly for study in the Greek schools abroad.

LESSON XXV

PASSIVE VOICE

Tempora mutantur. — Times are changing.[1]

160. The Passive Voice[2] has the following personal endings:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st	**-r**	**-mur**
2d	**-ris**	**-minī**
3d	**-tur**	**-ntur**

The rules for forming the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* indicative are the same as in the active voice; the passive personal endings take the place of the active endings.

161. PASSIVE VOICE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present Indicative	
por'to**r**, *I am (being) carried.*	portā'**mur**, *we are carried.*
portā'**ris**, *you are carried.*	portā'**minī**, *you are carried.*
portā'**tur**, *he is carried.*	porta**n'tur**, *they are carried.*
Imperfect Indicative	
portā'**bar**, *I was (being) carried.*	portā**bā'**mur, *we were carried.*
portā**bā'**ris, *you were carried.*	portā**bā'**minī, *you were carried.*
portā**bā'**tur, *he was carried.*	portā**ban**'tur, *they were carried.*
Future Indicative	
portā'**bor**, *I shall be carried.*	portā'**bi**mur, *we shall be carried.*
portā'**beris**, *you will be carried.*	portā**bi'**minī, *you will be carried.*
portā'**bi**tur, *he will be carried.*	portā**bun**'tur, *they will be carried.*

[1] Literally, *are being changed.*
[2] Compare §§ 653 and 654.

(*a*) Note the change in the vowel of the tense sign in the first and second person singular and third person plural of the future passive.

(*b*) Compare carefully the English translation of the active and passive of each tense.

162. Perfect Tenses. — The perfect stem is not used in the passive voice. The participial stem is used instead. This is found by dropping **-us** from the perfect passive participle (the last one of the principal parts), or, in the case of intransitive verbs, by dropping **-ūrus** from the future active participle (see note 2 to page 112).

The *perfect*, *pluperfect*, and *future perfect* tenses in the passive are made by combining the participial stem with the endings seen in **magnus, -a, -um,** with forms of **sum.** The ending of the participial stem agrees with the subject, and this form is conjugated with **sum** for the perfect, **eram** for the pluperfect, and **erō** for the future perfect.

Perfect

I have been (was) carried, etc.

portā'tus, (-a, -um)	sum	portā'tī (-ae, -a)	su'mus
	es		es'tis
	est		sunt

Pluperfect

I had been carried, etc.

portā'tus, (-a, -um)	e'ram	portā'tī (-ae, -a)	erā'mus
	e'rās		erā'tis
	e'rat		e'rant

Future Perfect

I shall have been carried, etc.

portā'tus, (-a, -um)	e'rō	portā'tī (-ae, -a)	e'rimus
	e'ris		e'ritis
	e'rit		e'runt

Conjugate **portō** in the feminine and neuter through the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses in the passive voice.

EXERCISES ON VERB FORMS

163. *Analyze each Latin form:*

(*a*) 1. Laudābantur, laudātī sumus, laudāvī. 2. Portāberis, portātum erat, portor. 3. Pugnāvimus, pugnābunt, pugnāverāmus. 4. Occupāta sunt, occupāta est, occupātur. 5. Amābiminī, amātī erimus, amātae erant.

(*b*) 1. Vulnerātus es, vulnerābāminī, vulnerāberis. 2. Dantur, dabuntur, dedimus. 3. Data erunt, appellāberis, amābuntur. 4. Vocābāmur, vocāvistis, vocātum erat. 5. Comparāvit, nūntiābitur, līberāta est.

164. *Translate, marking long vowels:*

(*a*) 1. You will be wounded. 2. They had been called-by-name. 3. I shall be praised. 4. It will be announced. 5. They (*neut.*) have been seized.

(*b*) 1. It has been carried. 2. They were conquered. 3. They have strengthened. 4. We have been called. 5. It was saved.

165. VOCABULARY

cōnsi'lium, -ī, n., *plan, counsel.*
de'us, -ī, m., *god.*[1]
lo'cus, -ī, m., *place;* pl., **lo'ca, -ō'rum,** n.
nā'vigō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ātū'rūs, *sail.*
negō'tium, -ī, n., *business, task.*
e'ques, -itis, m., *horseman, knight;* plural, *cavalry.*
o'culus, -ī, m., *eye.*
offi'cium, -ī, n., *duty.*
praesi'dium, -ī, n., *garrison, protection.*
proe'lium, -ī, n., *battle.*
so'cius, -ī, m., *ally.*
pe'des, -itis, m., *foot soldier;* plural, *infantry.*

Compare **bellum** and **proelium.**

166. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

deity equestrian pedestrian local navigate oculist social

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

---

[1] See § 591 for peculiarities in the declension of **deus.**

167. Ablative with *ā* or *ab* and Passive Voice. — With a passive verb, the person *by whom* something is done is expressed by the ablative with **ā** or **ab**. This is called the **Ablative of Personal Agent.** **Ā** or **ab** in this use is always translated *by*, not *from*. Review the prepositions in Lesson 18.

The good boy is (being) praised by his father.	**Puer bonus ā patre laudātur.**
The book was (being) carried by the teacher.	**Liber ā magistrō portābātur.**

EXERCISES

168. *Translate, and tell the use of each noun in the ablative case:*

(*a*) 1. Eques bonus ā mātre laudābitur. 2. Multa praesidia ā sociīs parāta erant. 3. Deī ā puerīs amantur. 4. Nova cōnsilia ab equitibus nūntiābuntur. 5. Negōtia ducis in proeliō magna sunt.

(*b*) 1. In Galliā victōriae cōnsulī semper nūntiātae erant. 2. Lēgātī ā locō tubā ā sociō vocābuntur. 3. Corpus equī multīs tēlīs vulnerābātur. 4. Virī agrōs Galliae oculīs spectant. 5. Peditēs et sociī cōnsilium equitum nōn amant.

169. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. The number of allies is great. 2. The teacher has been praised by the boy's friend. 3. The garrison did not sail with the soldiers. 4. The general and (his) companion will have been loved by many friends. 5. The signals had always been given with a trumpet by the soldier.

(*b*) 1. The valor of the new soldiers will always be praised by the leaders. 2. The sons and daughters of the king are in the town with (their) friends. 3. The leader breaks camp and the soldiers are called into the battle. 4. The gods are being praised by the sons and daughters of the king. 5. The soldiers attacked the garrison with great valor.

ORAL EXERCISE

170. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Puerne ā mātre vocābātur? 2. Quis parvō mīlitī tēlum dedit? 3. Lēgātusne mīlitēs vocābit? 4. Frūmentumne in oppidum portātum est? 5. Quis amīcus puerōrum erit?

Androclus et Leō

Ōlim erat Rōmae (*at Rome*) servus quī (*who*) Androclus appellātus est. Memoriā tenētis lūdōs (*games*) Rōmānōs. In lūdīs gladiātōrēs et servī pugnābant inter sē (*with each other*) et interdum cum animālibus. Androclus erat servus et in arēnam missus est (*was sent*). In arēnā erat leō magnus. Androclus leōnem vīdit et timuit sed leō Androclō nōn nocuit (*did not harm*, w. dat.). Leō Androclum memoriā tenēbat quod Androclus spīnam ex pede leōnis in dēsertīs locīs (*the desert*) ōlim extrāxerat (*had drawn out*). Rōmānī attonitī (*astonished*) erant quod Androclus salvus erat. Leō igitur Androclō datus est et Androclus ā dominō līberātus est. Quis est rēs ad quam fābula spectat? (*What is the moral of the story?*)

Translate:

1. The wretched slave was called Androclus. 2. The lion remembered (held by memory) Androclus. 3. The lion did not fight and the life of Androclus was saved. 4. The master did not give Androclus money. 5. Rewards are given to good men by the gods.

LESSON XXVI

SECOND CONJUGATION, PASSIVE

Fas est et ab hoste doceri. — *It is right to learn even from a foe.*[1]

171. The passive of the second conjugation is formed according to the same rules as that of the first conjugation. See Lesson XXV.

Conjugate **moneō** according to the rules before consulting the book. Compare with § 610.

172. VOCABULARY

Rō'ma, -ae, f., *Rome.*
de'cem, indeclinable adj., *ten.*
por'ta, -ae, f., *gate* (of a city or camp).
hi'ems, hi'emis, f., *winter.*
multitū'dō, -inis, f., *a great number, multitude.*
perī'culum, -ī, n., *danger.*
po'pulus, -ī, m., *people, nation.*
Rōmā'nus, -ī, m., *a Roman.*
Rōmā'nus, -a, -um, *Roman.*
altitū'dō, -inis, f., *height, depth.*
magnitū'dō, -inis, f., *greatness, great size.*

Give synopses of **moveō** and **retinet** in the indicative active and passive in the person and number given here.

Note. — Adjectives are formed from nouns and other adjectives by adding different endings called *suffixes.* Thus **Rōmānus** is formed by adding to **Rōm-**, the base of **Rōma,** the suffix **-ānus** (which means *pertaining to*). The equivalent English ending is *an* (Rom*an*). Other words like this in Latin are: **oppidānus, hūmānus, urbānus, veterānus, cotīdiānus, montānus.**

In the same way the suffix **-ius,** added to the base of a noun like **pater,** helps to form an adjective, **patrius,** which means *pertaining to father.* **Rēgius** is formed in the same way.

The suffix **-icus,** added to a stem, produces words like **Gallicus,** *pertaining to Gaul* or *Gallic.* Like this are **pūblicus, Germānicus, nauticus, domesticus.** The equivalent English ending is often *-ic.*

[1] Literally: *It is right to be taught even by a foe.*

173. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

population decimal portal altitude magnitude

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES ON VERB FORMS

174. *Translate and analyze each form:*

(*a*) 1. Habet, monēmur, datur. 2. Vīsae sunt, vīdērunt, videntur. 3. Tenētur, tenēbātur, tenuerant. 4. Mōvī, mōtus est, movēbitur. 5. Habēbit, vidēbāris, servāveris.

(*b*) 1. Remōvit, vīdit, dedit. 2. Monuerāmus, vīsī erāmus, tenuerint. 3. Tenēbuntur, datum est, monitī sumus. 4. Vulnerātī erātis, līberābitur, vocāta eris. 5. Fuerant, erātis, fuimus.

175. *Translate, marking long vowels:*

(*a*) 1. We had, you were seen, they have been warned. 2. He had been, he had been wounded, I am (being) seen. 3. They will have been warned, it was given, we are. 4. They (*neut.*) had been conquered, we have conquered, it is (being) conquered. 5. It has been moved, they will be seen, I have seen.

(*b*) 1. He had held, he had been seen, he will be held. 2. You (*sing.*) will be warned, you will warn, he had been warned. 3. You (*plu.*) have, you (*plu.*) are (being) seen, they had given. 4. We shall have been called, you had moved, they will be seen, it had been given. 5. We shall be saved, they have been saved, you (*sing.*) will be saved.

EXERCISES

176. *Translate, and conjugate each passive verb through the tense in which it is used:*

(*a*) 1. Magnitūdō perīculī ab imperātōre vestrō nūntiāta est. 2. Decem novī nūntiī ab ducibus vidēbantur. 3. Oppidum magnum ā duce bonō oppugnātum erat. 4. Rōmānī bellum

parāvērunt et multa Galliae oppida superāvērunt. 5. Populus Rōmānus[1] multitūdinem pulchrōrum oppidōrum habuit.

(*b*) 1. Mīlitēs ex portīs castrōrum magnā cum celeritāte vocābuntur. 2. Dē perīculō hiemis in Galliā ab amīcō bonō monēberis. 3. Decem legiōnēs in castrīs tenēbantur. 4. Dux magnam altitūdinem flūminis vīdit et timuit. 5. Fīliī agricolārum cum patribus in agrīs fuerant.

177. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. He wounded a multitude of foot soldiers with weapons. 2. The just lieutenants have not been detained in camp by the consuls. 3. Many large towns had been seized by the Roman general. 4. The tenth legion had been called together with great swiftness. 5. The danger of a winter in camp was reported to the soldiers of the tenth legion.

(*b*) 1. The signals were seen by the Gauls in the town. 2. The lieutenant had been warned by frequent messengers. 3. The forests are many and the rivers are deep. 4. The great size of the camp was seen by the soldiers. 5. The Roman soldiers fought with the horsemen in front of the gate.

ORAL EXERCISE

178. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Ubi castra Caesaris erant? 2. Pugnābisne cum amīcīs? 3. Nōnne deī erunt bonī? 4. Num cōnsilia mala sunt? 5. Quid in agrō mīlitis Rōmānī est?

Dux Mīlitibus

"Mox Gallī oppidum nostrum oppugnābunt. Cōpiās convocāvērunt et per silvās cum celeritāte properant. Litterās ad nostrōs amīcōs iam mīsī (*I have sent*) et nōbīs auxilium mittent (*they will send*). Superāvistī Gallōs anteā et iterum

---

[1] **Rōmānus** always follows **populus** in this expression.

eōs (*them*) superābitis. Nunc properant ad portās nostrās. Perīculum magnum erit sed fortūna quoque magna erit. Patrēs et līberī mīlitum proelium spectābunt. Libenter labōrābimus et brevī tempore (*in a short time*) nūntius vērus omnibus fīnitimīs victōriam nūntiābit."

MĪLITĒS RŌMĀNĪ.

"Nunc signum dabō et vōs (*you*) ad proelium dūcam (*will lead*). Pugnāte (*fight*, imper.) prō patriā."

Translate:

1. The town was being besieged by the Gauls. 2. The soldiers will fight with great diligence for (their) country. 3. Friends have hastened to neighboring towns and they will give aid. 4. The gods love the town and will save it (**id**). 5. If (**sī**) men fight with the aid of the gods, they always (**semper**) conquer.

LESSON XXVII

THIRD CONJUGATION

Montani semper liberi.—Mountaineers are always free.[1]

179. Third conjugation verbs end in **-ere** in the present infinitive. The principal parts of **dūcō,** *I lead,* are: **dū′cō, dū′cere, dūx′ī, duc′tus.** The tense stems are: present stem, **dūce-**; perfect stem, **dūx-**; participial stem, **duct-.**

(*a*) **Present tense** = *present stem* (with **e** changed to **i**) + *personal endings.* The vowel of the ending in the first person singular is simply **ō,** in the third person plural **u.**

Imperfect tense = *present stem* (with **e** lengthened) + *tense sign* **-bā-** or **-ba-** + *personal endings.*

Future tense = *present stem* (with **e** lengthened, sometimes) + *personal endings.* The vowel of the ending in the first person singular is **a** instead of **e,** in the third person singular and plural it is short **e.**

180. **Indicative Active**

SINGULAR		PLURAL
	PRESENT	
dū′c**ō**	*I lead*	dū′ci**mus**
dū′ci**s**		dū′ci**tis**
dū′ci**t**		dū′cu**nt**
	IMPERFECT	
dūcē′**bam**	*I was leading*	dūcē**bā**′mus
dūcē′**bās**		dūcē**bā**′tis
dūcē′**bat**		dūcē′**ba**nt
	FUTURE	
dū′ca**m**	*I shall lead*	dūcē′**mus**
dū′cē**s**		dūcē′**tis**
dū′ce**t**		dū′ce**nt**

[1] The motto of West Virginia.

181. VOCABULARY

dū'cō, -ere, dūx'ī, duc'tus, *lead.*
ēdū'cō, -ere, ēdūx'ī, ēduc'tus, *lead out.*
redū'cō, -ere, redūx'ī, reduc'tus, *lead back, withdraw.*
mit'tō, -ere, mī'sī, mis'sus, *send.*
āmit'tō, -ere, āmī'sī, āmis'sus, *send away, lose.*
ge'rō, ge'rere, ges'sī, ges'tus, *bear, carry, carry on;* (with **bellum**), *wage* (*war*).
commit'tō, -ere, commī'sī, commis'sus, *send together, intrust;* (with **proelium**), *join* (*battle*).
praemit'tō, -ere, praemī'sī, praemis'sus, *send ahead.*
remit'tō, -ere, remī'sī, remis'sus, *send back.*
lū'dō, -ere, lū'sī, lūsū'rus, *play.*
pō'nō, -ere, po'suī, po'situs, *put, place;* (with **castra**), *pitch.*

182. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

position mission reduce remit

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES ON VERB FORMS

183. *Analyze each Latin form:*

(*a*) 1. Ēdūcent, praemittēbat, redūcimus. 2. Lūdēs, mittētis, mittunt. 3. Lūdēbant, pōnimus, castra pōnent. 4. Proelium commīsērunt, āmittitis, gerent. 5. Amat, timet, dūcam.

(*b*) 1. Mittēbās, pōnēbāmus, remittō. 2. Redūcam, committit, āmittent. 3. Dūcet, dūcit, dūcēs. 4. Removet, ēdūcēbātis, pōnēmus. 5. Gerunt, redūcimus, praemittunt.

184. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. They were losing, you lose, you will lose. 2. You will send back, you are sending back, you sent back. 3. I shall send ahead, they will lead out, you will carry on. 4. We shall intrust, we shall move, we shall send. 5. We are joining battle, they were pitching camp, they are waging war.

(*b*) 1. He will lead out, we were playing, you are sending. 2. I lose, we shall place, we were leading. 3. They will play, we shall lose, I am sending. 4. He is sending ahead, we place, they lead. 5. We were sending, I shall send, you were intrusting.

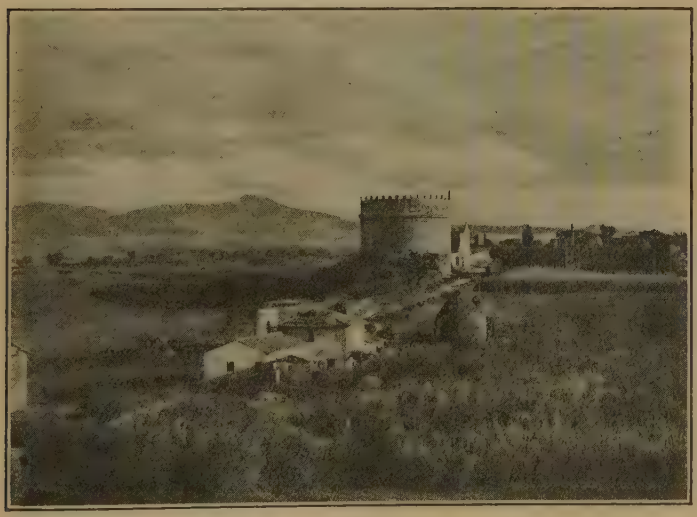
ORAL EXERCISE

185. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Committēsne proelium? 2. Dūcēbāsne? 3. Num castra pōnit? 4. Nōnne mīlitēs praemittēmus? 5. Dūcisne populum Rōmānum? 6. Gerēbantne bellum?

Cincinnātus

Rōmānī cum suīs fīnitimīs semper bellum gerēbant. Ōlim mīlitēs Rōmānī ductī sunt ā cōnsule imperītō et in valle inter montēs ab hostibus circumclūsī sunt. Quīnque



Agrī Rōmānī.

Besides the Roman fields, called the Campagna, this picture shows the Alban Mountains in the distance, and in the center the Appian Way with the famous Tomb of Cecilia Metella.

autem equitēs effūgērunt et Rōmam (*to Rome*) properāvērunt. Hī (*these*) nūntiī Rōmānīs dīxērunt: "Sī ad cōnsulem vestrum auxilium nōn mittētis, cōnsul et mīlitēs eius (*his*) vincentur."

Rōmānī ūnum virum, perītum ducem, habēbant, quem (*whom*) statim vocāvērunt. Cincinnātus in agrīs arābat sed statim Rōmam cum nūntiīs properāvit. Ibi mīlitēs cibumque coēgit et sōlis occāsū (*at sunset*) cōpiās ex urbe ēdūxit.

Per noctem iter nōn intermittit et prīmā lūce habet omnēs hostēs inter cōpiās Rōmānōrum. Hostēs timent et arma dēpōnunt. Tum Cincinnātus hostēs sub iugum mīsit, quod (*which*) magna contumēlia erat.

Mox Cincinnātus suōs mīlitēs reduxit et Rōmānī eī (*to him*) magnum triumphum dēcrēvērunt (*decreed*). Celeriter autem Cincinnātus imperium dictātōris dēposuit et domum (*home*) rediit. Ēgregius sed modestus vir erat et suam vīllam et agrōs magis (*more*) quam magnōs honōrēs amābat.

Translate:

1. Cincinnatus was a great man. 2. He loved beautiful Italy and the level fields. 3. He did not like fame and war. 4. The messengers summoned Cincinnatus and led forth the Romans. 5. They fought with bravery with swords and conquered (their) bad neighbors.

The Dress of Roman Men

The distinctive national dress of the Romans was the **toga.** No one but a Roman citizen could wear this garment, no matter how powerful or wealthy he was; it was a mantle of protection, respected throughout the Mediterranean world.

The toga was made of wool in its natural dull white color. A candidate for public office, however, had his toga specially whitened with a sort of chalk, to a pure white. He was therefore called **candidātus,** which means "gleaming white." From this custom we obtain the English word "candidate."

The toga was a very large piece of woolen cloth, perhaps fifteen feet long and twelve feet wide, cut in a semicircular shape. The arrangement of this long and cumbersome garment so that it fell in graceful folds and left the right arm free was a task of considerable difficulty, and even the Roman usually required help. To put on the toga one end was draped over the left shoulder so that it fell almost to the floor in front. The cloth was then drawn around the back, passed under the right arm, drawn around in front, and then draped over the left shoulder with the end hanging down in back. The weight of this end, sometimes with lead sewn in the hem, helped to hold the garment in place, and brooches were also used to fasten it more securely.

A Roman Wearing the Toga.

When skillfully put on, the toga was a graceful garment, suited to the Italian climate. Because of the way it impeded the arms and legs a man could not wear it when doing any manual labor or in walking long distances. It was the garment of the leisure class and was always worn by the Romans about the city while transacting public or private business, while receiving clients, and in fact everywhere outside the house.

LESSON XXVIII

APPOSITION. PARSING

Ignis aurum probat, miseria fortes viros. — Calamity is man's true touchstone.[1]

186. Apposition. — A noun in apposition with another noun or with a pronoun agrees with it in case. The noun in apposition always means the same person or thing as the noun or pronoun to which it refers. The appositive follows the noun to which it refers.

We saw the leader, Caesar. **Vīdimus ducem Caesarem.**
The boy loves his sister Julia. **Puer sorōrem Iūliam amat.**

187. Parsing. — To parse a verb, give:

(1) Conjugation, (2) principal parts, (3) voice, (4) mood, (5) tense, (6) person, (7) number, (8) rule.

In § 188, *a*, 3, **mittit** would be parsed as follows: **mittit:** *third conjugation; principal parts,* mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus; *active voice; indicative mood; present tense; third person; singular number;* agrees with the subject **pater.** *Rule:* A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

VOCABULARY

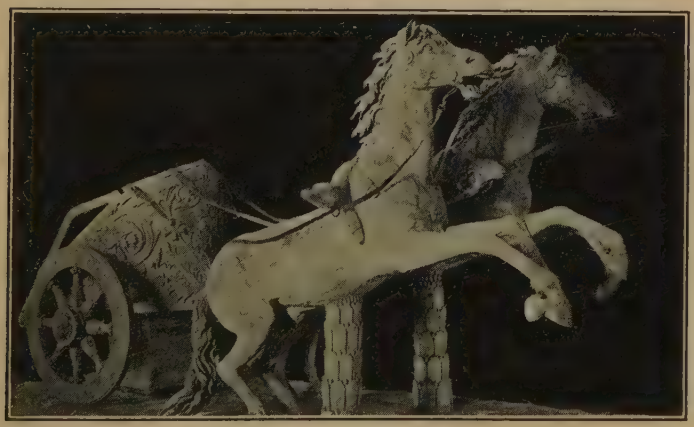
conti'neō, -ē're, conti'nuī, -ten'tus, *hold together;* (in geography), *bound.*
obti'neō, -ē're, obti'nuī, -ten'tus, *hold fast, obtain.*
perti'neō, -ē're, perti'nuī, —, *extend, belong to.*
fīni'timus, -a, -um, *neighboring.*
ignō'tus, -a, -um, *unknown.*
me'us, -a -um, *my, mine.*
nō'tus, -a, -um, *known, well-known, famous.*
e'tiam, *also, even.*
nec (**ne'que**), *and not, nor, neither.*
ne'que . . . ne'que, *neither . . . nor.*
sōl, sō'lis, m., *sun.*
tem'pus, -oris, n., *time.*

[1] Seneca. Literally: *Fire tests gold, misfortune brave men.* The English is from Beaumont and Fletcher's *Cupid's Revenge.*

EXERCISES

188. *Translate*[1] *and parse each indicative verb form:*

(*a*) 1. Mīlitēs, aequī virī, amīcitiā continentur. 2. Caesar, meus dux, frūmentum obtinēbit. 3. Pater bonus ad fīliam Iūliam (*Julia*) multa praemia mittit. 4. Ītalia etiam (*even*) ad Galliam, ignōtam terram, pertinet. 5. Caesar, imperātor nōtus, in proelium mīlitēs Rōmānōs post longum tempus ēdūcit.



EQUĪ RŌMĀNĪ.

(*b*) 1. Mīlitēs ā duce continentur neque in proelium mittuntur. 2. Virī equīs frūmentum dederant. 3. Vester imperātor ad oppidum nūntium mittet. 4. Dux sociōs ē castrīs ēdūcet et portās oppidī vidēbunt. 5. Neque servī neque puerī līberī sōlem vīdērunt.

189. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. The boys will lose neither (their) books nor (their) friends. 2. The place is bounded also by fields and extends to a well-known river. 3. The farmers like the sun, and will give the horses water now. 4. My general will neither break camp, nor will he send

[1] Pronounce the Latin words in groups, and translate them in groups.

the soldiers back into the town. 5. The unknown messenger obtained soldiers from the neighboring towns.

(*b*) 1. Many (persons) have also been wounded with swords by (their) companions. 2. We did not pitch the camp in an unknown place. 3. After a long time we sent the women and children back to our country. 4. The Gauls had obtained (their) weapons in a neighboring town. 5. The new garrison will have been warned by Caesar.

ORAL EXERCISE

190. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quid meī sociī vident? 2. Estne perīculum in aquā? 3. Ubi Caesar castra pōnet? 4. Duxne mīlitēs ēdūcit? 5. Lūdēsne in agrīs?

Mūcius Scaevola

Porsena, rēx Clūsī, Rōmam diū obsēderat et magna famēs in oppidō erat. C. Mūcius Rōmam servāre volēbat[1] itaque (*and so*) in castra Porsenae extrā urbem īvit.[2] Ibi multōs mīlitēs vīdit sed Porsenam dē faciē nōn nōvit.[3] Tandem per errōrem scrībam (*secretary*) prō Porsenā Mūcius occīdit. Mīlitēs Mūcium statim comprehendērunt et eum (*him*) ad Porsenam trāxērunt. Porsena magnopere īrātus est et iussit mīlitēs accendere ignem, nam Mūcium igne cōnsūmere volēbat. Mūcius autem neque ignem neque Porsenam timuit sed dīxit, "Rōmānus cīvis sum neque mortem timeō." Deinde dextram manum in ignem imposuit.

Porsena, admīrāns virtūtem Mūcī et timēns aliōs Rōmānōs quī (*who*) eum (*him*) interficere volēbant, Mūcium Rōmam (*to Rome*) dīmīsit. Deinde ex agrīs Rōmānīs cōpiās redūxit et Rōma salva erat.

---

[1] From **volō**, followed by the infinitive. [2] From **eō**, *go*.
[3] *Did not know Porsena by sight.*

Posteā Mūcius "Scaevola" appellātus est quod dextram manum āmīserat.

Translate:

1. Mucius was a good Roman who loved (his) country. 2. He did not fear Porsena or death. 3. By[1] Mucius' aid the town was saved. 4. The Romans praised Mucius and gave him (**eī**) a new name. 5. They also gave Mucius new fields and great rewards.

---

[1] Translate by **per** with the accusative.

LESSON XXIX

THIRD CONJUGATION

Lux et veritas. — Light and truth.[1]

191. Third Conjugation, Perfect Tenses. — Following the rules in §§ 100 and 106 conjugate **dūcō** through the *perfect, pluperfect,* and *future perfect active.* Compare your work with § 611.

192. VOCABULARY

auxi'lium, auxi'lī, n., *aid, help ;* pl., *auxiliary forces, troops.*

cē'dō, -ere, ces'sī, cessū'rus,[2] *move, go away, yield.*

lūx, lū'cis, f., *light.*

nos'ter, nos'tra, nos'trum, *our, ours ;* **nos'trī, -ō'rum** (substantive, m., plu.), *our men.*

prīn'ceps, -cipis, m., *chief.*

prī'mus, -a, -um, *first;* **prī'mā lū'ce,** *at daybreak.*

scrī'bō, scrī'bere, scrīp'sī, scrīp'tus, *write.*

cōnscrī'bō, -ere, cōnscrīp'sī, cōnscrīp'tus, *enroll, enlist, levy.*

dēfen'dō, -ere, dēfen'dī, dēfēn'sus, *ward off, defend.*

relin'quō, relin'quere, relī'quī, relic'tus, *leave.*

trāns, prep. with acc., *across, over.*

cūr, interrog. adv., *why?*

193. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

scripture secession primary relinquish translucent

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES

194. *Translate, and explain the use of each ablative and accusative:*

---

[1] The motto of Yale University.

[2] The future active participle is usually given as the fourth principal part of intransitive verbs, which have no perfect passive participle.

(*a*) 1. Noster dux etiam ignōtum mīlitem dēfendet. 2. Prīncipēs Rōmānī ad sociōs auxilium mittēbant. 3. Prīnceps victōriā magnā oppidum obtinēbit. 4. Caesaris mīlitēs cessērunt, sed nōn timuērunt. 5. Rēx multās et longās litterās (*letters*) ad mīlitēs scrīpsit.

(*b*) 1. Negōtium nostrum nōn longum erat. 2. Ex oppidō cum auxiliīs cēdent. 3. In fīnitimīs terrīs Gallōrum multōs mīlitēs cōnscrīpserit. 4. Frātrem cōnsulis dux cum mīlitibus dēfenderat. 5. Prīmā lūce[1] prīnceps in castrīs auxilia relīquit.

195. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. They sent aid to the well-known lieutenant. 2. Our men will not withdraw from the town but will defend (their) fatherland. 3. They sent auxiliary forces back to the town because (**quod**) the danger was great. 4. The garrison joined battle at daybreak with our men. 5. The mothers will praise the sons of the chief.

(*b*) 1. I shall write letters and send (them) to our friends. 2. In war the men leave the women in the town. 3. The horse carried the grain with great swiftness. 4. At daybreak we had led the soldiers out of the camp. 5. Ten men left the battle and were seen by the chief.

ORAL EXERCISE

196. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Cūr dux laudābitur? 2. Ubi prīma legiō fuerat? 3. Cūr nostrī ex oppidō cēdent? 4. Cūr virī prīncipem dēfendunt? 5. Quid rēx scrīpsit?

Puer et Pōma

Erat in agrō arbor, in quā (*on which*) pōma multa erant. Puer pōma vīdit. Prīmā lūce in arborem ascendit et decem

[1] An ablative showing "time when," a usage to be discussed later.

pōma ab arbore remōvit. Iam ex arbore dēscendere eum oportuit[1] et ab agrō discēdere; sed agricola, quī (*who*) puerum vīderat, magnum canem in agrum dūxit.

HUNTER AND DOG.

Tum puer perterritus (*thoroughly frightened*) magnō clāmōre locum complēvit; sed auxilium āfuit.[2] Agricola appropinquāvit et puerum ita monuit: "Pōma nōn tua[3] sunt. Cūr pōma aliēna ab arbore removēbās? Nōn aequum erat. Fūr es, et canis fūrēs mordēbit. Bonus puer esse dēbēs.[4]" Tum puer exclāmat: "Numquam iterum fūr erō. Nunc canem ex agrō ēdūc (*lead out*)."

Agricola rīsit[5] et canem abdūxit. Puer incolumis relictus est, sed pōma āmīserat. Bonum cōnsilium agricolae posteā memoriā tenuit neque posteā ab arbore eius (*his*) pōma remōvit.

---

[1] *It was fitting* or *necessary;* **oportet** is an impersonal verb, *i.e.*, a verb used only in the third person singular, without a personal subject. Here the infinitives **dēscendere** and **discēdere** form the subject of **oportuit.** **Eum** in turn is the subject of the infinitives. The literal sense is, *for him to climb down was fitting.*

[2] From **absum.**

[3] From **tuus, -a, -um.**

[4] *You ought* (followed by infinitive).

[5] From **rīdeō.**

Translate:

1. Boys always (**semper**) like apples (**pōma**). 2. But farmers do not always like small boys. 3. The farmer saw the boy in the tree (**arbor, -oris,** *f.*). 4. The dog (**canis**) defended the fields of the farmer. 5. The farmer gave the boy good advice but no (**nūllum**) apples[1] (**pōmum**).

---

[1] **Nūllus** should be used only in the singular; it means *not one.*

LESSON XXX

THIRD CONJUGATION, PASSIVE

Nec pluribus impar.—A match for many.[1]

197. Following the rules in Lesson XXV, conjugate **dūcō** through the *indicative passive.* Compare your work with §611. Note the only peculiarity in the passive.

198. VOCABULARY

ab'sum, abes'se, ā'fuī, *be away, be absent, be lacking.*
ad'sum, ades'se, ad'fuī, *be near, be present.*
iniū'ria, -ae, f., *wrong.*
in'teger, in'tegra, in'tegrum, *whole, sound, unimpaired.*
re'liquus, -a, -um, *remaining, rest of.*
pau'cī, -ae, -a, *few.*
lēx, lē'gis, f., *law.*
nō'men, -inis, n., *name.*
pe'tō, -ere, petī'vī (pe'tiī), petī'tus, *seek, ask, attack.*
ves'per, ves'perī, m., *evening.*
vin'cō, -ere, vī'cī, vic'tus, *conquer, defeat.*
vē'rus, -a, -um, *true.*
et . . . et, *both . . . and.*

199. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

legal	integral	nominate	petition
vespers	convince	verily	absent

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES ON VERB FORMS

200. *Analyze each form:*

1. Ductī erant, mīsit, aberō, cōnscrīptī sumus. 2. Petit, dūcet, vīsae erimus, ēdūxit. 3. Positum erat, relinquar, scrībētur, missa est. 4. Dūceris, dūcēris, adfuērunt, dabitur. 5. Habēbit, amāberis, vincentur, ēdūciminī.

[1] The motto of Louis XIV. Literally: *And not unequal to several.*

201. *Translate:*

1. They have conquered, we shall be sought. 2. The foot soldier will be present, had been absent. 3. The letter had been written, you (*plu.*) will send, I led out. 4. We had been led back, it was placed, I led. 5. It has been moved, we shall move, I was seeing.

EXERCISES

202. *Translate, and parse all the nouns in the ablative case:*

(*a*) 1. Prīncipēs tēlīs ā paucīs mīlitibus superātī sunt. 2. Equī ducum Rōmānōrum in proeliō aderunt. 3. Lēgēs Rōmānōrum integrae erant. 4. Vesper adest et mīlitēs nōn vincuntur. 5. Et nautae et mīlitēs gladiīs cum celeritāte vīcērunt.

(*b*) 1. Dē iniūriā magnā in librō scrībētur. 2. Paucī peditēs decimae legiōnis in castrīs relictī erant. 3. Nōmina reliquōrum prīncipum in librō scrībuntur. 4. Multōs mīlitēs et magna auxilia Caesar ex oppidō et ē castrīs ēdūxit. 5. Dux equitēs timuit, et auxilium decimae legiōnis petiit.

203. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. The rest of the horsemen saw the deed, a great wrong. 2. We shall seek the aid of the law. 3. The name of the first poet was written by a few girls. 4. At daybreak the messenger was sent into the camp. 5. The chief's friend has written concerning many deeds.

(*b*) 1. They defended the laws of the king and sought the bad men. 2. Many Romans had been enlisted across the river, and Caesar pitched his camp in the fields near the river. 3. The town has many gates, and in war many soldiers are left for a guard. 4. They sent the messenger into camp with his companions. 5. From the first town we saw both the camp of the Gauls and the river.

ORAL EXERCISE

204. *Answer these questions in Latin, using the passive voice in 3 and 4:*

1. Quis abest? 2. Ubi castra pōnēbās? 3. Ubi tēla relinquēbantur? 4. Quis iniūriam vīdit? 5. Estne tua memoria integra?

The Dress of Roman Men (*Continued*)

Under the toga was worn a white tunic, also of wool, which reached below the knees. It was a garment like a long sleeveless sweater with a belt about the waist which allowed the tunic to be pulled up in a fold, if the Roman wished greater freedom for his legs. The tunic the Roman wore in his own home. Tunics of Roman knights had a narrow crimson stripe (perhaps two such stripes) running from the neck to the lower hem in the front and in the back; the tunics of the senators had a broad crimson stripe. The toga was carefully arranged so that a part of this stripe would be visible to show the rank of the wearer.

A Roman Boy with Cap and Tunic.

Footwear consisted often of **soleae** or sandals, which were simply soles of leather attached to the feet by thongs or straps of various kinds. Men always removed their sandals when dining. When a guest asked for his shoes, it meant that he was

preparing to leave the dinner party. The **calceī** or high shoes were always worn outside the house and were of different kinds, depending on the occupation of the wearer and the use to which they were to be put. They covered the upper part of the foot to some extent, as well as the soles. Public officers of high rank wore red-colored shoes. No stockings were worn by the Romans, but the old and feeble sometimes wrapped their feet with woolen cloths before putting on their shoes.

Hats were seldom worn except by workmen and travelers. A woolen mantle with a hood was worn in bad weather, and the hood took the place of a hat.

LESSON XXXI

REVIEW

Iustitia omnibus.—Justice for all.[1]

205. Derivatives. — (*a*) Write all the English words you can which seem to be derived from the following:

populus	locus	oculus	lūdō
dūcō	mittō	pōnō	auxilium
deus	nāvigō	lūx	prīnceps
prīmus	scrībō	officium	relinquō
lēx	nōmen	socius	petō

(*b*) With the aid of an unabridged English dictionary, study carefully the form and meaning of the following and compare with the original Latin word:

superb doctor circus pagan suburb

206. Form Drill. — 1. Name each of the three stems of **laudō, moveō, mittō.** 2. In the third conjugation, of what tenses are the following the signs: **e, i, bā (ba), era, eri?** 3. Give the passive personal endings. 4. Give the formula for making each tense in the indicative mood, passive voice. 5. Conjugate **dō, videō, pōnō** through the indicative mood, active and passive voices. See how rapidly you can do it.[2] 6. Give the principal parts and the stems of the following verbs: **dūcō, contineō, scrībō, dēfendō, relinquō.**

[1] The motto of the District of Columbia.

[2] For form drill in declensions and conjugations it is often interesting to *keep score.* See how many seconds it takes each member to recite a certain declension or conjugation. Add five seconds for each mistake. Post on the blackboard the holders of "records" in the different "events," and give volunteers chances to lower these records from time to time

207. Syntax Drill. — 1. What is meant by "parsing" a noun; a verb? 2. Parse the verbs in the sentence below:

Dux mīlitēs ēdūxit et proelium commissum est.

3. Give the rule for *apposition*, *agent*, and illustrate each with a Latin sentence. 4. Name two ideas expressed in Latin by the ablative with **ā** or **ab.** 5. How is the ablative of means distinguished from an ablative of agent?

208. Write in Latin five or more connected sentences, telling something about the general and his soldiers. (The best papers may be written on the board and read at sight by the class.)

209. EXERCISE FOR SIGHT READING

1. Tēlum bonō mīlitī ā duce dabātur. 2. Aqua ad equōs ā servīs portāta est. 3. Hominēs sunt miserī sed nōn malī. 4. Multī deī ā Rōmānīs amātī erant. 5. Lēgātī magnā virtūte pugnābunt. 6. Pulchrī librī puellīs dabuntur. 7. In proeliō perīculum timuimus. 8. Agricola bonus in agrōs multōs equōs dūxit. 9. Cōnsul mīlitēs cōnscrīpsit et oppidum dēfendet. 10. Prīmā lūce castra in patriā Gallōrum posuit.

Rēx Galliae

In Galliā, quae (*which*) in Eurōpā est, fuit rēx, quī (*who*) multōs mīlitēs habuit. Magnum numerum mīlitum, equitum peditumque, cōnscrīpserat. Saepe rēx mīlitēs ex castrīs ēdūxit. Ita populōs fīnitimōs terrēbat.

Bellum ā fīnitimīs concitātum est. Rēx mīlitēs ēdūxit et magnā vōce dīxit: "Pācem nōn iam (*longer*) habēmus. Nunc est tempus cum barbarīs bellum gerere. Negōtium est difficile, sed, sī fortēs (*brave*) eritis,[1] patriam dēfendētis

[1] *prove to be* (literally *shall be*).

et hominēs malōs in servitūtem redigētis." Tum ad extrēmum fīnem Galliae prōcessit et mīlitēs sēcum (*with him*) dūxit.

Sed iter longum fuerat, et mīlitēs dēfessī erant. Barbarī nōn aderant. Rēx prīncipēs cōnsuluit. Breve tempus[1] mīlitibus ad quiētem dedit; tum sine proeliō mīlitēs in castra remīsit et in castrīs continuit.

Translate:

1. The neighbors of the king feared him (**eum**). 2. There were many soldiers in his[2] country. 3. He waged war often (**saepe**) with (his) neighbors. 4. Through many wars his[2] soldiers fought with bravery. 5. He led (his) soldiers out from (his) country but they did not fight then.

---

[1] Accusative case. [2] Translate by **eius**.

THE APPIAN WAY.

LESSON XXXII

FORMATION OF ADVERBS

Cedant arma togae. — *Peace hath her victories no less renowned than war.*[1]

210. Adverbs are derived from adjectives. They are formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by adding **-ē** to the base of the positive: *wide*, **lātus**; *widely*, **lātē**.

211. Numerals. — The basic numerals are:[2]

	Cardinals	Ordinals
1.	ū′nus, ū′na, ū′num	prī′mus, *first*
2.	du′o, du′ae, du′o	secun′dus, *second*
3.	trēs (*m.* and *f.*), tri′a (*n.*)	ter′tius, *third*
4.	quat′tuor	quār′tus
5.	quīn′que	quīn′tus
6.	sex	sex′tus
7.	sep′tem	sep′timus
8.	oc′tō	octā′vus
9.	no′vem	nō′nus
10.	de′cem	de′cimus
20.	vīgin′tī	
100.	cen′tum	

(*a*) The cardinals from **quattuor** to **centum**, *one hundred*, are indeclinable. You will learn how to decline **ūnus, duo, trēs** later. For the

[1] Cicero. The motto of Wyoming. Literally: *Let arms give way to the toga.*

[2] Compare § 602. See also § 642.

present they will be used only in the forms here given. Like any adjective they agree with the noun they modify.

(*b*) The ordinals are declined like **magnus** and agree with the noun in gender, number, and case.

212. VOCABULARY

am'plus, -a, -um, *large, splendid.*
inī'quus, -a, -um, *uneven, unfair.*
pū'blicus, -a, -um, *belonging to the people, public, state.*
ti'midus, -a, -um, *fearful, cowardly.*
susti'neō, -ē're, susti'nuī, susten'tus, *uphold, resist, check.*
a'gō, -ere, ē'gī, āc'tus, *drive, do, plead;* (with **grātiās**), *give thanks.*
red'igō, -ere, redē'gī, redāc'tus, *reduce.*
repel'lō, -ere, rep'pulī, -pul'sus, *drive back, repulse.*
cō'gō, -ere, coē'gī, coāc'tus, *drive together, gather, compel, force.*
tum (**tunc**), adv., *then, at that time.*
quod, conj., *because.*
at'que (**ac**), conj., *and also, and even.*
quam, interrog. adv., *how?*
pos'teā, adv., *after that, afterwards, thereafter.*

213. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

ample	iniquity	sextette	agent
unity	duet	quarter	trio

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES

214. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Quattuor mīlitēs tēlīs repulsī sunt et timidē pugnāvērunt. 2. Proelium in locō inīquō commīsērunt, sed Gallōs reppulērunt. 3. Duo oppida ampla ā duce vincentur atque occupābuntur. 4. Quīnque nūntiōs coēgit et quattuor ad ducem posteā remīsit. 5. In proeliō decima legiō Gallōs sustinuit quod imperātor virōs laudāverat.

(*b*) 1. Proelia in Ītaliā sustenta sunt. 2. Quam timidē fēmina ad oppidī portam aquam portābat! 3. Tum Rōmānī cum Gallīs bellum gerēbant. 4. Rōma ampla est atque poētae viās et portās Rōmae laudant. 5. Locus proelī inīquus erat sed auxilium aderat.

215. *Translate, putting each adverb before the word it modifies:* [1]

(*a*) 1. A hundred soldiers were already driven back to the camp but will check the Gauls. 2. He conquered the Gauls in battle and reduced Gaul to (**in,** with acc.) a province. 3. What is being said now by our men? 4. The leader is not present but is absent. 5. How publicly he gave thanks then to the gods! 6. The field is uneven and the farmers are wretched.

PORTA RŌMĀNA.

(*b*) 1. Why does the fearful man go away from the battle? 2. The public injustice will be checked by our chief and also by the consul. 3. There are twenty eyes in the bodies of ten men. 4. The gods gave light and life to the Romans. 5. Laws were written by free men and are the defense of (defend) liberty.

---

[1] An adverb generally stands before the word which it modifies.

PHRASES FROM CAESAR

216. *Commit to memory with the translations:*

1. Agere grātiās. 2. Bellum gerere. 3. Castra pōnere. 4. Prīmā lūce. 5. Castra movēre.

Horātius Cocles

Porsena, rēx Etrūscōrum, cum Rōmānīs bellum gerēbat. Castra trāns flūmen Tiberim posuerat, et urbem Rōmam multīs mīlitibus obsidēbat.

Etruscan Tombs at Orvieto.

This ancient city of the Etruscans was so old that the Romans called it The Old City, *Urbs Vetus*. From these words the modern Italian name of *Orvieto* is derived.

Erat apud Rōmānōs vir fortis, Horātius nōmine, Cocles appellātus (*called*), quod oculum āmīserat. In flūmine pōns erat, quī ad Etrūscōs pertinēbat. Horātius ad extrēmam partem (*end*) pontis prōcessit atque ibi cōnstitit. Sōlus multōs hostēs exspectāvit.

Etrūscī magnā vī (*violence*, abl.) in Horātium pugnant.

Frūstrā pugnant. Minās adhibent. Sed neque minīs nec[1] tēlīs hominem terrent. Ē proeliō excēdere coāctī sunt. Interim ā tergō[2] pōns interscissus erat (*cut down*). Tum Horātius armātus, ut (*as*) erat, ad Rōmānōs incolumis trānāvit.

Horātiō pars agrī pūblicī satis[3] ampla ā Rōmānīs lēge data est, quod per virtūtem ac nātūram ēgregiam virī dignitās populī Rōmānī servāta erat, nec Rōmānī in servitūtem abdūcēbantur.

Translate:

1. Horatius was a brave (**fortis**) Roman and he loved (his) country. 2. The Romans were waging war with a neighboring king. 3. Horatius defended the bridge (**pontem**) with (his) companions. 4. The bad king departed from the river and Rome (**Rōma**) was not conquered. 5. The people gave Horatius rewards for (his) bravery.

The Dress of Roman Women

Roman women wore a garment called the **stola,** which was as distinctive and as respected as was the toga that the men wore. As soon as a Roman girl married she put on the stola, which in shape and cut was a large and full tunic with a wide flounce sewn on at the bottom and reaching to the floor. Noble women were permitted to have a crimson flounce and a crimson band about the neck. The stola was held together mainly by elaborate brooches and pins and was arranged in graceful folds, as was the toga. A girdle was worn high above the waist. The stola was made of white

---

[1] **Neque . . . nec,** *neither . . . nor.*

[2] *I.e.*, behind Horatius.

[3] An adverb modifying the adjective **ampla.**

wool, as was the close-fitting tunic which was worn underneath it. There was much more similarity then between the garments of men and women than there is today.

ROMAN MATRON WEARING THE PALLA.

Out of doors a Roman lady wore a **palla,** which was merely a large woolen shawl, capable of graceful arrangement and draping. Materials other than wool and colors other than white were used, but white was by far the most common. Even in ancient Rome women pined for the beautifully colored silks, imported from the East and worth more than their weight in gold. Because white was the prevailing color for garments, cleaners were kept exceedingly busy in ancient Rome.

LESSON XXXIII

RELATIVE PRONOUN

Qui non proficit, deficit. — Who does not advance, falls behind.

217. The relative pronoun [1] is declined as follows:

quī, *who, which, what, that*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	**quī**	**quae**	**quod**	**quī**	**quae**	**quae**
Gen.	**cu'ius**	**cu'ius**	**cu'ius**	**quō'rum**	**quā'rum**	**quō'rum**
Dat.	**cui**	**cui**	**cui**	**qui'bus**	**qui'bus**	**qui'bus**
Acc.	**quem**	**quam**	**quod**	**quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Abl.	**quō**	**quā**	**quō**	**qui'bus**	**qui'bus**	**qui'bus**

218. VOCABULARY

addū'cō, -ere, addūx'ī, adduc'tus, *lead to, influence.*

indū'cō, -ere, indūx'ī, induc'tus, *lead on, influence.*

perdū'cō, -ere, perdūx'ī, perduc'tus, *lead through, construct.*

prōdū'cō, -ere, prōdūx'ī, prōduc'tus, *lead forward, protract.*

dīmit'tō, -ere, dīmī'sī, dīmis'sus, *send away, dispatch.*

intermit'tō, -ere, intermī'sī, intermis'sus, *interrupt, stop.*

permit'tō, -ere, permī'sī, permis'sus, *entrust, allow.*

quī, quae, quod, *who, which, what, that.*

discē'dō, -ere, disces'sī, discessū'rus,[2] *go away, depart.*

excē'dō, -ere, exces'sī, excessū'rus,[2] *go out, go away.*

aut, conj., *or*

aut . . . aut, *either . . . or.*

219. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

induct production intermission permission

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

---

[1] See §§ 625 and 627.

[2] The perfect passive participle is not used since the verb is intransitive; therefore the future active participle is given instead. See page 112, note 2.

RULE

220. Agreement of the Relative. — A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person, but its case is determined by its use in its own clause.

I saw the man who was present. **Virum quī aderat vīdī.**
The gate which you see is wide. **Porta quam vidēs lāta est.**

(*a*) Notice that **quī** in the first example is masculine gender, singular number, third person, like its antecedent **virum,** but it is *nominative* case because it is the subject of the verb **aderat.** In the second example the pronoun **quam** is feminine gender, singular number, third person, to agree with its antecedent **porta,** but *accusative* because it is the object of the verb **vidēs.**

EXERCISES

221. *Translate, giving the reason for the gender, number, and case of each relative pronoun:*

(*a*) 1. Amīcīs pecūniam et vītās permīsimus. 2. Vīdērunt prīncipem cuius amīcus ex oppidō dīmissus erat. 3. Aut mīles aut dux cui perīculum nūntiātum est negōtium intermittet. 4. Pater virī ā quō factum bonum nūntiātum est ex oppidō excessit. 5. Viam, quae longa et lāta erat, perdūxerat.

(*b*) 1. Ad amīcum librōs quōs scrīpsī mīsī. 2. Ad flūmen quod in prōvinciā Rōmānōrum est legiōnem prōdūxit atque castra posuit. 3. Cōnsul aut lēgātus quī ē proeliō cessit ad Ītaliam dīmissus est. 4. Mīlitēs ā quibus castra dēfēnsa sunt proelium intermittent. 5. Ā sociīs malīs puer quem vidēs in mala facta inductus est sed nōn malus est.

222. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Caesar, who was a Roman general, constructed a long road into Gaul. 2. The messenger whom you saw was dispatched to the garrison. 3. He stops (his) task and publicly gives thanks to the gods. 4. Laws that are good protect the boys and girls of our country. 5. The new soldiers who had been enrolled went out timidly from the strange place.

(*b*) 1. We commenced battle with the enemy but evening was then near. 2. With my (own) eyes I saw the general whom the Romans praised. 3. We looked at the lieutenant, a friend of Caesar, who saved the town. 4. The consul will seek good laws because they strengthen the country. 5. Our men left (their) weapons behind either in the forest or on the roads.

ORAL EXERCISE

223. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Intermittitne puer negōtium? 2. Esne puer quem in oppidō vīdī? 3. Ubi legiōnēs Rōmānae erant? 4. Quibus deī victōriam dedērunt? 5. Vīdistīne tēla quae imperātor obtinuerat?

RUINS OF THE TEMPLE OF APOLLO AT DELPHI, GREECE.
This was the seat of the famous oracle.

BRŪTUS ET ŌRĀCULUM

Tarquinius Superbus erat ūnus ex prīmīs rēgibus Rōmae. Nōn bonus erat sed crūdēlis inīquusque. Timēbat īram populī Rōmānī et vīta non salva erat.

Ōlim in rēgiā (*royal palace*) Tarquinius ōmen vīdit. Anguis (*snake*) ex columnā ligneā vēnit et Tarquinium et familiam perterruit. Statim Tarquinius suōs duōs fīliōs cum amīcō, Brūtō, ad ōrāculum Apollinis, quod in Graeciā erat, mīsit. Ibi ōrāculum prō rēge cōnsuluērunt.

Ab ōrāculō rogāvērunt, "Quis post mortem Tarquinī rēgnum Rōmānum obtinēbit?" Pȳthia sīc respondit, "Is erit rēx quī prīmus mātrī ōsculum dabit." Statim duo frātrēs sortēs dē rēgnō dūxērunt. Sed Brūtus terrae ōsculum dedit, nam putāvit, "Terra est māter omnium hominum."

Tum trēs iuvenēs Rōmam (*to Rome*) properāvērunt. Mox populus Rōmānus Tarquinium et fīliōs ex urbe expulērunt, quod crūdēlēs erant, et Brūtus cōnsul creātus est.

Translate:

1. Tarquin was a bad king of the Romans. 2. He feared the people because he had been unjust. 3. His[1] two sons were sent to Greece with Brutus. 4. Afterwards Tarquin was sent away from the town. 5. Then Brutus, whom the people loved, was consul.

---

[1] Translate by **eius**.

LESSON XXXIV

THE DEMONSTRATIVE *IS*

Scit eum sine gloria vinci, qui sine periculo vincitur. — He knows that he who is conquered without danger is conquered without glory.[1]

224. The demonstrative pronoun **is** points out a person or object; it is used either substantively or adjectively. As an adjective it agrees with and modifies a noun (**is puer**), "that boy"; as a substantive it is used as a personal pronoun: **Videō eum**, "I see him." Always observe the forms of **is** carefully to see whether they are used as adjectives or as pronouns. The nominative forms are never used as subjects of verbs except for emphasis.

Learn the declension of **is, ea, id,** *that, he, she, it;* plu., *they, those.*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	**is**	**e'a**	**id**	**e'ī**	**e'ae**	**e'a**
Gen.	**e'ius**	**e'ius**	**e'ius**	**eō'rum**	**eā'rum**	**eō'rum**
Dat.	**e'ī**	**e'ī**	**e'ī**	**e'īs**	**e'īs**	**e'īs**
Acc.	**e'um**	**e'am**	**id**	**e'ōs**	**e'ās**	**e'a**
Abl.	**e'ō**	**e'ā**	**e'ō**	**e'īs**	**e'īs**	**e'īs**

225. VOCABULARY

is, e'a, id, *that, this, he, she, it.*
auctō'ritās, -tā'tis, f., *influence, authority.*
an'te, prep. with acc., *before.*
an'teā, adv., *before (that), previously.*
commo'veō, -ē're, -mō'vī, -mō'tus, *move thoroughly, alarm.*
ēgre'gius, -a, -um, *outstanding, distinguished.*
inimī'cus, -a, -um, *unfriendly; unfriendly to* (with dat.).
amī'cus, -a, -um, *friendly; friendly to* (with dat.).
vōx, vō'cis, f., *voice.*
respon'deō, -ē're, respon'dī, respōn'sus, *answer, reply.*
pāx, pā'cis, f., *peace.*
aes'tās, -tā'tis, f., *summer.*

[1] Seneca.

226. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

authority	commotion	egregious	inimical
amicable	vocal	response	antecedent

Define, and use each of the above words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES

227. *Translate, telling which demonstrative pronouns are used substantively and which adjectively:*

(*a*) 1. Is puer, ea fēmina, id oppidum, eī amīcī, ea castra, eum librum. 2. Eōrum mīlitēs, eōs nūntiōs, eius patria. 3. Ea vōx amīca est sed vir inimīcus est. 4. Nūntius ante bellum magnā cum vōce respondit. 5. Eius[1] mīlitēs anteā laudāverat.

(*b*) 1. Prīnceps quī aderat ēgregius est et pācem amat. 2. Auctōritās populī Rōmānī ā mīlitibus dēfendētur. 3. Ante eam aestātem rēx amīcus erat sed regīna eius patriae inimīca erat. 4. Eī hominēs quī trāns flūmen pugnābant anteā commōtī erant. 5. Is quem in oppidō vīdistī ēgregius dux fuit.

228. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. He whom we saw was a good man and loved his country. 2. Before the summer the king of the Gauls will construct a long road. 3. Caesar, whom the Gauls feared, was a distinguished general. 4. The allies, to whom the Romans had given rewards, departed from the town. 5. He will dispatch eight men as messengers with great speed.

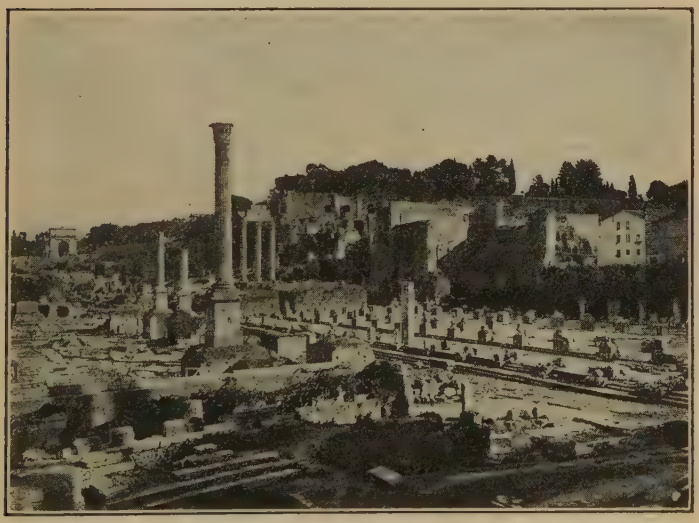
(*b*) 1. The slave awaits his master's voice and replies to him. 2. The Gauls were unfriendly to the Romans but did not conquer them in battle. 3. The friendly poet is alarmed and departs from the camp before the battle. 4. Who is the soldier whose fatherland is being conquered? 5. That woman had previously given grain to the horses and then led them forth from the town.

---

[1] When *his, her, their, its,* modify a dative or an accusative and do not refer to the subject, Latin uses the genitive of **is.**

Mettius Curtius

Ōlim in Forō Rōmānō magna rīma (*cleft*) subitō appāruit. Rōmānī perterritī erant et in rīmam saxa et terram iactābant, sed frūstrā. Rīma alta et lāta manēbat. Tum Rōmānī auxilium ā deō ōrābant. Deus respondit, "Sī in



Forum Rōmānum.

This view looks south toward the Palatine Hill.

locum optimam possessiōnem quam Rōmānī habent iactābitis, tum rīmam explēbō." Hoc ōrāculum cum dubiō animō Rōmānī audīvērunt. Rogāvērunt, "Quis est optima possessiō Rōmānōrum?"

Tandem Mettius Curtius dīxit, "Optima possessiō Rōmānōrum est intrepidus animus." Tum suum equum phalerīs (*trappings*) pulchrīs exōrnat (*adorns*) et armātus in Forum equitat. Dum cīvēs stupent, subitō incitat suum

equum in rīmam. Statim deus rīmam explēvit, ut (*as*) prōmīserat.

Mettius Curtius ā Rōmānīs semper amātus est quod suam vītam prō bonō pūblicō dederat.

Translate:

1. The Romans always loved Mettius Curtius. 2. He gave his[1] life for (his) friends and (his) town. 3. The Romans told (**nārrō, -āre**) the story to (their) sons. 4. A country is not always saved by battles. 5. The gods gave Curtius courage because he was good.

---

[1] **Suam.** See **Suus** in the General Vocabulary.

LESSON XXXV

REVIEW

Nil sine numine. — Nothing without divine guidance.[1]

229. Derivatives. — Write all the English words you can that seem to be derived from the following:

ūnus	pūblicus	amplus	prōdūcō
vōx	timidus	indūcō	intermittō
respondeō	agō	quārtus	permittō

230. Form and Word Drill. — 1. How are adverbs formed from adjectives of the first and second declension? 2. What is the rule for the use of the relative pronoun? 3. What is an antecedent? 4. Does the relative pronoun agree with its antecedent in case? 5. What is a demonstrative pronoun? Name one. 6. What is meant by the adjective use of a demonstrative pronoun? By the substantive use? 7. When a demonstrative pronoun is used substantively, is it a noun or a pronoun? 8. *Him* and *whom* end in *m* in English. Do they in Latin also? 9. Does *whom* (plural) in Latin end in *m*? 10. When is the genitive of **is** used for *his, her, its,* or *their?* 11. What are the Latin words for *his, her, whom* (masc.), *them* (fem.), *whose, them* (masc.), *whom* (fem.)? 12. What relative pronoun is used in English to refer to persons? To things? To both persons and things? 13. Give the declension of **is** and **quī** as rapidly as possible. 14. Form adverbs from the following: **altus, aequus, certus, crēber, miser, amplus, pūblicus, timidus.**

[1] The motto of Colorado. Literally: *Nothing without the divine will.*

231. Syntax Drill. — Review all the rules learned thus far.

232. Review of Word Formation. — 1. What are the meanings of the following prefixes, when combined with verbs: **ā (ab, abs), ad, con (com), dē, ē (ex), in?** 2. Show how the prefix affects the meaning of each of the following: **contineō, cōgō, excēdō, addūcō, indūcō, āmittō, committō, absum, adsum, comparō, commoveō.** 3. What do the suffixes **-tās, -tia,** and **-tūdō** show and what are the equivalent English suffixes? 4. Show how the suffix affects the meaning of the following, using the General Vocabulary, if necessary: **amīcitia, altitūdō, auctōritās, celeritās, lātitūdō, magnitūdō, multitūdō, dīligentia.** (These are nouns formed from adjectives.) 5. What do the suffixes **-ānus, -icus,** and **-ius** show and what are the equivalent English suffixes? 6. Show how the suffixes affect the meaning of the following, using the General Vocabulary if necessary: **Rōmānus, Germānus, Gallicus, oppidānus, patrius.** (These are adjectives formed from nouns.)

EXERCISE FOR SIGHT READING

233. 1. Lēgēs rēgis ā virīs bonīs laudātae sunt. 2. Nūntiī multī ad Caesarem ā Gallīs missī sunt. 3. Fīlius magnā cum vōce patrem vocat. 4. Gallī et Germānī barbarī erant. 5. Prīmā lūce puerī trāns agrum properāvērunt. 6. Mīlitēs Germānī magnā cum celeritāte ad ducem properāverant et proelium commīserant. 7. Cōnsulēs poētās memoriā tenēbant quī Rōmam laudābant. 8. Frūmentum trāns flūmen equīs portātum erat. 9. Iūlia amat frātrem Mārcum, quī vulnerātus est. 10. Germānī cum virtūte pugnāvērunt sed Rōmānī eōs proeliō vīcērunt.

The Dress of Roman Women (*Continued*)

Since hats were not worn at all by Roman women, elaborate and new fashions of hairdressing were in great demand,

especially as the Roman women never cut their hair. Sometimes fashion demanded a tall and built-up coiffure and sometimes a more simple and natural arrangement was in vogue. False hair, hair dyes, and bleaches were well known to Roman women. All sorts of combs, pins, and hair ornaments were used in great profusion, as were jewelry and precious stones.

A Roman Woman.
Notice the head-dress.

Rare perfumes and unguents were in great demand, particularly after the bath and at dinner parties. In Rome good taste did not frown upon those strong and heavy perfumes that the present day considers objectionable.

Roman boys and girls wore a tunic and, if their parents were wealthy, a "toga praetexta" or crimson-bordered toga, which the girl discarded for the matron's stola when she married and which the boy discarded for the "toga virilis" or toga of manhood when he became of age. In cold weather both young and old might wear two or three tunics or use tunics of heavier materials.

LESSON XXXVI

THIRD DECLENSION. I-STEMS

Ars longa, vita brevis. — "*Art is long and time is fleeting.*"[1]

234. Third declension nouns which have **i** before, or in place of, the vowel of certain endings are called **i-stems.**

(*a*) In the first declension we noticed that **ā** seemed the predominant vowel; in the second, **o.** So we speak regularly of the **a**-declension and the **o**-declension and we say their *stems* end in **ā** and **o.** Similarly we speak of the third declension as the consonant or **i**-declension, because its stems end in a consonant or in **i.** In the consonant stems which we have been studying so far the *stem* is just like the *base.* We are now to study **i**-stems. Their *stem* is made by adding **i** to the *base.*

235. The following nouns regularly have **i**-stems:

1. Masculine and feminine nouns ending in **-ēs** and **-is,** not increasing[2] in the genitive; nouns ending in **-ns, -rs,** and monosyllables in **-s** or **-x** following a consonant.

These all end in **-e** or **-ī** in the ablative singular, **-ium** in the genitive plural, and **-ēs** or **-īs** in the accusative plural.[3]

2. Neuter nouns ending in **-e, -al,** or **-ar.**

These end in **-ī** in the ablative singular, **-ium** in the genitive plural, and in **-ia** in the nominative and accusative plural.

---

[1] Literally: *Art is long, life short.*

[2] The expression "not increasing in the genitive" is used to distinguish nouns like **hostis,** whose genitive has the same number of syllables as the nominative, from nouns like **mīles, mīlitis,** whose genitive has more syllables than the nominative.

[3] Originally the accusative singular ended in **-im,** the ablative singular in **-ī,** and the accusative plural in **-īs;** but these endings have been largely displaced by **-em, -e,** and **-ēs.** The ending **-īs** is not used in this book.

236.

Hos'tis, m., *enemy.*	**Ma're,** n., *sea.*
BASE, **host-**	BASE, **mar-**
STEM, **hosti-**	STEM, **mari-**

			TERMINATIONS M. and F.	TERMINATIONS Neut.
	SINGULAR			
Nom.	hos'**tis**	ma'**re**	**is**	**e**
Gen.	hos'**tis**	ma'**ris**	**is**	**is**
Dat.	hos'**tī**	ma'**rī**	**ī**	**ī**
Acc.	hos'**tem**	ma'**re**	**em**	**e**
Abl.	hos'**te**	ma'**rī**	**e**	**ī**
	PLURAL			
Nom.	hos'**tēs**	ma'**ria**	**ēs**	**ia**
Gen.	hos'**tium**	ma'**rium**	**ium**	**ium**
Dat.	hos'**tibus**	ma'**ribus**	**ibus**	**ibus**
Acc.	hos'**tēs**	ma'**ria**	**ēs**	**ia**
Abl.	hos'**tibus**	ma'**ribus**	**ibus**	**ibus**

Note. — A few nouns like **ignis,** *fire,* have **e** or **ī** in the ablative singular, **em** or **im** in the accusative singular.

237. VOCABULARY

a'nimal, -ā'lis (**-ium** [1]), n., *animal.*
fī'nis, -is (**-ium**), m., *end;* plu., *territory.*
hos'tis, hos'tis, m., *an enemy;* **hos'tēs, hos'tium,** *the enemy.*
ig'nis, -is (**-ium**), m., *fire.*
i'ter, iti'neris, n., *journey, march.*
ma're, -is (**-ium**), n., *sea.*
mēns, men'tis (**-ium**), f., *mind, purpose.*
mōns, mon'tis (**-ium**), m., *mountain.*
nox, noc'tis (**-ium**), f., *night.*
pars, par'tis (**-ium**), f., *part.*
rī'pa, -ae, f., *bank* (of a river).
urbs, ur'bis (**-ium**), f., *city.*
recu'perō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *regain, recover.*
sae'pe, adverb, *often.*

238. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

hostile	ignite	marine	nocturnal
partial	riparian	itinerary	urban

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

---

[1] The genitive plural of i-stems is given in the vocabularies.

EXERCISES

239. *Translate, and decline the nouns:*

(*a*) 1. Multa animālia in marī fuērunt. 2. In fīnibus Gallōrum noctēs sunt longae. 3. Agrōs hostium igne petēmus. 4. Caput pars corporis est. 5. Eī hostēs quibuscum [1] Caesar saepe pugnāvit multī fuērunt.

(*b*) 1. Rīpae flūminis altae erant. 2. Dux eōs in castrīs tenuit. 3. In fīnibus hostium ignēs ā montibus ad mare vīsī erant. 4. Mīlitēs ā portīs urbis tēla portābunt. 5. Hostēs magnō itinere partem fīnium recuperābunt.

240. *Translate, marking long vowels:*

(*a*) 1. Caesar had been victor. 2. (There) have been many fires on that mountain. 3. In this part of the city the minds of the people will be alarmed. 4. By long (great) marches Caesar has led the soldiers to the river's banks. 5. The general's brother and sister see the large rivers.

(*b*) 1. There are often beautiful towns in the territories of the enemy. 2. They broke camp and stormed the gates of the enemy's town. 3. The lieutenants had seen the fires of the enemy's camp from the city. 4. The men will announce (their) victory to Caesar by fires on (from) the march. 5. There will always be the memory of Caesar's bravery in the minds of the soldiers and they will regain the territory.

241. *State in Latin five facts.* One pupil may state a fact to another and he in turn may tell it to the class in English.

Helvētiī

Gallia est dīvīsa [2] in partēs trēs. Ūnam partem incolunt [3] Belgae. In Galliā Aquītānī quoque fīnēs habent. Tertiam partem incolunt Gallī.

---

[1] **quibuscum** = **cum quibus.** **Cum** (*with*) is always appended to the ablative of the relative pronoun as an enclitic, like **-que** (*and*). [2] *Divided.*

[3] Notice that **incolunt** means *inhabit* when it is transitive and *dwell* when it is intransitive.

Helvētiī gēns[1] Gallōrum sunt quī cum Germānīs saepe bellum gerunt. Germānī trāns flūmen Rhēnum incolunt. Id flūmen agrōs Helvētiōrum ā Germānīs dīvidit. Agrī

THE RHINE.

Helvētiōrum nōn lātī sunt. Helvētiī multum frūmentum nōn habent.

Translate:

1. Where do the Helvetians dwell? 2. Are not the Helvetians waging war with the Germans? 3. What divides the territories of the Helvetians from (those of) the Germans? 4. Have you seen the large rivers? 5. Are there forces on the banks of the river?

---

[1] See § 41.

LESSON XXXVII

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

Iacta alea est. — The die is cast.[1]

242. Adjectives of the third declension correspond, in declension, to nouns of the third declension. Those ending in **-er** have a different form for each gender in the nominative singular and are called adjectives of *three endings:* **ācer, ācris, ācre.** Learn the declension of **ācer,** § 593.

(*a*) Almost all adjectives of the third declension, except comparatives, follow the inflection of **i**-stems ; that is, they have **-ī** in the ablative singular, **-ium** in the genitive plural, and **-ia** in the nominative and accusative plural neuter.

243. VOCABULARY

bī'duum, -uī, n., (a period of) *two days.*
trī'duum, -ui, n., (a period of) *three days.*
dēns, den'tis (-ium), m., *tooth.*
hō'ra, -ae, f., *hour.*
mēn'sis, mēn'sis (-ium), m., *month.*
au'tem,[2] conj., *moreover, however.*
cī'vis, cī'vis (-ium), m. and f., *citizen.*
nā'vis, nā'vis (-ium), f., *ship.*
ā'cer, ā'cris, ā'cre, *sharp, keen, active.*
a'lacer, -cris, -cre, *eager, cheerful.*
ce'ler, ce'leris, ce'lere, *quick, swift.*

244. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

civic dental navy accelerate alacrity

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

---

[1] Said by Caesar when he crossed the Rubicon. Quoted by Suetonius.

[2] **Autem** is a "post-positive" word, that is, it never comes first in a clause or sentence but is usually placed *after* the first word of the clause or sentence. But if several words together express one idea, **autem** follows the group and not necessarily the first word.

RULE

245. Ablative of Time. — Time when, or within which, is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

They were fighting at the tenth hour. **Decimā hōrā pugnābant.**
Many towns were stormed in one year. **Multa oppida ūnō annō oppugnāta sunt.**

EXERCISES

246. *Translate, and give the construction of each noun:*

(*a*) 1. Aestāte mīlitēs Caesaris saepe pugnābant. 2. Bīduō aut trīduō dux eōrum nocte castra mōvit. 3. Tertiā hōrā frūmentum ex nāvibus in oppidum ab nautīs portātum erat. 4. Lēgātus autem cum decimā legiōne annō tertiō oppidum magnā cum virtūte occupāvit. 5. Quīnque mēnsibus virtūs cīvium magna erit. 6. Mīles quattuor dentēs in proeliō amīsit.

(*b*) 1. Nautae ab īnsulā nāvigant. 2. Hominēs magnā cum celeritāte in urbem portātī sunt. 3. Nāvēs celerēs ad Caesarem bīduō litterās portāverant. 4. Librī in mēnsā magnā sunt. 5. Gladiī ā fīliīs cīvium portātī erunt.

247. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. The keen king was loved by the cheerful citizens. 2. In the third year of the war Caesar conquered twenty towns in the territory of the enemy. 3. Good sailors see the cities and the sea and ships. 4. The man's friend was a swift messenger. 5. At nine o'clock [1] the soldiers were overcome with great swiftness by the enemy.

(*b*) 1. The battle moreover was keen and the men fought with great bravery (on) that night. 2. The teeth of horses are large. 3. Weapons will be given to the active soldier by the good leader. 4. The consul's native land had broad fields. 5. In the sixth month of that year swift messengers will be sent by Caesar.

---

[1] The third hour.

248. Composition. — State in Latin three facts about the sea or the things in or upon it. When one pupil has stated a fact in Latin, another should translate the statement.

PHRASES FROM CAESAR

249. *Commit to memory with the translation:*

1. Aestāte. 2. Tertiā hōrā. 3. Magnā cum celeritāte. 4. Cum decimā legiōne. 5. Memoriā tenēre, *to remember*.

NĀVĒS RŌMĀNAE.

AUXILIUM AMĪCĪ

Est flūmen lātum et altum. Hominēs in eō flūmine nāvigant. Rīpās flūminis agricolae tenent. Frūmentum nāvigiīs ad urbēs terrae ā nautīs portātur.

Nauta erat quī nāvigium habuit. Saepe amīcus dē ventīs magnīs nautam admonuit, sed nauta ventōs nōn timēbat.

Cōpia frūmentī in nāvigium portāta est. Nauta sociōs pecūniā (*by means of money*) comparāvit et cum sociīs in flūmine nāvigāvit. Mox ventus magnus,[1] et nāvigium in perīculō fuit.

Erat in flūmine īnsula parva et in īnsulā vīlla. Amīcus nautae, quī forte in vīllā fuit, perīculum eius vīdit et multīs cum hominibus celeriter auxilium tulit (*brought;* from **ferō**); et [2] nauta et nautae [3] comitēs servantur.

Virtūtem et celeritātem virī ācris memoriā tenēbimus.

Translate:

1. There are swift ships on the great seas. 2. The sailors who sail on the seas do not fear the winds. 3. The sailors are not carrying grain to the town by means of horses. 4. They will send aid to a friend in great danger. 5. The valor of those eager men will be remembered (held [in] memory).

---

[1] Supply **fuit.** [2] **et . . . et,** *both . . . and.* [3] See § 36.

LESSON XXXVIII

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES (*Continued*)

Fortes fortuna iuvat.—Fortune favors the brave.[1]

250. Adjectives of the third declension which end in **-is** have the masculine and feminine alike in the nominative singular and are called adjectives of *two endings:* **fortis, fortis, forte.** Learn the declension of **fortis,** § 594.

Adjectives of the third declension not ending in **-er** or **-is** and not of the comparative degree have only one ending and are called adjectives of *one ending.* Learn the declension of **potēns,** § 595.

251. **VOCABULARY**

vigi'lia, -ae, f., *watch* (a fourth part of the night).
bre'vis, -e, *short.*
for'tis, -e, *brave.*
gra'vis, -e, *heavy, severe, weighty.*
le'vis, -e, *light* (in weight).
om'nis, -e, *all, every.*
pār, pa'ris, *equal; equal to* (with dative).
po'tēns, poten'tis, *able, powerful.*
re'cēns, recen'tis, *fresh, new.*
vē'lōx, -ō'cis, *swift, speedy.*
sī, conj., *if.*

252. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

potent	brevity	grave	fortitude
levity	omnibus	recent	vigil

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

[1] From the Roman dramatic poet, Terence.

EXERCISES

253. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Brevī tempore servī rēgis līberābuntur. 2. Pars cīvium ā fortī nautā laudābātur. 3. Cīvēs autem gravibus tēlīs vulnerātī erant. 4. Omnēs nautae ex urbe in nāvēs properāverant et in marī nāvigābant. 5. Lēgātus alacer levī gladiō ex itinere[1] pugnāverit.

(*b*) 1. Tertiā vigiliā noctis mīlitēs in magnō perīculō erant. 2. Agricolae bonī in agrīs cum dīligentiā labōrāverant. 3. Hieme mīlitēs fortēs nostrī in fīnēs Gallōrum ab eō nōn dūcentur. 4. Equī vēlōcēs quōs mīlitēs relīquerant ab alacribus sociīs recuperābuntur. 5. Celeritās prīmī equī pār celeritātī secundī erat.

254. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. The nights in the months of summer were short. 2. The book will be light, but the sword will be heavy. 3. The two messengers will carry the weapons with equal speed to him. 4. The brave citizen had always been praised by them. 5. In the third watch of the night part of the soldiers was in camp.

(*b*) 1. If soldiers are swift, they are praised by the good leader. 2. The citizens had often been praised by the brave leader. 3. In the second watch all the men carried the remaining weapons from camp in a short time. 4. A watch is a part of the night. 5. The boy had a heavy sword with which he wounded a large animal in (his) father's field.

PHRASES FROM CAESAR

255. *Commit to memory with the translations:*

1. Brevī tempore. 2. Tertiā vigiliā. 3. Cum mīlitibus decimae legiōnis. 4. Magnīs itineribus. 5. Ex itinere.

The Food of the Romans

The diet of the early Romans was simple and nourishing. Their chief food was wheat in the form of porridge and bread,

[1] Translate by "on the march."

vegetables, fruits, and wine. Each soldier in Caesar's army was allowed a certain amount of wheat daily, which was ground in a little handmill and baked into bread in camp. This was the mainstay of his diet although supplemented by meats, fruit, and other food which he might be able to obtain from the country through which he was marching. The Romans were largely vegetarians, and their simple habits of eating accounted to a considerable degree for their rugged strength.

Italy is a land where fruits, grain, vegetables, and nuts grow abundantly. Just as in Greece, grapes and olives grew in great profusion and therefore olive oil and wine were largely used. The Romans had no butter, but olive oil took its place. They had no potatoes and tomatoes, but they used great quantities of other vegetables, particularly for salads. Meat was eaten but little, largely because of the difficulty of keeping it fresh in the warm Italian climate. Pork was the principal meat which they ate when it was available. Fish were accounted a delicacy.

Naturally as Rome became greater and more civilized the Romans changed their habits of eating, but not for the better. The rough food and the vegetable diet, coupled with plenty of hard work, made the early Romans a great and sturdy race. When their food became elaborate and all the work was done by slaves, the Romans lost their strength, their character, and their greatness.

In the last days of the Republic and the Empire, the Romans became overfond of eating and paid enormous prices for fancy fish, oysters, and absurd delicacies. The amounts spent for some of their dinners, $16,000, for example, startle us even today.

LESSON XXXIX

REVIEW

Esse quam videri. — *To be rather than to seem.*[1]

256. Derivatives. — *A.* Write all the English words you can that seem to be derived from the following:

hōra	vēlōx	celer	cīvis
brevis	fortis	gravis	omnis
pōnō	dō	vincō	nāvigō
fīnis	urbs	mēns	dēns

B. With aid of an unabridged English dictionary study carefully the form and meaning of the following words and compare them with the Latin originals:

fraternity capital regalia fort plunder November

257. Word Drill. — (*a*) Give the nominative and genitive singular and the gender of the Latin nouns for the following:

mountain	city	fire	sea	night
enemy	tooth	citizen	hour	ship

(*b*) Give the nominative singular, all genders, of the following:

ācer	alacer	potēns	pār
recēns	fortis	omnis	vēlōx

(*c*) 1. What is meant by i-stem nouns? How do they differ as to stem from the first, second, and regular third declension nouns? 2. Give the rule which shows what classes of nouns have i-stems. 3. How do mascu-

[1] The motto of North Carolina.

line and feminine **i**-stem nouns differ from neuter **i**-stem nouns in the ablative singular? What is the ending of neuter **i**-stem nouns in the nominative and accusative plural? What is the genitive plural ending of all **i**-stem nouns? What two endings may masculine and feminine **i**-stem nouns have in the accusative plural? Which of these endings is the more commonly used? 4. Decline **animal, mare, hostis, mōns, nox, pars, iter, bīduum.** 5. What is the usual ending of third declension adjectives in the ablative singular? In the genitive plural? In the nominative and accusative plural of neuters? 6. What is meant by describing third declension adjectives as having one, two, or three endings? No matter how many endings the adjective has, what cases are alike throughout? What two cases are different? 7. Decline **celer, brevis, vēlōx.**

258. Syntax Drill. — 1. Name two uses of the ablative without a preposition. 2. Name two uses of the ablative with **ā** or **ab.** 3. How is an ablative of means distinguished from an ablative of agent?

259. Composition. — Write in Latin five or more connected sentences, telling something about a sailor and his ship. (The best papers may be written on the board and read at sight by the class.)

260. EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

1. Erat autem proelium ācre cum hostibus. 2. Tēlum alacrī mīlitī ā virō dabitur. 3. Aqua ad equōs celerēs ā puerīs portāta est. 4. Hominēs sunt miserī, sed nōn malī. 5. Multī et bonī cīvēs ā Caesare amātī erant. 6. Lēgātī magnā virtūte pugnābunt. 7. Pulchrī librī fīliābus ā mātribus datī sunt. 8. Perīculum saepe timuimus. 9. Imperātor bonus cīvēs potentēs līberāvit. 10. Tertiā vigiliā dux oppidum hostium oppugnāvit.

LESSON XL

POSSUM. COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE

Possunt quia posse videntur. — They can because they think they can.[1]

261. Conjugation of *possum,* *I am able* or *I can* (= potis, *able* + **sum,** *I am*). Principal parts: **possum, posse, potuī.** It has no passive voice.

(*a*) **Possum = pot + sum;** the **t** becomes **s** before those forms of the verb **sum** which begin with **s.** The perfect stem tenses are formed according to the formula given for those tenses. See §§ 100 and 106.

Conjugate the indicative mood of **possum,** according to the above. Compare with § 614.

262. VOCABULARY

moe'nia, -ium, n., *fortifications* (walls of a city).

circum'dō, -dare, -dedī, -datus, *surround* (with acc. and abl.).

conten'dō, -ere, -dī, -tentū'rus, *hasten, struggle.*

du'bitō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ātū'rus, *be in doubt, hesitate.*

stu'deō, -ē're, stu'duī, *be eager, desire.*

temp'tō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ātū'rus, *try, attempt.*

dē'beō, -ē're, -uī, -itus, *owe; ought, must* (used with infinitive).

pos'sum, pos'se, po'tuī, *can, be able* (used with infinitive).

e'nim, conj. (postpositive),[2] *for, indeed.*

i'bi, adv., *there, in that place.*

263. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

possible contention debit dubious

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

---

[1] Vergil. Literally: *Because they seem to be able.*

[2] See note § 243.

RULE

264. Complementary Infinitive. — **Possum** and some other verbs require an infinitive to complete their meaning; this is called a *complementary infinitive.*

Caesar could fight. **Caesar pugnāre potuit.**
We ought to love our country. **Patriam amāre dēbēmus.**

EXERCISES

265. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Ibi urbēs occupāre potuerant. 2. Studuistīne monēre cīvēs? 3. Omnēs hostēs superāre potuimus. 4. In proeliō perīculum timēre nōn dēbēmus. 5. Ā monte ad rīpam flūminis castra movēre dubitāvimus.

(*b*) 1. Cum populō Rōmānō contendere nōn potuērunt. 2. Omnia moenia ab hostibus cotīdiē vidēbantur. 3. Fortēs enim hominēs bellum gerere nōn dubitant. 4. Tertiā vigiliā noctis imperātor mīlitibus signum dare dubitat. 5. Urbem moenibus altīs circumdare imperātor contendet.

266. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Caesar ought not to fear him. 2. The Romans cannot defeat all (their) enemies in ten years. 3. Caesar had been eager to overcome the powerful foreigners with ships. 4. The good soldiers hastened to fight daily with great courage. 5. The Roman people are not able to love the enemies of (their) native land.

(*b*) 1. There the banks of the broad river which we saw were high. 2. The swords had been retained with care. 3. Ten powerful cities have been surrounded with walls and the allies hesitate to fight with them. 4. The boy's books are heavy, (his) sister's light. 5. Indeed all the fortifications of the enemy were attacked in the third year of the war.

267. Composition. — Make five statements in Latin about things that are or have been possible.

Populus Rōmānus

Populus Rōmānus ōlim potēns erat. Multās enim gentēs orbis terrārum [1] pācāverat. In omnibus terrīs verba "Cīvis Rōmānus sum!" hominem ex iniūriā servāre poterant.

Moenia Rōmāna.

Itaque cīvitās Rōmāna praesidium in perīculīs dabat et magnum praemium virtūtis erat.

Poenās [2] nōn tardē barbarī dabant quī cīvem Rōmānum inimīcō modō (*in a hostile manner*) appellāre audēbant. In barbarōs iūdicia saepe inīqua fuērunt. Salūs cīvium suprēma lēx erat. Exempla inīquōrum iūdiciōrum multa et nōta in librīs scrīpta sunt.

---

[1] **orbis terrārum,** *world;* literally *the circle of the lands, i.e.,* the lands lying around the Mediterranean.

[2] For the meaning of **poena** with **dō,** see the General Vocabulary.

Translate:

1. Caesar, a powerful general, had conquered the enemies of the Roman people. 2. By means of swift ships he was able to sail on all the seas and defend the Roman citizens. 3. All the Roman citizens loved the country which protected them (**eōs**). 4. We ought to love our country and defend liberty. 5. We are eager to give our lives for our country.

LESSON XLI

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Magna est vis consuetudinis. — Great is the force of habit.

268. Comparison of Adjectives. — Adjectives expressing quality are compared,[1] in Latin as in English, in three ways: *regularly*, *irregularly*, and *by the use of words for "more" and "most."*

269. Regular Comparison. — The nominative singular of the comparative is formed by adding **-ior,** *masc.* and *fem.*, **-ius,** *neut.*, and of the superlative by adding **-issimus, -a, -um** to the base of the positive.

Long, **longus** (base: **long-**); *longer,* **longior;** *longest,* **longissimus.**
Swift, **vēlōx** (base: **vēlōc-**); *swifter,* **vēlōcior;** *swiftest,* **vēlōcissimus.**

(*a*) The comparative may be translated *swifter, more swift, too swift,* or *rather swift;* the superlative, *swiftest, most swift,* or *very swift.* Great care should be taken to use the translation which makes the best sense, when taken in connection with the meaning of the rest of the sentence.

(*b*) Compare the following: **brevis, fortis, altus, potēns.**

270. The *comparative* is declined exactly as the third declension noun **imperātor** is declined. See also § 596. The neuter ends in **-ius.** Comparatives are *not* **i**-stems.

---

[1] Compare §§ 643 and 644.

Longior, *longer.* BASE, **longiōr-**

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUTER	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUTER
Nom.	lon'gior	lon'gius	longiō'**rēs**	longiō'**ra**
Gen.	longiō'**ris**	longiō'**ris**	longiō'**rum**	longiō'**rum**
Dat.	longiō'**rī**	longiō'**rī**	longiō'**ribus**	longiō'**ribus**
Acc.	longiō'**rem**	lon'gius	longiō'**rēs**	longiō'**ra**
Abl.	longiō'**re**	longiō'**re**	longiō'**ribus**	longiō'**ribus**

(*a*) The *superlative* is declined like **magnus, -a, -um.**

271. VOCABULARY

cam'pus, -ī, m., *plain, field.*
spa'tium, -ī, n., *space, time.*
vīl'la, -ae, f., *farmhouse; country-house.*
perī'tus, -a, -um, *experienced, skilled; skilled in* (with gen.).
a'pud, prep. with accus., *near, among, in the presence of* (persons).
ob, prep. with accus., *against, on account of.*
hīc, adv., *here.*
Germā'nia, -ae, f., *Germany.*
Germā'nus, -ī, m., *a German.*
Germā'nus, -a, -um, *German.*
pōns, pon'tis (**-ium**), m., *bridge.*
vīs, vīs, vī, vim, vī, f., *violence, force;* plu., **vī'rēs, vī'rium,** etc., *strength* (usually *bodily strength*).
quam, adv. and conj., *as, than.*

272. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

spacious vim villain camp

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES

273. *Translate, and decline each adjective:*

(*a*) 1. Germānī fortiōrēs quam eī Gallī fuērunt. 2. Hoc iter brevius erit quod montēs paucī sunt. 3. Rēgēs Germānī potentiōrēs quam cīvēs erant. 4. Suntne virī perītiōrēs quam fēminae? Superantne eās vīribus? 5. Hominēs in pāce saepe fortiōrēs sunt quam in bellō.

(*b*) 1. Multitūdō tēlōrum gravissimōrum in ponte relicta est. 2. Hominēs fortēs in campīs Germānōrum ā rēge cotīdiē cōnscrīptī sunt. 3. Imperātor ā vīllā vōce cōnsulis vocābātur. 4. Spatiō

decem mēnsium erit pōns hīc ad nostram urbem. 5. Ob vīrēs is vir quem vocāvistī perītissimus mīles esse dēbet.

274. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Seas are deeper and wider than rivers. 2. Nights among the Gauls are very short in summer. 3. The infantry are often braver than the cavalry. 4. The consul's farmhouse is higher than (those) of the citizens. 5. The enemy did not see the way through the fields, which was shortest.

PŌNS RŌMĀNUS.

(*b*) 1. In the presence of Caesar the fifth legion surrounded the town with fortifications. 2. In winter, nights are longer than in summer. 3. Here the bravest men love peace. 4. The skilled infantry could not pitch camp in Germany without (their) leader. 5. Caesar hastened to seize the bridge on account of (its) size.

ORAL EXERCISES

275. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Eratne Caesar fortior quam Mārcus? 2. Ubi hominēs fortissimī sunt? 3. Estne iter breve? 4. Cūr mīlitēs laudābantur? 5. Nōnne spatium inter oppida magnum fuit?

L. IŪNIUS BRŪTUS

Quod Tarquinius Superbus malus crūdēlisque rēx erat, omnēs cīvēs Rōmānī eum ōdērunt (*hated*) et ex urbe ex-

pulērunt (*drove out*). Is erat ultimus septem rēgum quī rēgnum Rōmānum ab urbe conditā obtinuerant. Brūtus erat dux coniūrātiōnis in (*against*) malum rēgem et statim cum Collātīnō cōnsul creātus est. Ab eō (*this*) tempore Rōmānī nūllum rēgem habēbant, sed duo cōnsulēs cīvitātem gubernāvērunt.

Tarquinius ā fīnitimō oppidō nūntiōs, quibus magnam pecūniam dederat, ad urbem clam mīsit. Pecūniā et praemiīs rēgnum recuperāre studēbat. Paucī hominēs in urbe pecūniam magis (*more*) quam lībertātem amāvērunt et pecūniam Tarquinī accēpērunt et cōnsilia in (*against*) cīvitātem iniērunt (*began*). Inter eōs malōs erant duo fīliī Brūtī ipsīus (*himself*).

Servus amīcus ea cōnsilia audīvit et duōs fīliōs Brūtī inter coniūrātōs vīdit. Statim ad Brūtum cōnsulem properāvit et eī cōnsilia coniūrātōrum nārrāvit. Brūtus pater bonus erat quī suōs fīliōs amāvit, sed Rōmam magis amāvit.

Translate:

1. Tarquinius, who was wicked, was not loved by the citizens. 2. In a short time he was sent from the city. 3. Then Brutus, the consul, was the chief man of the Roman state. 4. The wicked sons of Brutus attempted to give aid to Tarquinius. 5. A slave however announced the plan to their father, the consul.

Roman Meals

In the average Roman family there were three meals daily, the **ientāculum** or breakfast taken about daylight, the **prandium** or lunch, and the **cēna** or dinner. Even in the later days of Rome the first two were simple meals, just enough to stay the stomach until dinner time.

The ientaculum, served in the early morning, consisted of bread, perhaps sprinkled with salt or dipped in wine, and of

raisins, olives, and possibly a little cheese. After breakfast the upper-class Roman received his clients at his home, gave them their orders for the day, and then went forth to the senate or the courts, or to visit friends and transact any other business that he might have.

The prandium or luncheon was served about noon, possibly a little earlier, and was usually cold. It consisted ordinarily of bread, salad, cheese, olives, wine, and perhaps some meat left over from dinner of the day before. During the next hour after lunch, everyone who could took a rest from the midday heat. This custom of **merīdiātiō** or the noon "siesta" prevails in most warm countries today.

After the siesta the Roman of leisure went to the great baths, which served as clubs, not only for exercise, visiting, and bathing, but also at times for the transaction of business.

LESSON XLII

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES IN *-ER* AND *-LIS*

Similia similibus curantur. — *Like cures like.*[1]

276. Adjectives ending in *-er* form the nominative singular of the superlative by adding **-rimus, -a, -um,** to the nominative singular masculine of the positive. The comparative is formed regularly.

mi′ser, mi′sera, mi′serum	mise′**rior, -ius**	miser′**rimus, -a, -um**
ā′cer, ā′cris, ā′cre	ā′**crior, -ius**	ācer′**rimus, -a, -um**

277. The following adjectives in **-lis** form the nominative singular of the superlative by adding **-limus, -a, -um** to the base of the positive. The comparative is formed regularly.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
fa′cilis, -e, *easy*	**faci′lior, -ius**	**facil′limus, -a, -um**
diffi′cilis, -e, *difficult*	**diffici′lior, -ius**	**difficil′limus, -a, -um**
si′milis, -e, *like*	**simi′lior, -ius**	**simil′limus, -a, -um**
dissi′milis, -e, *unlike*	**dissimi′lior, -ius**	**dissimil′limus, -a, -um**

(*a*) Compare the following : **celer, pulcher, līber, facilis.**

278. VOCABULARY

ōr′dō, -inis, m., *rank, order, row.*
prae′sēns, -en′tis, *present in person, present.*
prū′dēns, -en′tis, *foreseeing, discreet, prudent.*
pel′lō, -ere, pe′pulī, pul′sus, *drive, strike, defeat, rout.*
in′terim, adv., *meanwhile, presently.*
fa′cilis, -e, *easy.*
diffi′cilis, -e, *difficult.*
si′milis, -e, *like, similar; similar to* (with dative, usually).
dissi′milis, -e, *unlike, dissimilar; dissimilar to* (with dative, usually).
vē′rō, adv. (postpositive), *in truth, but.*

[1] Literally : *Like things are (best) treated by like.*

279. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

imprudent	similar	difficult	facility
repel	presence	ordinary	

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

280. Dative with Adjectives. — As has been noted in this and other vocabularies, the dative is used to complete the meaning of adjectives meaning *like* (*to*), *unlike* (*to*), *equal* (*to*), *unequal* (*to*), and *near* (*to*). Notice the similarity to English usage.

A sword is not like a javelin. **Gladius pīlō nōn similis est.**
The boys are not equal to their fathers in courage. **Puerī virtūte patribus nōn parēs sunt.**

EXERCISES

281. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Iter vērō facillimum erit. 2. Bellum pācī dissimillimum fuit. 3. Oppidum urbī simile nōn erat. 4. Quid bonīs amīcīs pār esse potest? 5. Interim itinera difficiliōra fuērunt.

(*b*) 1. Barbarī in proeliō perītīs mīlitibus Caesaris parēs nōn erant. 2. Mātrēs vērō quae prūdentissimae sunt fīliōs prūdentissimōs saepe habent. 3. Ad oppidum pulcherrimum Germānōs pepulerant. 4. Multa et pulcherrima animālia in marī vīsa sunt. 5. Imperātor praesēns erat sed ōrdinēs mīlitēs nōn tenēbant.

282. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. The soldiers meanwhile were very active in the presence of the leader. 2. The book is not difficult, but very easy. 3. Javelins (**pīlum, -ī,** n.) are unlike swords but these weapons routed the ranks of the Germans. 4. The march, in truth, had been more difficult than a journey on the sea. 5. The laws of the Romans were very unlike the laws of the Germans.

(*b*) 1. The soldiers had been led out of the camp at daybreak by the wise general. 2. Marcus had been more eager than his brother. 3. The camp on the mountain was very wide and long.

4. The river is rather long and very deep. 5. There are many bridges across [1] very wide rivers.

ORAL EXERCISE

283. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Estne liber difficilior? 2. Nōnne magister praesēns est? 3. Erantne servī parēs dominīs? 4. Quid potest pulchrius esse quam arbor? 5. Estne urbs similis oppidō?

L. Iūnius Brūtus (Continued)

Brūtus igitur mīlitēs convocāvit et eīs dīxit: "Meī fīliī in cīvitātem coniūrant. Comprehendite (*seize*) eōs et ad cōnsulēs dūcite (*bring*)." Servī in viās urbis contendērunt. Mox fīliōs et aliōs (*other*) coniūrātōs invēnērunt quōs ad cōnsulēs dūxērunt.

Iūdicium breve erat sed iūstum. Breviter pater sīc suīs fīliīs dīxit: "Sī innocentēs estis, vōs (*yourselves*) dēfendite (*defend*)." Fīliī autem nihil negāre poterant. Tum culpa coniūrātōrum omnibus clāra erat. Poena mors erat.

Brūtus ipse (*himself*), quod negōtium cōnsulis erat, iussit suōs fīliōs interficī (*to be killed*). Tantum (*so much*) Rōmānī antīquī cīvitātem amāvērunt, magis etiam quam līberōs! Itaque Rōma propter tantum amōrem patriae et propter facta suōrum cīvium maxima urbs facta est (*became*).

Translate:

1. They were led before (**ad**, *w. accus.*) Brutus by the soldiers whom he had sent. 2. All the citizens were present and the duty of the consul was very difficult. 3. He however did not hesitate to announce the penalty of death. 4. He loved (his) sons but he loved the state more. 5. Rome was often saved by the deeds of good citizens.

---

[1] *Across* (*over*, as in this sentence), **in** with the ablative; *across* (*on the other side of*) **trāns** with the accusative.

A Roman Street Scene.

LESSON XLIII

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

Salus populi suprema lex esto. — *Let the safety of the people be the highest law.*[1]

284. Irregular Comparison. — The following adjectives are irregularly compared:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bo'nus, *good*	**me'lior,** *better*	**op'timus,** *best*
ma'lus, *bad*	**pe'ior,** *worse*	**pes'simus,** *worst*
mag'nus, *great*	**ma'ior,** *greater*	**max'imus,** *greatest*
par'vus, *small*	**mi'nor (mi'nus),** *smaller*	**mi'nimus,** *smallest*
mul'tus, *much*		**plū'rimus,** *most*
mul'tum (neut.)	**plūs,** *more*	**plū'rimum,** *most*
mul'tī, *many*	**plū'rēs,** *more*	**plū'rimī,** *most*

(*a*) **Superus** with a regular comparative has two irregular superlatives:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
su'perus, *above*	**supe'rior,** *higher*	**suprē'mus** or **sum'mus,** *highest, last*

(*b*) The following comparatives and superlatives have no positive, but are formed from prepositions:

PREP.	POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
(prae, prō)	—	**prī'or,** *former*	**prī'mus,** *first*
(prope)	—	**pro'pior,** *nearer*	**prox'imus,** *nearest, next*

(*c*) Adjectives which have a vowel before the ending **-us** usually form the comparative and superlative by the use of the adverbs **magis,** *more,* and **maximē,** *most;* **idō'neus, magis idō'neus, maximē idō'neus.**

[1] The motto of Missouri.

285. VOCABULARY

extrē'mus, -a, -um, *outermost, last.*

idō'neus, -a, -um, *fit, suitable; fit for* (with dative).

pri'or, pri'us, *former;* (superlative) **prī'mus,** *first.*

appropin'quō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ātū'rus, *approach* (with **ad** and accus., or with the dat., when referring to place).

dēmōns'trō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *point out, show.*

bis, numeral adv., *twice.*

nē . . . qui'dem,[1] *not . . . even.*

pos'terus, -a, -um, *following.*

pro'pior, pro'pius, *nearer, next;* (superlative) **prox'imus,** *nearest, next; next to* (with dative, usually).

su'perus, -a, -um, *above;* (comparative) **supe'rior,** *higher;* (superlative) **suprē'mus** or **sum'mus,** *highest.*

Helvē'tiī, -ō'rum, m., *Helvetians.*

286. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

optimist	maximum	plurality
pessimist	proximity	priority
demonstration	bisect	superior

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES

287. *Translate, and compare all the adjectives:*

(*a*) 1. Virtūs Helvētiōrum maxima erat. 2. Vīdimus minus oppidum propius flūminī. 3. Nē dux quidem maior est quam imperātor. 4. Summus[2] mōns ab hostibus bis vīsus est. 5. Sumus[3] in pessimā parte vīllae.

(*b*) 1. Quid melius est quam pāx? 2. Locum castrīs idōneum rēgī dēmōnstrāverāmus. 3. Proximā nocte Helvētiī ex maiōribus castrīs equōs bonōs ēdūcere contendent. 4. Nē potentissimī

---

[1] The emphatic word stands between **nē** and **quidem.**

[2] *Top of the mountain.*

[3] Contrast **summus** and **sumus.**

quidem equitēs ad moenia bis appropinquābunt. 5. Prīma pars librī facilior quam extrēma habita est.

288. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Small animals are often rather beautiful. 2. The boy's memory ought to be very good. 3. Very many wars were very long. 4. The smallest soldiers in truth are often the most active. 5. Not even the citizens of Gaul are very bad.

A Roman Camp.

Roman camps were always surrounded by a wall, **vāllum**, and a ditch, **fossa**, which are plainly seen in this picture. Caesar's troops fortified a camp each night. The camps for winter quarters were more elaborate and often had towers along the walls with covered spaces between them.

(*b*) 1. Who can point out the best route to the last city nearest to Italy? 2. The winters, which had been very severe, were not suitable even for the soldiers. 3. (There) are forests on the top of the mountain. 4. The smaller ships were better than the larger (ones). 5. We are hastening into the territory of the enemy and shall approach the smaller towns.

PHRASES FROM CAESAR

289. *Commit to memory, with the translations:*

1. In citeriōre Galliā. 2. In ulteriōre Galliā. 3. Proximā nocte. 4. Castra mōvit. 5. Castra posuit. 6. In summō monte. 7. In mediō monte. 8. Locus idōneus castrīs.

A Practical Joke

Erat in Britanniā rēx quī quattuor fīliōs habuit. Dolor saepe in animō patris erat, quod frāter cum frātre pugnābat. Robertus, quī maximus nātū (*the eldest*) fuit, ferōx iuvenis erat, sed saepe ā frātribus pācem petere coāctus est.[1]

Forte Robertus ante aedēs stābat. Frātrēs, quī eum vīdērunt, vās aquae [2] plēnum in caput Robertī per fenestram effūdērunt. Robertus īrā permōtus (*roused*) gladiō puerōs pressit, et ūnus vulnerātus est. Tum rēx, quī iūniōrēs (*his younger*) fīliōs habēbat cāriōrēs [3] quam fīlium maximum nātū, Robertum ex urbe in exsilium pepulit.

Translate:

1. We do not like jests (**iocus, -ī,** m.) which the sons of the king of Britain liked. 2. Robert often fought with (his) brothers, who defeated him (**eum**). 3. It was not a good joke to pour (**effundere**) water on Robert's head. 4. On that account (**Propterea**) he wounded (his) brother and left (his) father and mother. 5. He loved them but he could not remain (**maneō, -ēre**) at home (**domī**).

---

[1] From **cōgō**.

[2] **Plēnum** governs the genitive.

[3] **habēbat cāriōrēs,** *held dearer, i.e., loved more.*

LESSON XLIV

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

Dulce et decorum est pro patria mori.—Sweet and seemly it is to die for one's country.[1]

290. Adverbs [2] are derived from adjectives. In Lesson XXXII it was shown that adverbs were formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by adding **-ē** to the base of the positive: *wide*, **lātus**; *widely*, **lātē**. From adjectives of the third declension they are formed by adding **-iter** [3] to the base: *sharp*, **ācer**; *sharply*, **ācriter**.

291. The comparison of adverbs is like that of the adjectives from which they are derived, except that the comparative ends in **-ius** and the superlative in **-ē**. Since adverbs are not declined, there is naturally only one form of the adverb in the positive, comparative, and superlative.

Adj.	**lātus,** *wide*	**lātior,** *wider*	**lātissimus,** *widest*
Adv.	**lātē,** *widely*	**lātius,** *more widely*	**lātissimē,** *most widely*
Adj.	**ācer,** *sharp*	**ācrior,** *sharper*	**ācerrimus,** *sharpest*
Adv.	**ācriter,** *sharply*	**ācrius,** *more sharply*	**ācerrimē,** *most sharply*

[1] Horace.

[2] Compare §§ 669–672.

[3] Present participles and some adjectives of one ending add **-ter** to the base to form the adverb: *careful*, **dīligēns**; *carefully*, **dīligenter**.

292. VOCABULARY

antecē'dō, -ere, -ces'sī, -cessū'rus, *go before, surpass* (with dat.).
coe'pī, -isse, *began.*[1]
dī'ligēns, -en'tis, *careful, diligent.*
hu'milis, -e, *low, lowly, humble.*
mo'dus, -ī, m., *manner, measure.*
ma'gis, adv., *more, more greatly.*
prūden'ter, *wisely, discreetly.*
ā'criter, *sharply, fiercely.*
cele'riter, *quickly.*
di'ū, diū'tius, diūtis'simē, *long, for a long time.*
dīligen'ter, *carefully, diligently.*
fa'cile,[2] *easily.*
for'titer, *bravely.*
pa'rum, adv., (*too*) *little;* comp., **mi'nus,** *less;* sup., **mi'nimē,** *very little, least, not at all.*
quam, followed by the superlative, *as . . . as possible.*
quō'modo, interrog. adv., *how.*

293. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

diligence humility antecedent mode

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

RULE

294. Ablative of Specification. — The ablative of specification is used without a preposition to define the application of a noun, adjective, or verb. It answers the question "In what respect?"

He was king in name. **Rēx nōmine erat.**
The boy was small in body. **Puer corpore parvus erat.**
He was not surpassed in courage. **Virtūte nōn superātus est.**

EXERCISES

295. *Translate; compare each adjective and adverb:*

(*a*) 1. Diū atque ācriter pugnāvērunt. 2. Germānī magnitūdine corporum Gallōs facile superant. 3. Lēgātī quam dīligentissimē labōrāverant. 4. Peditēs virtūte et vī equitibus antecēdere coepērunt. 5. Quam celerrimē eā nocte cōpiae ē castrīs pellentur.

---

[1] A defective verb, found mainly in the perfect tenses. It has no present system of tenses.

[2] An exception to the rule for formation of adverbs.

(*b*) 1. Helvētiī animālia ex campīs dīligenter pellent. 2. Servus humilis aquam facilius atque celerius portāre poterat quam fēmina. 3. Rōmānī cum Germānīs bellum saepissimē gerēbant. 4. Is locus in quō sumus magis idōneus castrīs est. 5. Mīlitēs Caesaris oppidīs hostium fortissimē appropinquābant.

296. *Translate, putting each adverb before the word it modifies:* [1]

(*a*) 1. The commander will wisely show the soldiers the manner of life of the enemy. 2. Very often lowly slaves surpass (their) masters in diligence. 3. The very wretched men could not fight longer. 4. The farmer began to labor more diligently than the sailor. 5. The enemy led out their forces as quickly as possible.

(*b*) 1. They will hasten to approach the farthest territory of the Gauls by forced (very great) marches. 2. The ships were very small. 3. The commander-in-chief will wage war as fiercely as possible. 4. On the following night we seized the top of the mountain. 5. Meanwhile the Helvetians had begun to attack the fortifications more quickly and more carefully.

PHRASES FROM CAESAR

297. *Commit to memory with the translations:*

1. Minus facile. 2. Diū atque ācriter. 3. Quam fortissimē. 4. Prīmā aestāte. 5. Quam celerrimē.

Give the Latin equivalents for the following expressions:

1. On the top of the mountain. 2. On the next night. 3. At daybreak. 4. As quickly as possible. 5. To pitch camp.

T. Mānlius Torquātus

Antīquīs temporibus cīvitātis Rōmānae ūnus vir ex utrōque exercitū (*each army*) prō omnibus saepe pugnābat. Ōlim T. Mānlius dux Rōmānus in tālī (*such*) certāmine dēcertāvit

[1] An adverb generally stands before the word which it modifies.

et Gallicum ducem quōcum pugnābat superāvit. Tum ā collō mortuī Gallī monīle aurī tortī dētrāxit. Ab eō (*this*) tempore Mānlius "Torquātus" appellātus est.

Posteā Mānlius cōnsul ā Rōmānīs creātus est itaque dux cōpiārum Rōmānārum erat. Mīlitēs Rōmānī tam celeriter quam volēbat nōn semper pārēbant. Quam celerrimē mīlitēs pārēre dēbent. Mīlitibus igitur Mānlius dīxit: "Mors supplicium erit, sī quis (*anyone*) iniussus (*without orders*) proelium committet."

Brevī tempore Rōmānī cum hostibus pugnābant. In exercitū Rōmānō erat fīlius Torquātī quī fortissimus erat et semper pugnāre studēbat. In eā (*this*) pugnā imperāta suī patris cōnsulis nōn expectābat sed proelium commīsit iniussus (*without orders*). Post proelium cōnsul fīlium ad sē (*into his presence*) vocāvit et statim eum interficī (*to be killed*) iussit, quod sibi (*him*) nōn pāruerat (*obey*, w. dat.)

Hoc exemplum omnēs reliquōs mīlitēs terruit et semper posteā imperātīs cōnsulis pāruērunt (*obey*, w. dat.).

Translate:

1. Manlius was the leader of the Roman soldiers who were fighting with the Gauls. 2. He excelled the leader of the enemy in bravery and conquered him. 3. A new name (**cognōmen**) was given to him after that victory. 4. His own (**ipsīus**) son, who was very brave, began battle without orders (**iniussus**). 5. What was the penalty for (of) that deed?

The Roman Dinner

When three o'clock came, it was time to think of the dinner or **cēna,** which was served usually about four o'clock. Dinner was an event which every Roman looked forward to with great anticipation. There were no great restaurants at Rome; therefore all entertaining was done at home. In

later days prominent Romans expected to dine out or have guests every evening. The usual dining room had a table with three dining couches; on each couch three persons were accommodated. For larger parties more tables and couches were, of course, used. At dinner the Roman reclined on his left side, leaning on his left elbow and facing the table. The dining couches were arranged on three sides of a square with one side open so that servants could reach the table on which the food was placed in the center of the square. The Romans followed the old custom, "Fingers were made before forks," and took up their food with the fingers of the right hand, either directly from the central table or from dishes passed to them by the slaves.

Wine, sometimes mixed with water, was always served, but intoxication was rare except in the degraded drinking parties of the later days of Rome.

LESSON XLV

REVIEW

Non bene, crede mihi, servo servitur amico. — Not well, believe me, is one served by a friend who is a slave.[1]

298. Derivatives. — *A.* Write all the English words you can that seem to be derived from the following:

ōrdō	vīs	humilis	facilis
similis	maior	modus	prūdēns
prior	superus	dīligenter	celeriter
pellō	laudō		

B. With the aid of an unabridged English dictionary, study carefully the form and meaning of the following words and compare with the Latin originals:

omnibus	insulation	integer
sinecure	romance	secretary

299. Form and Word Drill.[2] — 1. Conjugate **possum** through the indicative mood. 2. Give the principal parts and stems of the following verbs: **circumdō, studeō, contendō, pellō, antecēdō.** 3. How are adjectives regularly compared? 4. How do adjectives ending in **-er** form the superlative? 5. How do four adjectives in **-lis** form their superlatives. 6. How are comparatives declined? Decline **melior.** 7. How are superlatives declined? Decline **optimus.** 8. Compare **prior, facilis, propior, magnus, multī, superus, idōneus.** 9. Compare the Latin adjectives

[1] Martial. [2] Time the class on this work. See footnote to page 120.

for the following, and form and compare the adverbs made from these adjectives:

sharp	*short*	*good* [1]	*quick*	*recent*
difficult	*diligent*	*brave*	*heavy*	*wide*
free	*bad*	*beautiful*	*small* [2]	*swift*

300. Syntax Drill. — 1. Name at least three Latin verbs that are followed by the *complementary infinitive.* 2. Mention *three* uses of the ablative without a preposition. 3. Illustrate by original English sentences an expression of: (1) time when, (2) time within which. 4. Mention several Latin adjectives that take a dative. 5. Review all the other rules learned thus far.

301. EXERCISE FOR SIGHT READING

1. Rōmānī deōs superōs amāre dēbent. 2. Proximā nocte lēgātus fortissimus mīlitēs ad pontem prūdenter ēdūcet. 3. Vīrēs Rōmānōrum maiōrēs erant quam vīrēs Helvētiōrum. 4. Castra quīnque hōrīs hīc pōnentur. 5. Num habuistī librum idōneum puerō? 6. Ācriter et fortiter moenia altissima oppugnāre coepērunt. 7. Germānī equīs celerrimīs ad urbem frūmentum portāre coepērunt. 8. Imperātor perītissimus omnibus mīlitibus auctōritāte antecēdit. 9. Tertiā vigiliā mīlitēs ē castrīs maiōribus celerius quam ē castrīs minōribus missī sunt. 10. Quam dīligentissimē nūntiī ad rīpās eius flūminis appropinquāvērunt.

---

[1] Adv. **bene.** [2] Adv. **parum.**

LESSON XLVI

FOURTH DECLENSION. GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE

Quorum magna pars fui.—In which I was a prominent actor.[1]

302. The fourth declension consists of those nouns whose genitive singular ends in **-ūs.** Those ending in **-us** in the nominative singular are masculine, with a few exceptions. Those whose nominative ends in **-ū** are neuter.

Exer'citus, m., *army.* BASE, **exercit-**

	SINGULAR	TERMINATIONS	PLURAL	TERMINATIONS
Nom.	exer'cit**us**	**us**	exer'cit**ūs**	**ūs**
Gen.	exer'cit**ūs**	**ūs**	exerci'**tuum**	**uum**
Dat.	exerci'**tuī**	**uī**	exerci'**tibus**	**ibus**
Acc.	exer'cit**um**	**um**	exer'cit**ūs**	**ūs**
Abl.	exer'cit**ū**	**ū**	exerci'**tibus**	**ibus**

Cornū, n., *horn.* BASE, **corn-**

Nom.	cor'n**ū**	**ū**	cor'n**ua**	**ua**
Gen.	cor'n**ūs**	**ūs**	cor'n**uum**	**uum**
Dat.	cor'n**ū**	**ū**	cor'n**ibus**	**ibus**
Acc.	cor'n**ū**	**ū**	cor'n**ua**	**ua**
Abl.	cor'n**ū**	**ū**	cor'n**ibus**	**ibus**

303. VOCABULARY

cor'nū, -ūs, n., *horn; wing* (of an army).
do'mus, -ūs, f., *house, home.*
exer'citus, -ūs, m., *army.*
ex'itus, -ūs, m., *outcome, departure.*
im'petus, -ūs, m., *attack.*
ma'nus, -ūs, f., *hand; band* (of soldiers).
occā'sus, -ūs, m., *setting.*
dex'ter, -tra, -trum, *right, right hand.*
sinis'ter, -tra, -trum, *left, left hand.*
bene, adv., *well.*
vēlō'citer, adv., *swiftly.*
in'ter, prep. with acc., *between, among.*

[1] Vergil. Literally: *Of which I was a large part.*

(*a*) Notice the force of the suffix **-tus,** sometimes written **-sus** for the sake of euphony. Nouns formed from verbs with the aid of this suffix denote an act or the result of an act, *e.g.*, **exitus** is formed from **ex** (*out*) and **eō** (*go*); therefore it means a "going out" or departure.

An equivalent English suffix is *-ing*, seen here in "go*ing* out."

Exercitus, impetus, occāsus are verbal nouns formed in the same way.

(*b*) **Domus,** f., *house, home*, sometimes has the endings of the second declension in the genitive, dative, and ablative singular, and in the genitive and accusative plural. Learn the declension of **domus,** § 591.

DOMUS RŌMĀNA.

This reproduction of the peristyle of a Roman house is in the Metropolitan Museum of Art. Compare it with the picture on page 52.

304. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

cornucopia	manual	impetuous	domestic
dexterity	sinister	interlude	benefit

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

RULE

305. Substitutes for the Genitive. — The ablative with **dē** or **ex** is sometimes used instead of the genitive of the whole, especially after cardinal numbers. *One of the boys.* **Ūnus ex puerīs.** *Ten of the horses were seen in the field.* **Decem ex equīs in agrō vīsī sunt.**

Note. — The genitive, denoting the whole of which a part is mentioned, is called the "Genitive of the Whole" or "Partitive Genitive." Example: **Fortissimī virōrum in exercitū erant.** *The bravest of the men were in the army.* **Virōrum** denotes the whole of which **fortissimī** is a part. The use of the partitive genitive is exactly the same as in English; therefore no rule need be learned.

EXERCISES

306. *Translate, and parse all the verbs:*

(*a*) 1. Fortissimus omnium Rōmānōrum erat Caesar. 2. Decem ex mīlitibus quam fortissimī fuerant. 3. Multī Helvētiī vulnerātī erant sed tempus idōneum exituī nōn erat. 4. Pars manūs ā dextrō cornū[1] vidēbātur. 5. Sōlis occāsū Caesar summō in monte castra posuit.

(*b*) 1. Domus Caesaris pulcherrima erat. 2. Imperātor sinistrō cornū exercitūs propior quam dextrō erat. 3. Paucī[2] mīlitēs vēlōcissimē contendērunt et bellum bene gessērunt. 4. Impetūs dextrī cornūs facile sustinēbimus. 5. Multae et maximae arborēs inter domum et flūmen vidēbantur.

307. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. We saw the houses of the enemy which were on the top of the mountain. 2. The band of Helvetians could not be equal to Caesar's armies. 3. Six of the attacks have been withstood very bravely. 4. War was waged long and fiercely in the territory of the Gauls. 5. A few of the bands of the enemy withstood the Roman army twice.

---

[1] *On the right wing.* [2] Sometimes used with **dē** + abl. for *a few of.*

(*b*) 1. At sunset the soldiers fought less easily and awaited the departure of the enemy. 2. Very many attacks of the enemy have been withstood by his forces. 3. Good laws are praised by the best citizens, but not by bad men. 4. The left wing of Caesar's army was not like the right (wing). 5. The soldiers on the left wing fought longer than (those) on the right (wing).

PHRASES FROM CAESAR

308. *Commit to memory, with the translations:*

1. Sōlis occāsū. 2. Ā dextrō cornū. 3. Ā sinistrō cornū. 4. Minus facile. 5. Ab superiōre parte.

The Mouse-Tower. I

Erat ōlim in Germāniā famēs. Omnēs quī cibum male[1] prōvīderant dēspērābant. Labōrēs mīlitārēs intermittēbant. Aut morbum aut mortem exspectābant. Multī ā prīncipe cibum petēbant, quī cōpiam frūmentī in horreīs habuit. Sed animum prīncipis crūdēlis ad misericordiam indūcere nōn poterant.

Quod crūdēlissimus erat, magnam multitūdinem in horreum perdūxit ubi frūmentum erat, et paulō post (*a little later*) horreum incendit. Clāmōrēs miserrimī fuērunt, at prīnceps rīsit et exclāmāvit, "Strīdor mūrium est!" Tum in auribus prīncipis magna vōx audīta est: "Corpus tuum, miser,[2] mūrēs dēvorābunt." Graviter animō (*in mind*) commōtus est.

Translate:

1. Once there was a very severe famine in Germany. 2. If there is not food, the citizens despair quickly. 3. Food had been placed in barns by the chief of the Germans. 4. He did not desire to give food to the citizens because he was very bad. 5. He led out the men from the city to the barn and burned it before the eyes of all.

---

[1] Here = *insufficiently*. [2] Vocative.

LESSON XLVII

FIFTH DECLENSION

Carpe diem.—Seize the opportunity.[1]

309. The fifth declension consists of nouns whose genitive singular ends in **-ēī** or in **-eī.**[2] They are feminine, with a few exceptions.

Di'ēs, m., *day*. BASE, **di-** **Rēs**, f., *thing*. BASE, **r-**

			TERMINATIONS
		SINGULAR	
Nom.	di'ēs	rēs	ēs
Gen.	diē'ī	re'ī	ēī, eī
Dat.	diē'ī	re'ī	ēī, eī
Acc.	di'em	rem	em
Abl.	di'ē	rē	ē
		PLURAL	
Nom.	di'ēs	rēs	ēs
Gen.	diē'rum	rē'rum	ērum
Dat.	diē'bus	rē'bus	ēbus
Acc.	di'ēs	rēs	ēs
Abl.	diē'bus	rē'bus	ēbus

(*a*) **Rēs pū'blica** and **iūs iūran'dum** are compound nouns.

Rēs pū'blica = **rēs** + fem. adj. **pū'blica,** meaning *state affair, common interest,* that is, the *state.* Both parts of the word are declined.

Iūs iūran'dum = **iūs** + neuter gerundive **iūrandum. Iūs** is a neuter noun of the third declension, and **iūran'dum** is declined like the neuter of **magnus.** Both parts of the word are declined, but the plural has only the form **iūra iūranda** (nom. and acc.).

[1] Horace. Literally: *Grasp the day.*

[2] Genitive and dative singular end in **-ēī** when a vowel precedes the ending, in **-eī** when a consonant precedes.

310. VOCABULARY

a'ciēs, aciē'ī, f., *line of battle.*
merī'diēs, -ē'ī, m., *midday, noon.*
nō'bilis, -e,[1] *well-known, famous.*
vīcī'nus, -a, -um, *neighboring.*
iam prī'dem, *long ago, long since.*
inimī'cus, -ī, m., *a personal enemy.* (Compare **hos'tis,** *a public enemy.*)
di'ēs, diē'ī, m., *day.*
iūs iūran'dum, iū'ris iūran'dī, n., *oath.*
iūs, iū'ris, n., *right, law.*
rēs, re'ī, f., *thing, affair, matter, situation.*
rēs pū'blica, re'ī pū'blicae, f., *commonwealth, state.*

311. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

vicinity nobility republic paucity

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

RULE

312. Expressions of Cause. — Cause may be expressed by the ablative, usually without a preposition, or by **ob** or **propter** with the accusative.

Because of fear they left the camp. **Metū castra relīquērunt.**
He pitched camp here because of the nature of the place. **Propter nātūram locī castra hīc posuit.**

EXERCISES

313. *Translate, and compare the adjectives and adverbs:*

(*a*) 1. Māter propter eārum dīligentiam fīliās parvās laudābit. 2. Lēgēs reī pūblicae nostrae optimae sunt. 3. Rōmānī locum idōneum castrīs vīdērunt. 4. Equitēs propter celeritātem vēlōcius quam peditēs pontī appropinquāverint. 5. Iūs iūrandum ducī ā mīlitibus datum est.

(*b*) 1. Aestāte diēs longiōrēs quam noctēs sunt. 2. Paucī amīcī mīlitum ad vīcīnum montem missī erunt. 3. Hostēs cum prīmā aciē fortiter pugnābant. 4. Iūre bellī tēla nōbilī victōrī data sunt. 5. Merīdiē inimīcus ducis aquam nōn habēbit.

---

[1] **Nōbilis** forms its superlative regularly, not like the four special words ending in **-lis,** which have the superlative in **-limus.** See § 277.

314. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Twenty of the horsemen were unfriendly to the general. 2. Because of Caesar's departure the soldiers hesitated to break camp. 3. Can the very small boy write about (concerning) the manner of life of the Helvetians? 4. The slaves will be held by an oath. 5. A few places suitable for a line of battle have been seen.

(*b*) 1. Caesar, a very famous commander, was the personal enemy of that citizen. 2. At the deepest part of the river (there) had been a bridge. 3. Between the neighboring houses are many rather high trees. 4. Long ago the house had been on the right bank of the river. 5. The line of battle was very long and had been seen in the fourth watch.

ORAL EXERCISES

315. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quis rem pūblicam amāvit? 2. Estne is locus idōneus aciēī? 3. Laudāvitne magister puellam propter dīligentiam? 4. Ubi est parva domus? 5. Quid est in superiōre parte urbis?

The Mouse-Tower. II

Erat in mediō Rhēnō turris sacra. Ad turrim prīnceps fūgit. "Hīc certē salvus erō, dum turris integra manet. Turrim diū obtinēre possum. Etiam sex annīs mūrēs flūmen trānāre nōn poterunt." Mox autem portentum videt. Rīpae flūminis incrēdibilī multitūdine mūrium complentur.

Iam mūrēs in aquā sunt et turrim petunt. Prīnceps deōs ōrat, sed deī nōn sunt amīcī; amīcitiam deōrum ob crūdēlitātem āmīserat. Hostēs idōneam poenam[1] sūmunt, prīncipī enim miserō longiōrem vītam nōn permittunt. Mūrēs, ut dictum est, corpus dēvorant.

[1] See the General Vocabulary for the meaning of **poena** with **sūmere**.

Translate:

1. The unfriendly chief fled to a tower near the Rhine. 2. "In that sacred tower I shall be safe," he said. 3. But no (**nūllus**) place will protect a very evil man. 4. The mice hastened to cross the river and to seek the chief. 5. In a short time he paid (**dō, dare**) the penalty of his many wrongs.

THE MOUSE-TOWER.

LESSON XLVIII

FOURTH CONJUGATION

Veni, vidi, vici. — *I came, saw, conquered.*[1]

316. Fourth conjugation verbs end in **-īre** in the present infinitive: **au'diō, audī're, audī'vī, audī'tus,** *hear.* The stems are: present stem **audī-**, perfect stem **audīv-**, participial stem **audīt-**.

(*a*) Learn the indicative active of **audiō**, § 612, noting the peculiarity of the imperfect and the future.

317. VOCABULARY

au'diō, -ī're, -ī'vī, -ī'tus, *hear, hear of.*
fī'niō, -ī're, -ī'vī, -ī'tus, *limit, bound, end, check.*
mū'niō, -ī're, -ī'vī, -ī'tus, *fortify.*
ve'niō, -ī're, vē'nī, ventū'rus, *come.*
circumve'niō, -ī're, -vē'nī, -ven'tus, *come around, surround, cut off.*
inve'niō, -ī're, -vē'nī, -ven'tus, *come upon, find, discover.*
perve'niō, -ī're, -vē'nī, -ventū'rus, *come through, arrive* (used with **ad** and acc.)
ae'grē, adv., *with difficulty.*
mul'tō di'ē, *late in the day.*
pos'terō di'ē, *on the day following.*
plūs pos'se, *to be more powerful.*

318. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

audience invention convene finish

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES ON VERB FORMS

319. *Analyze each form:*

1. Audīs, audīvimus, audīverat, audiēmus. 2. Veniēbat, circumvenit, pervēnit, invēnerimus, veniunt. 3. Mūniēbāmus,

[1] Caesar's famous message to the Roman Senate. Quoted by Suetonius.

mūnīvērunt, mūnīvī, mūniam. 4. Mittet, mūniet, dabit, fīniet, vīsa est. 5. Potuerat, fuerat, vēnerat, dederat, mīserat.

320. *Translate, marking long vowels:*

1. We shall have heard, they will hear, we hear, I heard. 2. He comes, we shall arrive, they had surrounded, you discovered. 3. They will fortify, he has fortified, I shall fortify. 4. We shall seize, we shall surround, we had ended, we shall come. 5. They arrived, we saw, he can, it had been stormed, he finds.

EXERCISES

321. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Decem hōrīs urbem aegrē circumvēnerant. 2. Multō diē lēgātus ad oppida vīcīna vēnit. 3. Rēgēs autem plūs possunt quam cīvēs. 4. Propter altitūdinem flūminis dux ad exercitum pervenīre nōn poterat. 5. Merīdiē nūntius equōs idōneōs equitibus invēnit. 6. Posterō diē equitēs in castra quam vēlōcissimē venient.

(*b*) 1. Sociī prīncipī nōbilī iūs iūrandum quam celerrimē dabunt. 2. Amīcus lēgātī multās rēs audiet. 3. Octō ex oppidīs ā legiōnibus fortibus oppugnāta erant. 4. Nautae ex nāvibus vēnērunt sed in rīpā tēla relīquērunt. 5. Numerō equitum hostēs plūs possunt quam Rōmānī. 6. Impetum hostium ex omnibus partibus [1] castrōrum audīvimus.

322. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. On the next day we heard the signal on the left wing of the army. 2. We shall fortify the camp on all sides. 3. At sunset the departure of the troops was seen with difficulty from the neighboring camp. 4. The messenger announced all things [2] which he had heard to Caesar. 5. The infantry will surround part of the town with great swiftness.

---

[1] *On all sides.*

[2] The neuter plural of the adjective may be used substantively to mean *things.*

(*b*) 1. Courage is often more powerful in a line of battle than weapons. 2. The place was more suitable in all respects (things) for a line of battle than for a camp. 3. Eight of the legions could not arrive in the early part of (**prīmus**) summer. 4. Late in the day Caesar led his forces back into camp. 5. The soldiers of the first legion carried on war more bravely than (those) of the tenth.

PHRASES FROM CAESAR

323. *Commit to memory with the translations:*

1. Ex omnibus partibus. 2. Magnā cum celeritāte. 3. Multō diē. 4. Posterō diē. 5. Omnibus rēbus.

Roman Slaves

When Rome was only a little town, there were almost no slaves there, but, as Rome conquered Italy and then all the lands about the Mediterranean Sea, Roman generals brought back many captives who were sold into slavery. During the period of Rome's greatest extent, probably half the population of Rome consisted of slaves, and one of the greatest fears was an uprising of the slaves.

The houses of the very wealthy sometimes contained more than two hundred slaves. The master and his family had every task, no matter how small, done by slaves. In the large houses slaves were divided into squads of ten. The upper slaves had other slaves to wait upon them. There was often one slave who bought all the supplies, another who distributed the supplies, another who acted as butler, and squads who cleaned the house, waited on table, and worked in the kitchen. There were also personal maids, valets, messengers, children's attendants, litter bearers, and many others, in addition to secretaries, copyists, and readers, and a librarian. A large number of these house slaves were men, not women, as we might expect.

C. Fabricius

Dum Pyrrhus cum Rōmānīs pugnat (*was fighting*), pācem cōnfirmāre studēbat. Lēgātōs igitur ad Rōmānōs mīsit, inter quōs erat Cineās, homo ēloquentissimus. Cineās autem pācem cōnfirmāre poterat neque verbīs neque pecūniā (*bribes*).

Posteā Fabricius lēgātus (*as ambassador*) Rōmānōrum in tabernāculum Pyrrhī vēnit. In mediō colloquiō elephantus quem Pyrrhus post vēla cēlāverat magnum sonitum fēcit (*made*). Fabricius autem, quamquam (*although*) perterritus erat, pācem nōn cōnfirmāvit. Iterum Pyrrhus et Rōmānī bellō contendērunt.

Paulō (*a little*) post medicus Pyrrhī ad Fabricium litterās mīsit in quibus scrīpsit: "Pyrrhum venēnō interficiam (*I will kill*) sī mihi (*to me*) pecūniam dabis." Quamquam (*although*) Pyrrhus et mīlitēs hostēs Rōmānōrum erant, Fabricius magnopere īrātus erat. Litterīs nōn respondit sed eās ad Pyrrhum mīsit. Perfidus medicus, ā servīs Pyrrhī comprehēnsus, interfectus est. Propter hoc (*this*) beneficium Pyrrhus Fabricium magnopere admīrātus est (*admired*) et dīxit: "Facilius esset (*it would be*) sōlem ā cursū āvertere quam tē, praeclārissime Fabricī, ā viā virtūtis."

Translate:

1. The Romans did not wish to establish peace with Pyrrhus. 2. Ambassadors, however, were sent to him by the Roman leader. 3. Later (**Posteā**) Fabricius came to the camp of Pyrrhus concerning public affairs. 4. He feared the large elephant (**elephantus**) which the slaves of Pyrrhus had led into the tent (**tabernāculum**). 5. Neither the elephant nor the evil doctor (**medicus**) led Fabricius from the path of right (**virtūs**).

LESSON XLIX

FOURTH CONJUGATION, PASSIVE

Dum spiro, spero. — While there is life there is hope.[1]

324. According to the rules in Lesson XXV, conjugate **audiō** in the indicative passive. Compare § 612.

325. **Mīlle,** *a (one) thousand,* is an indeclinable adjective. To refer to several thousands, **mīlia** is used. **Mīlia** is a neuter noun declined like the plural of **mare,** and is followed by the genitive of the objects enumerated. *A thousand men,* **mīlle hominēs**; but *eight thousand(s of) men,* **mīlia hominum octō.**

There is no single word in Latin for *mile.* A mile was one thousand paces, **mīlle passūs**; plural, **mīlia passuum.** A Roman *pace* was the distance from where one foot touched the ground to where the same foot touched again, that is, two of our paces or about five feet.

326. VOCABULARY

dē'sum, -es'se, dē'fuī, (with dat.),[2] *be lacking, fail.*
pre'mō, -ere, pres'sī, pres'sus, *press, press hard.*
tra'hō, -ere, trāx'ī, trac'tus, *draw, drag.*
quō, interrogative adv., *where?, whither?*
mī'lia, mī'lium, n., *thousands.*
mīl'le, adj., *a thousand.*
pas'sus, -ūs, m., *pace.*
ma'neō, -ē're, mān'sī, mānsū'rus, *remain.*
lon'gē, adv., *far.*
quam lon'gē, *how far?*
quam di'ū, *how long?*

327. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

tractor millennium remain oppression

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

---

[1] Part of the motto of South Carolina. Literally: *While I breathe, I hope.*

[2] **Frūmentum virō dēest.** *The man lacks grain.* (*Grain is lacking to the man.*)

RULE

328. Duration of Time. Extent of Space. — Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.

They came six miles. **Mīlia passuum sex vēnērunt.**
They fought five hours. **Quīnque hōrās pugnāvērunt.**

EXERCISES

329. *Translate; parse all the nouns:*

(*a*) 1. Quīnque diēs in campīs Germānōrum mānsit. 2. Octō hōrās quam fortissimē mīlitēs pugnāverant sed eīs tēla dēerant. 3. Servōs mille passūs ad flūmen aegrē trāxērunt. 4. Multōs annōs bellum gessērunt. 5. Equitēs mīlia passuum quīnque maximā celeritāte vēnērunt et hostēs pressērunt.

(*b*) 1. Ubi vidēbit flūmen decem pedēs altum? 2. Multae rēs ā prīncipe et ā paucīs mīlitibus audiēbantur. 3. Aestāte ad urbem Rōmam venīre dēbēs. 4. Posterō diē multa mīlia passuum vēnērunt et hostēs circumvēnērunt. 5. Fortissimī peditum multās hōrās in aciē pugnāre poterant.

330. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. We shall remain in the city eight days. 2. They drew the grain many miles across the plains and arrived with difficulty late in the day. 3. The bank of the river was ten feet high. 4. We pressed the rest of the enemy hard for many miles through the territory of the Gauls. 5. The attack was checked by a thousand soldiers on the left wing.

(*b*) 1. The line of battle will be many feet wide and the soldiers will not lack courage. 2. At sunset the general pitched camp which he will break at daybreak. 3. The tenth legion was the bravest of all the legions in all respects. 4. The town had been fortified on all sides as carefully as possible. 5. The chief was friendly to the army, and he was loved by the brave soldiers.

ORAL EXERCISE

331. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quam diū manēbitis? 2. Quam longē oppidum ā monte abest? 3. Quam diū servī labōrābunt? 4. Ubi domus Caesaris erat? 5. Quō contendis multō diē?

Cornēliae Ōrnāmenta

Cornēlia fēmina Rōmāna erat et optima māter. Fīliōs habēbat Tiberium et Gāïum Gracchum. Māter et fīliī Rōmam, maximam urbem, incolēbant.

Cornelia and Her Jewels.

Dīligentiā Cornēliae mātris Graecās litterās atque bonōs mōrēs Gracchī docēbantur.[1]

Campāna fēmina Cornēliae sua ōrnāmenta, quae pulcherrima erant, mōnstrābat et laudābat. Cornēliae dīxit, "Habēsne nūllum ōrnāmentum?"

Cornēlia respondit, "Meī puerī ōrnāmenta sunt mea."

---

[1] **Doceō** takes two accusatives, one of the person taught, the other of the thing. In the passive, the subject is the person taught; the thing taught is put in the accusative.

332. *Translate:*

1. Cornelia, the mother of the Gracchi (**Gracchī, -ōrum,** *m.*), was a very wise woman. 2. She taught her sons Greek literature and good habits. 3. A woman was eager to show her jewels to Cornelia. 4. Cornelia was able to show her sons, Tiberius and Caius. "These are my jewels," said their [1] mother.

---

[1] **Eōrum.**

LESSON L

REVIEW

Vox populi vox dei. — The voice of the people is the voice of God.

333. Derivatives. — *A*. Write all the English words you can that seem to be derived from the following:

cornū	domus	manus	impetus
inveniō	dexter	bene	trahō
fīniō	audiō	veniō	merīdiēs
mille	circumveniō	exitus	nōbilis
vīcīnus	mūniō	premō	maneō

B. With the aid of an unabridged English dictionary, study carefully the form and meaning of the following and compare with the Latin originals:

ambition, science, manual, gladiolus, procrastinate, regiment

C. What is the force of the suffix **-tus** (**-sus**) used to form nouns of the fourth declension from verbs? Explain the derivation of **adventus** meaning "arrival."

334. Form Drill. — 1. Of what genders are the nouns of the first, second, third, fourth, and fifth declensions? Decline one noun of each declension. 2. In masculine and feminine nouns what is always the last letter in the accusative singular? in the accusative plural? Give the terminations of these cases for each declension. 3. What are always the last two letters of the genitive plural? Give the terminations for each declension. 4. What cases are

always alike in neuters? How do these cases always end in the plural? 5. What is peculiar about the declension of **domus**? 6. What is the gender of **manus** and **domus**? 7. What is the superlative of **nōbilis**?

The following words of the fourth and fifth declensions have the same form in English and Latin: **consensus, conspectus, hiatus, impetus, status, series, species.**

335. Syntax Drill. — 1. Write one Latin sentence illustrating the ablative of cause and one illustrating how an ablative is used instead of the genitive denoting the whole of which a part is mentioned. 2. Mention several adjectives that take the dative. 3. Give the prepositions, together with the case each governs, which you have learned for expressing in Latin place *to*, *in*, and *from* which. 4. How is duration of time expressed in Latin? 5. What is a compound noun? Decline one. 6. How do verbs of the fourth conjugation differ from others in the imperfect indicative? 7. How does the future indicative of the third and fourth conjugations differ from that of the first and second? 8. What is the difference in use between **mīlle** and **mīlia**?

336. Phrase Drill. — Give the following phrases in Latin:

1. How long? 2. The first part of the summer. 3. Long and fiercely. 4. At daybreak. 5. As bravely as possible. 6. How far? 7. On the top of the mountain. 8. On the left wing. 9. On all sides. 10. The next day. 11. At sunset. 12. Late in the day. 13. In all respects.

337. EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

1. Omnis impetus hostium ā mīlitibus sustinēbātur. 2. Nē Germānī quidem exercituī Caesaris pārēs esse potuērunt. 3. Pōns erat nōn magnus inter Caesaris atque hostium exercitūs. 4. Iter

ad flūmen facillimum est. 5. Mīlitēs propter celeritātem ad urbem sex hōrīs pervēnerant. 6. Oppidum altissimīs moenibus mūniēmus. 7. Prīmā aestāte equitēs vī et virtūte peditibus antecēdere poterant. 8. Sōlis occāsū nūntius audiēbātur. 9. Maxima oppida mūnientur, minima relinquentur. 10. Equī arborēs ad rīpās flūminis mīlia passuum quīnque trāxerint.

Forum Rōmānum

Forum Rōmānum erat inter Capitōlium et Palātium. Prīmō parvae tabernae utrimque erant. Post multōs annōs cōnsulēs et imperātōrēs templa in Forō aedificāvērunt.

In templum Concordiae senātōrēs conveniēbant. In rōstrīs Cicerō et aliī ōrātōrēs ad populum ōrātiōnēs habēbant (*delivered*). Ubīque erant altae columnae et simulācra deōrum atque statuae virōrum.

Togātī Rōmānī in Forum saepe conveniēbant. Hinc Viā Sacrā legiōnēs Rōmānae ad bellum ēdūcēbantur. Viā Sacrā legiōnēs victōrēs magnīs cum clāmōribus in Forum veniēbant. Nunc in Forō ruīnae undique videntur. Nihil manet nisi pauca vēstīgia antīquae glōriae Rōmānae.

Translate:

1. In the city (of) Rome was the well-known Forum. 2. Many temples were built in the Forum by consuls and generals. 3. From the Forum the Roman generals led (their) legions out to war. 4. After the war they led back the victorious legions through the Forum to the Capitol. 5. In the Forum now the ruins of the ancient buildings remain.

Roman Slaves (*Continued*)

Many of the slaves were better educated and came from better families than their masters. This was particularly true of the Greek slaves. They were often given positions

FORUM RŌMĀNUM.

The upper view looks northwest showing the Palatine Hill in the left middle ground and the Capitoline in the right background.

The lower view is taken from the Capitoline and shows the Palatine on the right with the Colosseum rising in the middle of the background. In the foreground is the arch of Septimius Severus.

of trust in the house and were sometimes allowed to purchase their freedom. Slaves could always be purchased from among the captives obtained in war and from the regular slave dealers who went to foreign countries and brought in slaves for sale. The prices of especially good slaves eventually became very high. There were regular slave markets in Rome in which men, women, and children were sold.

One unfortunate result of slavery, in Rome, as elsewhere, was the fact that, since slaves performed all sorts of manual labor, especially the most menial, free-born men came to look down on all kinds of work done by the hands. The masters, with slaves always at their beck and call, grew to be lazy and selfish.

In handling their slaves Roman masters were usually stern and strict. Sensible masters realized the value of slaves as forms of property, and so did not maim them by punishment. A master who was naturally brutal or had a violent temper might forget such considerations and treat his slaves without mercy. When punishment was inflicted on slaves, it often was extremely severe. This was true especially of the punishment of thieving or runaway slaves.

The life of slaves in city mansions was far easier than the life of slaves in the country; their work was less exacting, and they had opportunities of recreation and of making money with which to buy their freedom that were denied to slaves in the country. City slaves dreaded banishment to farm and country.

LESSON LI

INFINITIVES AND THEIR USES

Vita sine litteris mors est. — Life without letters is death.

338. The formation of infinitives for all conjugations is shown by the table below.

ACTIVE INFINITIVES

Present infinitive = *Present stem* + **-re: portāre.**
Perfect infinitive = *Perfect stem* + **-isse: portāvisse.**
Future infinitive = *Participial stem* + **-ūr** + *endings of* **magnus** + **esse: portātūrus esse.**

PASSIVE INFINITIVES

Present infinitive = *Present stem* + **-rī** (except in the third conjugation, whose Present infinitive is the *Present stem* with **e** changed to **ī**): **portārī, monērī, audīrī,** but **dūcī, capī.**

Perfect infinitive = *Participial stem* + *endings of* **magnus** + **esse: portātus esse.**

Future infinitive = *Participial stem* + **-um** + **īrī: portātum īrī.** This is very seldom used.

Following the above rules write all the infinitives of **dō, moneō, dūcō, audiō, sum, possum.** Compare §§ 609, 610, 611, 612, 614.

339. Uses of the Infinitive. — 1. As Subject and Predicate:

To fight (fighting) is evil. **Pugnāre est malum.**
To labor is to pray. **Labōrāre est ōrāre.**

Note. — The infinitive is treated as though it were a neuter noun; therefore we have the ending **-um** in **malum.**

2. As Object and Complement:[1]

He is preparing to fight. **Parat pugnāre.**
He is able to fight. **Potest pugnāre.**

[1] See § 264.

3. As Object with Subject Accusative:

He orders him to be brought back. **Iubet eum redūcī.**
I command the farmers to fight. **Iubeō agricolās pugnāre.**

4. As Subject, with or without a Subject of the Infinitive, with Impersonal Verbs:

It is necessary for the man to come. **Oportet virum venīre.**
It is necessary to fight. **Oportet pugnāre.**

5. In Indirect Quotation (Statement):

I know { *that he is brave.* **Sciō eum esse fortem.**
him to be brave.

The words or thoughts of a speaker may be stated directly or indirectly. A *direct quotation*, giving the exact words of the speaker, is stated thus: *I know, "He is brave."* **Sciō, "Is est fortis."**

An *indirect quotation*, giving the thought but not the exact words of the speaker, is expressed thus: *I know that he is brave.*

In an indirect quotation in Latin, as in the example (**Sciō eum esse fortem**), notice that there is no Latin word to correspond to the word *that.* The statement is always rendered by an infinitive with its subject in the accusative case. The English generally uses the word *that*, but the Latin *never* uses any of the equivalents by which *that* may be translated into Latin. Remember always to use the infinitive with its subject in the accusative.

Indirect quotations or statements, commonly called "*Indirect Discourse,*" occur most frequently in clauses depending on verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing,* and the like. Such Latin verbs are: **dīcō,** *say;* **putō,** *think;* **sentiō,** *feel, perceive;* **intellegō,** *understand, learn;* **audiō,** *hear;* **crēdō,** *believe;* and **respondeō,** *answer.*

340. VOCABULARY

mors, mor'tis (-ium), f., *death.*
ēnūn'tiō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *disclose, announce.*
prōnūn'tiō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *declare, state.*
sen'tiō, -ī're, sēn'sī, sēn'sus, *feel, think, judge, realize.*
cōnsen'tiō, -ī're, -sēn'sī, -sēnsū'rus, *think together, agree.*
li'cet,[1] **-ē're, li'cuit,** *it is permitted* (with dative of person).
opor'tet,[1] **-ē're, opor'tuit,** impersonal, *it is necessary, it is fitting, ought.*
intel'legō, intelle'gere, intellēx'ī, intellēc'tus, *understand.*
dī'cō, -ere, dīx'ī, dic'tus, *say.*
pu'tō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *think, believe.*
sci'ō, scī're, scī'vī, scī'tus, *know.*

341. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

mortal science diction intelligence sensation

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

RULE

342. Accusative and Infinitive. — The subject of an infinitive is in the accusative case.

He orders him to come. **Iubet eum venīre.**
It is necessary for the man to hasten. **Oportet virum contendere.**
I know that the river is (to be) deep. **Sciō flūmen esse altum.**
He thought that the girls had remained (to have remained). **Putāvit puellās mānsisse.**
I know that the boy will come (to be about to come). **Sciō puerum ventūrum esse.**

EXERCISES ON FORMS

343. *Translate, naming the tense and giving the reason for the mood and ending of each infinitive:*[2]

---

[1] An impersonal verb is used only in the third person singular. Examples: **Virō venīre licet.** *It is permitted (to) the man to come,* or *that the man come;* or, *The man may come.* **Oportet mīlitēs pugnāre.** *It is necessary for soldiers to fight* or *that soldiers fight,* or, *soldiers ought to fight.* Notice that **licet** takes the *dative* of the person (**virō**) usually, but **oportet** takes the *accusative* (**mīlitēs**); in addition both are usually followed by the infinitive.

[2] In translating Latin infinitives in indirect statements, use clear and natural English. Express the meaning of the Latin, not merely the form. In translating the sentence, **Dīcit mīlitēs esse fortēs,** say, "He says the soldiers are brave." Do not use "to be brave."

1. In aciē pugnāre est difficile. 2. Mīlitēs moenia altissima oppugnāre nōn potuērunt. 3. Mātrēs prūdentēs dīligentiam fīliārum fīnīre nōn dēbent. 4. Cum hostibus pugnāre est patriam amāre. 5. In summō monte mīlitibus manēre nōn licēbit. 6. Intellegunt Germānōs venīre. 7. Sciō Caesarem victūrum esse hostēs. 8. Oportet nūntium ēnūntiāre victōriam omnibus mīlitibus.

344. *Translate:*

1. We announce that the ambassador has been sent (to have been sent) to the Gauls. 2. All citizens agree concerning the fame of good deeds, which remains after death. 3. Many men are not permitted (to many men it is not permitted) to see Rome. 4. I feel that the gods loved (to have loved) the good men of Rome. 5. It was necessary to wage war in Gaul many years. 6. It is easy for poets to write about nature and the beautiful moon. 7. He declares that Italy is (to be) the land of great leaders. 8. You know that Rome is (to be) a great city. 9. I think that the fame of Rome will remain (to be about to remain) for many years.

EXERCISES

345. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Nē mortem quidem timēre oportet mīlitem. 2. Amīcīs tuīs domum cōnsulis multō diē vidēre nōn licēbit. 3. Dīcit exercitum Rōmānum in fīnēs Gallōrum dūcī. 4. Omnēs Rōmānī intellegunt Caesarem summum imperātōrem fuisse. 5. Oportuitne Caesarem mūnīre omnia oppida prīmā aestāte?

(*b*) 1. Caesar cum exercitū brevissimō tempore mīlia passuum quīnque venīre potuit. 2. Post merīdiem locus idōneus castrīs vidēbitur. 3. Sentīsne paucōs hominēs timēre mortem? 4. Rōmānī virtūte Gallōs superāvērunt. 5. Mīlitēs paucīs rēbus ducī parēs erant.

346. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. That boy is not permitted to await (his) father's departure. 2. He says many things have often been heard. 3. It

was necessary to give an oath to the king. 4. They began to approach the sea very quickly because they knew the enemy were (to be) near. 5. We declare that the boy is (to be) a skillful horseman, equal to the men in bravery.

(*b*) 1. Late in the day the camp was easily fortified. 2. He will announce that the army can be seen on the top of the mountain by the soldiers of the enemy. 3. The lieutenants thought that Caesar had enlisted (to have enlisted) five legions in Gaul. 4. We know that death is (to be) feared by many. 5. We understand that Caesar was (to have been) the friend of the tenth legion.

ORAL EXERCISE

347. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quid Caesar dīxit? 2. Scīvistīne Caesarem hostēs vīcisse? 3. Quam diū licēbit puerō hīc manēre? 4. Quō veniēbās multō diē? 5. Nōnne potuistī pervenīre quattuor hōrīs? 6. Oportuitne mīlitēs castra circumvenīre? 7. Estne domus cōnsulis pulcherrima?

Obsidiō Trōiae

In Asiā erat urbs antīqua, nōmine Trōia. In eā urbe multī et fortēs cīvēs habitābant, quōrum rēx Priamus appellātus est. Inter Trōiānōs erat Aenēās, cuius nōmen saepe audīvistis.

Contrā Trōiam trāns mare erat terra, nōmine Graecia. Graecī (*the Greeks*) Trōiānōs ōdērunt quod prīnceps (*prince*) Trōiānus, Paris nōmine, Helenam uxōrem rēgis Graecī abstulerat (*had carried off*).

Mox omnēs urbēs Graeciae convēnērunt et multī nāvibus ad Trōiam vectī sunt. Decem annōs Graecī Trōiānīque circum Trōiam pugnāvērunt. Neque Graecī urbem Trōiae expugnāre poterant neque Trōiānī Graecōs ex agrīs suīs expellere poterant.

Tandem equus ligneus summae magnitūdinis, in quō Graecī mīlitēs cēlātī erant, in urbem ā Trōiānīs tractus est. Eā nocte Graecī ex equō vēnērunt et portās urbis aperuērunt. Reliquī Graecī statim in urbem inruunt et Trōiānōs occīdunt.

Et in tōtō bellō et in eō ultimō proeliō Aenēās fortiter pugnāvit. Tandem deus iussit eum effugere itaque Aenēās cum patre et fīliō montēs petīvit. Rōmānī exīstimāvērunt Aenēān fuisse (*that Aeneas was*) conditōrem suae (*their*) gentis.

Translate:

1. Surely you have heard many stories (**fābula**) about the city of Troy (**Trōia**). 2. Troy was a great city which had high fortifications and brave citizens. 3. In ten years the enemy had not been able to conquer the Trojan (**Trōiānus**) soldiers in war. 4. One of the bravest men who were defending the city was Aeneas. 5. After the fall (**occāsus**) of the city he was driven from (his) native land into Italy.

LESSON LII

ŪNUS, DUO, AND *TRĒS*

Facta non verba. — Deeds not words.

348. Learn the declension of **ūnus, duo,** and **trēs,** §§ 597, 598.

349. VOCABULARY

Bel'gae, -ā'rum, m., *Belgians.*
spēs, spe'ī, f., *hope.*
ti'mor, -ō'ris, m., *fear.*
cognōs'cō, -ere, cognō'vī, cog'nitus, *become acquainted with, learn* (Perfect tenses : *know*).
cu'piō, -ere, cupī'vī, cupī'tus, *desire, wish, long for.*
dēpō'nō, -ere, -po'suī, -po'situs, *put down, put aside, give up.*
am'plius, adv., *more.*
qui'dem, adv. (postpositive), *certainly, at least.*
ū'nus, -a, -um, adj., *one.*
du'o, du'ae, du'o, adj., *two.*
trēs, trēs, tri'a, adj., *three.*
exīs'timō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *think, reckon.*
impō'nō, -ere, -po'suī, -po'situs, *put on, place upon.*

Note. — Notice the force of the suffix **-or** used to form a noun from a verb. Nouns formed with this suffix denote action in process or the result of an act; *e.g.,* **timor** comes from **timeō, tim** (the root) + **or** (the suffix), and therefore means the act or result of fearing, or fear.

Words similarly formed include : **clāmor, furor, amor, terror, error, tremor, horror, candor, pallor, favor, vigor.**

Many of these words have been transferred unchanged into English and *-or* is then the English suffix, as in **terror,** *terror.*

350. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

depose trinity recognition cupidity

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

RULE

351. Ablative of Separation. — Separation is expressed by the ablative either with or without a preposition.

He went out of the camp. (**Ex**) **castrīs excessit.**
You will free me from great fear. **Magnō mē metū līberābis.**

EXERCISES

352. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Homō timōre magnō līberārī potest. 2. Dominus optimus quidem servōs miserrimōs timōre mortis līberat. 3. Scīmus equum brevissimō tempore amplius quam mīlia passuum

NĀVĒS RŌMĀNAE.

duo venīre nōn posse. 4. Nāvēs hostium vēlōcissimē nāvigāre nōn poterant. 5. Dux ēnūntiābat Rōmānōs tria mīlia mīlitum paucīs diēbus [1] in nāvēs impositūrōs esse.

(*b*) 1. Hieme quidem Helvētiīs arma dēpōnere licuit. 2. Belgae duo bella cum fīnitimīs gerere studuērunt. 3. Cognōvī altōs montēs vidērī posse. 4. Belgae exīstimant spem maximam esse. 5. Caesar vīdit omnēs Belgās in ūnum locum vēnisse.

353. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. The lieutenant was freed from all fear and put aside his weapons. 2. The Belgians knew that the soldiers could not come

[1] § 245.

more than three miles in one hour. 3. The hope of the two leaders was very great. 4. If our neighbors are able to enlist two legions, the enemy can be conquered. 5. We thought that the auxiliary troops were being (to be) placed upon the ships.

(*b*) 1. All human beings ought to love the gods greatly. 2. The ships were detained for a few hours. 3. A soldier of the Roman army was not very easily conquered. 4. I shall not say more but I have learned many (things) about the army of the Belgians. 5. Many soldiers have been dismissed from the army but we shall not give up hope for at least two days.

ORAL EXERCISE

354. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Erantne duo ex puerīs in agrō? 2. Vīcēruntne Gallōs aestāte? 3. Victōriaene ūnīus lēgātī multae sunt? 4. Num mīlitēs ā dextrō cornū pugnābunt? 5. Ubi Caesar castra pōnet?

The Weather-wise Donkey

Ludovīcus, rēx Gallōrum, hominibus quī astrologī vocantur maximē cōnfīdēbat.[1] Astrologī per stellārum mōtum imbrēs ventōsque praedīcunt. Ōlim rēx, dum in silvīs est, celerī equō longē ante omnēs sociōs praetervectus est. Interim caelum nūbibus complētur, graviterque imber in terram cadit. Rēx igitur, quī parvam casam inter arborēs vīdit, tempestātis (*from the storm*) perfugium petīvit.

Tum ubi rēx graviter astrologōs incūsāvit, agricola cuius casa erat dīxit: "Nūlla tempestās mē[2] incautum excipit, semper enim meus asinus vōce raucā imbrem praedīcit." Rēx rīsit et respondit: "Sī tuus asinus tam bonus astrologus est, meōs astrologōs semper in numerō asinōrum habēbō."

---

[1] **Cōnfīdō** is regularly used with the dative of persons and the ablative or dative of things.

[2] Accusative of the first personal pronoun.

Translate:

1. Ludovicus trusted in astrologers, but sometimes (**interdum**) they are mistaken (**errō, -āre**). 2. Once (**Ōlim**) he left all (his) companions behind and came to a great wood. 3. The weather was bad and so he sought shelter in the hut of a farmer. 4. He chided the astrologers because they had not predicted the rain. 5. The farmer said, "My donkey predicts rain better than your astrologers."

LESSON LIII

THIRD CONJUGATION VERBS IN *-IŌ*

Populus vult decipi. — The people like to be deceived.[1]

355. A few verbs of the third conjugation end in **-iō.** They have the forms of the fourth conjugation wherever the fourth has **i** followed by a vowel.

According to the above rule conjugate **capiō** in the indicative and infinitive, active and passive. Compare § 613.

356. **VOCABULARY**

ca'piō, -ere, cē'pī, cap'tus, *take, seize, capture.*
exci'piō, -ere, -cē'pī, -cep'tus,[2] *take out, take, capture.*
prōfi'ciō, -ere, -fē'cī, -fectū'rus,[2] *accomplish, gain.*
inci'piō, -ere, -cē'pī, -cep'tus,[2] *begin, undertake.*
ia'ciō, -ere, iē'cī, iac'tus, *throw.*
rei'ciō, -ere, -iē'cī, -iec'tus,[2] *throw back, repulse.*
reci'piō, -ere, -cē'pī, -cep'tus,[2] *take back, receive;* (with **sē**), *retreat, withdraw.*
fa'ciō, -ere, fē'cī, fac'tus, *make, do;* (with **iter**), *march.*
cōnfi'ciō, -ere, -fē'cī, -fec'tus,[2] *do thoroughly, accomplish.*
interfi'ciō, -ere, -fē'cī, -fec'tus,[2] *kill.*
hūc, adv., *hither, to this place.*
in'de, adv., *thence, from that place.*

357. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

incipient reject reception factory

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

---

[1] Attributed to Cardinal Carafa.

[2] Note the change in the present and participial stems when the simple verb is compounded.

EXERCISES

358. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Mīles dē quō audīvimus ab hostibus tēla capiēbat. 2. Multī et fortēs virī in bellō interfectī sunt. 3. Inde mīlitēs Caesaris celeriter hūc sē recipient. 4. Mīlitēs ē superiōre locō in castra hostium tēla iēcērunt. 5. Dextrum cornū exercitūs ad moenia urbis tria mīlia passuum maximā celeritāte iter facit.

(*b*) 1. Rēgis frāter aut ūnus ē fīliīs rēgnum excipiet. 2. Prōnūntiāmus oppidum facile capī posse. 3. Belgae propter virtūtem Rōmānōrum hūc sē recipere coepērunt. 4. Inde diēbus decem exercitus in urbem sē recēpit. 5. Rōmānī cōnsentiunt Caesarem bellum gerere coepisse.

359. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Thence the enemy marched two days. 2. Caesar will carry the grain from the large town and will quickly retreat hither. 3. The enemy will be repulsed in a few hours. 4. The Belgae accomplished great things in the war but many were killed. 5. The general who began the attack was captured at daybreak.

(*b*) 1. The Germans were greater than the Romans in size. 2. Many very beautiful things had been made by hand. 3. The citizens think, "Can the cavalry be freed from the danger?" 4. The Romans surpassed the Gauls in courage. 5. The leader says that the legions will (to be about to) conquer.

ORAL EXERCISE

360. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quid manibus facere potes? 2. Perveniēsne hūc tribus diēbus? 3. Fēminaene in perīculō spem dēpōnunt? 4. Nōnne multī virī in proeliō interfectī sunt? 5. Num poētae mīlitibus virtūte parēs sunt?

Librī Sibyllīnī

Haec (*this*) fābula dē librīs Sibyllīnīs ab antīquīs Rōmānīs nārrātur. Ōlim ad Tarquinium Superbum vēnit anus (*old*

Along the Appian Way.

woman) quae sēcum (*with her*) novem librōs ferēbat. "Librōs tibi (*to you*) dabō," inquit, "sī mihi (*to me*) magnam pecūniam dabis." Tarquinius interrogāvit, "Quid est in librīs?" Anus respondit, "Praedicta rērum futūrārum (*destinies*) Rōmānōrum in librīs sunt; in librōs autem intuērī (*to look*) tibi (*to you*) nōn licēbit."

Quamquam librōs habēre cupiēbat, Tarquinius anum dīmīsit quod pretium tantum erat. Sēnsit autem anum esse Sibyllam (*the Sibyl*), vātem magnam.

Mox anus ad Tarquinium iterum revertit. Eō tempore sex librōs ferēbat sed pretium idem erat quod anteā fuerat. Iterum Tarquinius eam dīmīsit.

Tandem trēs librōs ad Tarquinium tulit, atque eī dīxit reliquōs sex librōs exustōs esse. Pretium tamen idem erat. Tum Tarquinius sine morā librōs ēmit et in templō dēposuit. Per multōs annōs, sī cīvitās in magnō perīculō erat, Rōmānōrum prīncipēs eōs librōs semper cōnsuluērunt et bonum cōnsilium accēpērunt.

Prīncipēsne hanc (*this*) fābulam nārrāvērunt ut (*in order that*) cīvēs sua imperāta semper cōnficerent (*might carry out*)?

Translate:

1. The Sibylline (**Sibyllīnus**) books were carried to the king by an old woman. 2. In return for (**Prō**) much money, she desired to give them to the king. 3. He, however, sent her away because the price (**pretium**) of the nine books was large. 4. Finally (**Tandem**) he gave her the money which she desired and received (**accipiō**) the three remaining books. 5. Do you think that the gods gave (*perf. inf.*) help to the Romans through those books?

The Roman Family

Our English word "family" comes from the Latin word **familia,** but the Latin word has a somewhat different mean-

ing, for it usually includes not only the family itself, but the slaves, dependents, and others who make up the household. Therefore it is probably best to translate the word **familia** by "household." In its larger sense **familia** includes several households in which the fathers were sons of the same man, who was therefore the head of the "house," even though his sons were married, had children, and lived in separate homes.

If you were a Roman boy, your father would naturally tell you what you must do in your own home and you would obey him without question, but in serious matters he would consult his father, who was the head of the "house." The head of the Roman "house" possessed absolute authority over all his sons, unmarried daughters, slaves, and other property. He even had the power of life and death, but seldom used it, since a knowledge of this power made his family absolutely obedient to him. In the early days of Rome there are instances where this power was used, particularly for the good of the State. When a Roman girl married, she was no longer subject to her father's authority, but to that of the head of her husband's "house."

The habit of instant and unquestioning obedience, which was demanded of the Roman boy, was further strengthened by the fact that when he grew up and had a family of his own, he must still obey his father in matters that concerned the welfare of the whole family. Since the Romans learned to obey at home, they had a remarkable respect for the laws of the state and obeyed them without question. They thought of the State only as a large group of families for whose good they must always work as for their own family.

LESSON LIV

NUMERALS

Post nubila Phoebus. — "*Every cloud has a silver lining.*"[1]

361. The Numerals from *one* to *ten*, *twenty* and *one hundred*, § 211, are to be reviewed. Those from eleven to twenty-one are:[2]

CARDINALS	ORDINALS
11. ūn′decim	ūnde′cimus
12. duo′decim	duode′cimus
13. tre′decim	ter′tius de′cimus
14. quattuor′decim	quār′tus de′cimus
15. quīn′decim	quīn′tus de′cimus
16. sē′decim	sex′tus de′cimus
17. septen′decim	sep′timus de′cimus
18. duodēvīgin′tī	duodēvīcē′simus
19. ūndēvīgin′tī	ūndēvīcē′simus
20. vīgin′tī	vīcē′simus
21. vīgin′tī ū′nus (ū′nus et vīgin′tī)	vīcē′simus prī′mus
30. trīgin′tā	trīcē′simus

(*a*) The declension of **ūnus, duo,** and **trēs** has been given. The cardinals from **quattuor** to **centum,** *one hundred*, inclusive, are indeclinable. The hundreds (except **centum**) are declined like the plural of **magnus.** The ordinals are declined like **magnus.**

---

[1] Literally: *After clouds, Phoebus* (the sun-god). Compare Longfellow's

"Be still, sad heart, and cease repining,
Behind the clouds is the sun still shining."

[2] Compare § 642. For a more complete list of numerals, see § 602.

362. VOCABULARY

cī'vitās, -ā'tis, f., *group of citizens, state, citizenship.*

cōnsuētū'dō, -inis, f., *habit, custom.*

vul'nus, -eris, n., *wound.*

perfī'ciō, -ere, -fē'cī, -fec'tus, *do thoroughly, finish.*

adi'ciō, -ere, -iē'cī, -iec'tus, *add to, throw to.*

obi'ciō, -ere, -iē'cī, -iec'tus, *throw against, oppose.*

prōi'ciō, -ere, -iē'cī, -iec'tus, *hurl forward.*

magno'pere, adv., *greatly;* comp. **ma'gis**; superlative, **maximē,** *especially.*

ag'men,[1] **-minis,** n., *army* (on the march), *line of march;* **novis'simum ag'men,** *rear;* **prī'mum ag'men,** *van.*

certiō'rem (or **certiō'rēs**) **fa'cere,** *inform.*[2]

me'dius, -a, -um, *middle* (part of); **me'diā noc'te,** *at midnight;* **in me'diō mon'te,** *halfway up the mountain.*

363. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

perfection	invulnerable	timorous	medium
adjective	object	projection	perfect

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES

364. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Mediā nocte Caesaris castra perfecta sunt sed vulnera mīlitum gravia erant. 2. Erat cōnsuētūdō Gallōrum impetum in novissimum agmen facere. 3. Scīvit nautās dē cōnsuētūdine cīvitātis certiōrēs factōs esse. 4. Novī mīlitēs[3] mīlia passuum septem iter facient. 5. Caesar dē hostibus certior factus est et vīcēsimum oppidum sēdecim diēbus capiet.

(*b*) 1. Prīmum agmen sē nōn recipiet sed impetum faciet. 2. Dē victōriā nautārum Caesarem certiōrem fēcerant. 3. Quīntō annō bellī urbem ā duodecimā legiōne capī audīmus. 4. Novissimum agmen in mediō campō vīsum erat. 5. Tertiā diēī hōrā hostēs ad nostram aciem appropinquāre coepērunt et tēla prōicere.

---

[1] Contrast **aciēs,** *army* (in battle array); **exercitus,** *army* (a body of trained soldiers).

[2] Usually followed by **dē** with the ablative (*about*), or indirect statement (*that*).

[3] A **novus mīles** is a "recruit."

365. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. The recruits marched seven miles and saved the state. 2. We have been informed about the death of the leader. 3. At sunset Caesar's infantry hurled forward weapons against the rear of the enemy. 4. The departure of the four legions before night will strengthen the courage of the soldiers. 5. Late in the day the state had been informed concerning the wounds and death of the general.

(*b*) 1. They are finishing fortifications one hundred feet long and eight feet high. 2. It was necessary for the lieutenant to remain six years in camp. 3. A few of the allies opposed their horses to the weapons (dat.) of the eighth legion. 4. The boys were freed from fear but informed (their) father concerning the danger. 5. At midnight we hastened greatly and felt that the march had been accomplished (to have been accomplished) very quickly.

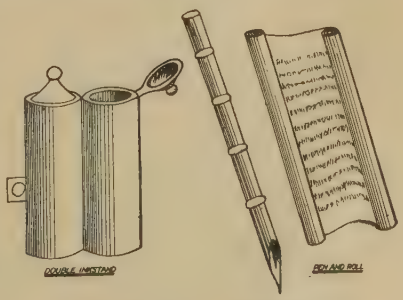
PHRASES FROM CAESAR

366. *Commit to memory, with the translations:*

1. Iter facere. 2. Sē recipere. 3. Mediā nocte. 4. In mediō monte. 5. Certiōrem facere.

A Breach of Discipline

Frederīcus, Germānōrum rēx, quod ab hostibus premēbātur, saevissimā disciplīnā mīlitēs semper continēbat. Saepe nocte sōlus per castra ambulābat. Tandem, dum castra, ut cōnsuētūdō erat, perlūstrat, lūcem in tabernāculō fīnitimō vīdit. Rēx igitur, quī īrā commovēbātur, quod ignem in castrīs mīlitēs habēre vetuerat, silenter tabernāculum intrāvit.



Roman Writing Materials.

Mīles litterās longās uxōrī scrībēbat. Dum multa verba dē perīculīs bellī, suā salūte, amōre magnō uxōris scrībit, subitō rēgem videt. Tum rēx dīxit, "Litterās ad fīnem perscrībere licet. In fīne tamen haec (*these*) verba pōnēs: 'Valē,[1] Ō cārissima, crās enim, quod imperātōris praecepta male servāvī, vīvus nōn erō.'"

Translate:

1. It was necessary to restrain the soldiers by very severe discipline. 2. At night the soldiers could[2] not have a light in camp. 3. But a soldier cannot write letters to (his) wife without a light. 4. The king found a soldier who was writing letters. 5. He ordered him to write at the end, "Tomorrow I shall not be alive."

---

[1] *Farewell*, imperative of **valeō**.
[2] Use **licet**. See note to § 340.

LESSON LV

PREPOSITIONS AND COMPOUNDS

Pro aris et focis. — *For home and fireside.*[1]

367. The Ablative is used with

ā or **ab, dē,**
cum, ex or **ē,**
sine, prō, prae.

368. The accusative is used with about thirty prepositions; the most common are **ad, ante, apud, circum, contrā, inter, per, trāns.**

(*a*) Two prepositions, **in** and **sub,** govern both *accusative* and *ablative;* with the accusative they usually denote motion *toward* a place, with the ablative, rest *in* (*under*) a place.

369. VOCABULARY

ab'dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *put away, hide.*
red'dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *give back, return.*
cōnsis'tō, -ere, -stitī, -stitū'rus, *stand, stop, halt.*
dēsis'tō, -ere, -stitī, -stitū'rus, *leave off, cease.*
stō, stā're, ste'tī, stātū'rus, *stand.*
osten'dō, -ere, -ten'dī, -ten'tus, *point out, show.*
cir'cum, prep. with acc., *around, about.*
con'trā, prep. with acc., *against.*
sa'tis, adv., *enough, sufficient(ly);* as noun, *enough* (with gen.).
prō, prep. with abl., *before.*
un'de, adv., *whence?*

370. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

ostentation	contradict	satisfaction	circumscribe
consistent	predict	desist	station

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

[1] Literally: *For altars and hearths.*

EXERCISES

371. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Multī virī prō patriā contrā hostēs pugnant et ā proeliō nōn dēsistunt. 2. Animālia pulchra sub arbore prō oppidō saepissimē stetērunt. 3. Legiōnēs mīlia passuum tria circum urbem iter fēcērunt et tum cōnstitērunt. 4. Puer sorōrī librōs quōs abdiderat reddidit. 5. Satis frūmentī erat in īnsulā quam nauta eīs mōnstrāvit.

(*b*) 1. Caesar dē virtūte novōrum mīlitum certior factus est. 2. Castra hostium sine perīculō capī nōn possunt. 3. Posterō diē Caesaris equitēs cum Helvētiīs pugnāvērunt et victī sunt. 4. Unde vēnērunt equitēs qui sub arboribus cōnstiterant et quō iter faciēbant? 5. Urbs diū et ācriter oppugnāta est sed capī nōn potuit.

372. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. The enemy will kill a few of those whom they have captured. 2. At midnight the leader who had sufficient (of) courage stood in the van. 3. Fathers always work greatly for their sons and daughters. 4. The man halted at the foot of the mountain and received a very severe wound. 5. Against the enemy they fought bravely and finished the task in the presence of (their) leader.

(*b*) 1. We think that water is (to be) lacking for the horses. 2. The swift horseman had been informed of the danger by the voice of his leader. 3. In the summer the days are long and the nights very short. 4. The army had ceased to march further because of severe wounds. 5. The van will stop before the town three miles across the river.

PHRASES FROM CAESAR

373. *Commit to memory, with the translations:*

1. Sub monte. 2. Satis frūmentī. 3. Prīmum agmen. 4. Novissimum agmen. 5. Novī mīlitēs.

Orgetorīx

Dux apud Helvētiōs fuit Orgetorīx. Helvētiōs ex fīnibus suīs[1] cum omnibus cōpiīs inter montēs, trāns flūmen, per prōvinciam dūcēbat. Puer Rōmānus sub monte stābat et Helvētiōs prō eōrum castrīs vīdit. Sine morā in oppidum properāvit et dīxit, "Helvētiī veniunt."

In oppidō virī omnēs prō patriā pugnāre cupiunt. Exercitum parāvērunt et multīs cum cōpiīs ex oppidō in hostēs contendērunt. Exercitus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs pugnāvit et hostēs circum oppidum superāvit. Helvētiī in suīs fīnibus manēbant et contrā Rōmānōs pugnāre dēstitērunt.

Translate:

1. Orgetorix was the leader of the Helvetians. 2. He desired to lead them from their territories to better fields. 3. They were seen by a Roman boy who reported this in the town. 4. Quickly the Romans prepared their forces and departed from the town. 5. In a few hours the Helvetians were defeated and retreated to their own[1] territories finally (**tandem**).

---

[1] See **Suus, -a, -um** in the General Vocabulary.

LESSON LVI

REVIEW

Nemo me impune lacessit. — No one molests me unhurt.[1]

374. Derivatives. — *A.* Write all the English words you can which seem to be derived from the following:

sentiō	perficiō	duo	mors
obiciō	stō	iaciō	dīcō
dēpōnō	centum	capiō	faciō
ostendō			

B. With the aid of an unabridged English dictionary study carefully the form and meaning of the following and compare them with the Latin originals:

infinitive	temperance	governor
faction	soprano	pilgrim
dilapidated		

C. What force has the suffix **-or** in forming a verbal noun in Latin? Explain the derivation of the noun **clāmor.** (Consult the General Vocabulary for meaning of **clāmō.**)

375. Form Drill. — 1. Give the rules for the formation of active infinitives. Of passive infinitives. 2. Give the infinitives, active and passive, of **dō, moveō, mittō, capiō, veniō.** 3. Which infinitive of the third conjugation is peculiar in its form? 4. How are **-iō** verbs of the third conjugation conjugated? 5. How can you tell whether

[1] The motto of Scotland, referring to the thistle.

an **-iō** verb is of the third or of the fourth conjugation? 6. Count to **trīgintā** in Latin. 7. Decline **ūnus, duo, trēs, agmen, iūs.**

376. Word Drill. — 1. Distinguish between the meanings of **exercitus, agmen,** and **aciēs.** 2. Give the nominative, the genitive, and the gender of the Latin words for the following:

wound (*noun*)	wing	hand	death
custom	departure	attack (*noun*)	hope
state	affair	house	line of march

3. Give the principal parts and the meanings of the following verbs:

prōnūntiō	dēpōnō	prōiciō	cōnsistō
cōnsentiō	excipiō	abdō	dēsistō
cupiō	prōficiō	reddō	ostendō
cognōscō			

4. Give the meaning of each of the following:

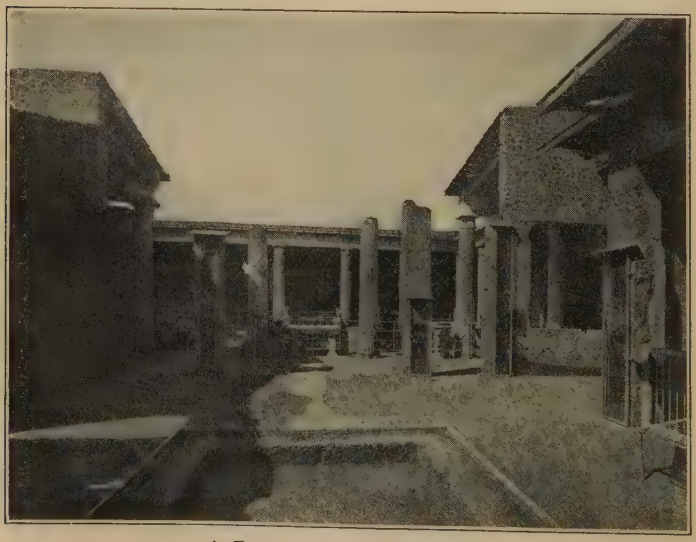
amplius	quidem	hūc
inde	unde	satis

377. Syntax Drill. — 1. Name four uses of the infinitive and illustrate each by a Latin sentence. 2. Name the prepositions that always govern the ablative case. 3. Name six prepositions that govern the accusative case. 4. What two prepositions govern both accusative and ablative? 5. Illustrate by an English sentence the ablative of separation. 6. Illustrate by an English sentence the ablative of specification. 7. What is meant when a verb is said to be "impersonal"? Name two impersonal verbs.

378. Composition. — State in Latin five facts that you have heard to-day. (Have the class translate each statement.)

EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

379. 1. Gladiīs in hostēs impetum faciēmus. 2. Est cōnsuētūdō exercitūs ad flūmen cōnsistere. 3. Multās noctēs exercitus iter fēcit. 4. Exīstimāvit bellum duodecim annōs gestum esse. 5. Caesar novōs mīlitēs in novissimō agmine posuit. 6. Mille virī ob timōrem hostium arma dēpōnere coepērunt. 7. Sine lēgibus optimīs cīvitās stāre nōn potest. 8. Putāmus mīlitēs mediā nocte in oppidum missōs esse. 9. Negōtium satis bene apud patrem perficiet. 10. Inde breviōre itinere per montēs difficilī viā mīlitēs dūxit. 11. Exercitus per fīnēs Belgārum circum montem iter fēcit et contrā cōpiās hostium pugnāvit. 12. Sē recipiet unde vēnit, sī satis frūmentī habēbit.



A Roman House in Pompeii.

Nāsīca et Ennius

Nāsīca Ennī poētae amīcus erat. Nāsīca ad Ennium vēnit et ab iānuā eum quaesīvit. Servus dīxit, "Ennius domī[1] nōn est." Ennius domī erat et id Nāsīca nōvit; nōn tamen respondit, sed domum[2] revertit.

Posteā ad Nāsīcam vēnit Ennius. Huic (*to him*) ipse[3] Nāsīca dīxit, "Nōn sum domī." Tum Ennius dīxit, "Nōnne cognōvī vōcem tuam?" Nāsīca respondit, "Homō es impudēns; ego servō tuō crēdidī[4]: tū nōn crēdis mihi."[5]

Translate:

1. The Romans had one bad custom (**mōs, mōris,** *m.*) similar to ours. 2. The slaves did not always speak the truth (**vēra,** literally, true things). 3. Nasica once (**ōlim**) heard from a slave of Ennius, "My master is not here (**hīc**)." 4. But you know that Ennius was there. 5. Is it fitting to blame the slave or the master?

---

[1] *At home.* [2] *Home.* [3] *Himself,* nominative.
[4] **Crēdō** governs the dative. [5] *Me,* dative of **ego.**

LESSON LVII

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

Quis custodiet ipsos custodes? — Who will watch the watchmen themselves?[1]

380. The interrogative pronoun[2] is the substantive, **quis,** *who?* The interrogative adjective is **quī,** *what?*

Quis, *who?*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL		
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	**quis**	**quid**	**quī**	**quae**	**quae**
Gen.	**cu'ius**	**cu'ius**	**quō'rum**	**quā'rum**	**quō'rum**
Dat.	**cui**	**cui**	**qui'bus**	**qui'bus**	**qui'bus**
Acc.	**quem**	**quid**	**quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Abl.	**quō**	**quō**	**qui'bus**	**qui'bus**	**qui'bus**

(*a*) The interrogative adjective **quī** is declined like the relative pronoun **quī.** See § 217.

381. VOCABULARY

ae'tās, -ā'tis, f., *age.*
laus, lau'dis, f., *praise, renown.*
ōrā'tiō, -ō'nis, f., *speech, oration.*
sagit'ta, -ae, f., *arrow.*
to'ga, -ae, f., *toga* (a Roman outer garment).
coni'ciō, -ere, -iē'cī, -iec'tus, *hurl together, throw.*
necessā'rius, -a, -um, *necessary.*
propin'quus, -a, -um, *near by;* as a noun, *kinsman.*
impel'lō, -ere, im'pulī, -pul'sus, *urge on, incite.*
expō'nō, -ere, -po'suī, -po'situs, *put forth, set forth, explain.*
prōpō'nō, -ere, -po'suī, -po'situs, *put before, set forth.*
quis, quid, interrogative pronoun, *who? what?*
quī, quae, quod, interrogative adjective, *what?*

[1] Juvenal.

[2] Compare § 628.

Note. — Notice the force of the suffix **-tiō** (sometimes written **-siō**). It is often used to form a noun from a verb.

Ōrātiō comes from the verb **ōrō** (*to speak*) + the suffix **-tiō** (action in process or the result of an act). Therefore **ōrātiō** means the act or the result of speaking, *i.e.*, a speech.

Give the derivation of **dēfēnsiō.**

382. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

laudable	conjecture	exponent	proposition
oratory	impulsive	exposition	propinquity

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES

383. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Quis coniēcit sagittās ē superiōre locō? 2. Quam ōrātiōnem meī propinquī, Mārce, posterō diē audient? 3. Quibus lēgātīs cōnsilia ā Caesare prōposita erant? 4. Cōnsuētūdō Rōmānōrum togam in viīs et in Forō gerere fuit. 5. Puerī aetās maior est quam sorōris.

(*b*) 1. Quā in urbe sunt rēs multae et pulcherrimae? 2. Cui data est laus ab imperātōre? 3. Propter altitūdinem flūminis Belgae equōs impellere dubitābant. 4. Quae bella in Galliā multōs annōs gerēbantur? 5. Multō diē nūntiī Caesarī exposuērunt montem ā mīlitibus Rōmānīs aegrē captum esse.

384. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. What messenger will explain the manner of attack to the cavalry? 2. By whom were the arrows hidden? 3. How far can the (marching) column march? 4. What nearby town are the troops eager to surround? 5. Through whose territory did the enemy march?

(*b*) 1. Near what river will the cavalry and infantry halt? 2. To what foreigners will citizenship be given by the republic? Will they then wear the toga? 3. At the foot of what mountains did the soldiers begin to retreat? 4. In the Forum a Roman citizen ought to wear the toga, which has great renown. 5. The lieutenant urged on the allies and put them before the line of battle.

ORAL EXERCISES

385. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quid fēcerās? 2. Quae mīlitēs coniēcērunt? 3. Quem in urbe vīdistī? 4. Quō in locō eris posterō diē? 5. Cui expōnēs ōrātiōnem?

MARS.

The Roman God of War was said to be the father of Romulus and Remus.

THE BEGINNINGS OF ROME

Proca, rēx Albānōrum, Numitōrem et Amūlium fīliōs habuit. Numitōrī, quī frātrī aetāte antecessit, rēgnum relīquit; sed Amūlius frātrem expulit et rēgnāvit. Posteā Rhēam Silviam, Numitōris fīliam, Vestae sacerdōtem[1] fēcit, quae tamen geminōs fīliōs Rōmulum et Remum ēdidit.

Ubi Amūlius rem cognōvit, Rhēam Silviam in vincula coniēcit, et puerōs in Tiberim abiēcit, quī tum forte super rīpās erat effūsus.[2] Sed brevī tempore aqua puerōs in siccō relīquit. Tum lupa, ut fāma est, ad vāgītum vēnit, puerōs linguā lam-

[1] Priestesses of Vesta, called "Vestal Virgins," were forbidden to marry.
[2] *I.e., had overflowed its banks.*

bit, mātrem sē gessit.[1] Ubi Faustulus, pāstor rēgis, rem vīdit, puerōs ad casam portāvit et coniugī Accae Lārentiae dedit.

Translate:

1. Two boys, Romulus and Remus, were sons of Rhea Silvia. 2. Numitor was driven from the kingdom by Amulius. 3. Amulius, a bad king, was eager to kill the boys. 4. He threw them into the river but a wolf (**lupa**) saved them. 5. Then a shepherd found the boys and carried them to (his) farmhouse.

---

[1] **sē gessit**, *conducted herself as, acted as.*

LESSON LVIII

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

Veritas vos liberabit. — The truth shall make you free.[1]

386. The personal pronouns [2] are **ego** for the first person and **tū** for the second. The personal pronoun of the third person is supplied by the demonstrative **is**. See § 605, (*e*).

	FIRST PERSON		SECOND PERSON	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	**e'go**, *I.*	**nōs**, *we.*	**tū**, *you.*	**vōs**, *you.*
Gen.	**me'ī**	**nos'trum** **nos'trī**	**tu'ī**	**ves'trum** **ves'trī**
Dat.	**mi'hi**	**nō'bīs**	**ti'bi**	**vō'bīs**
Acc.	**mē**	**nōs**	**tē**	**vōs**
Abl.	**mē**	**nō'bīs**	**tē**	**vō'bīs**

387. The reflexive pronouns [3] refer to the subject of the sentence or of the clause in which they stand. The reflexives of the first and second persons are supplied from the declension of **ego** and **tū**; **meī**, *of myself*, **tuī**, *of yourself*, and so on.

Reflexive of the Third Person

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Gen.	**su'ī**	**su'ī**
Dat.	**si'bi**	**si'bi**
Acc.	**sē** or **sē'sē**	**sē** or **sē'sē**
Abl.	**sē** or **sē'sē**	**sē** or **sē'sē**

The reflexive of the third person serves for all genders and for both numbers. Thus, **suī** may mean *of himself, of herself, of itself, of themselves.*

[1] St. Jerome's Bible. Motto of The Johns Hopkins University.
[2] Compare § 626.
[3] Compare § 631.

388. VOCABULARY

ge'nus, -eris, n., *kind, class.*
clau'dō, -ere, clau'sī, clau'sus, *shut, close.*
do'ceō, -ē're, -uī, doc'tus, *teach, show* (with two accusatives).
ex'struō, -ere, -strūx'ī, -strūc'tus, *pile up, erect.*
renūn'tiō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *announce, proclaim.*
e'ō, adv., *thither, to that place, there.*
eō'dem, adv., *to the same place.*
vehemen'ter, adv., *strongly, violently.*
e'go, me'ī, *I.*
tū, tu'ī, *you.*
me'ī, *of myself.*
tu'ī, *of yourself.*
su'ī, *of himself,* etc.

389. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

egotism	suicide	respond	vision
generation	docile	renounce	vehement

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISE ON FORMS

390. *Translate, distinguishing between the pronouns:*

(*a*) 1. Tū mē vidēs. 2. Ego tē videō. 3. Vōs nōbīscum [1] veniētis. 4. Puella sē amat. 5. Vōs nōbīs librōs dedistis.

(*b*) 1. We saw you. 2. You praised us. 3. We came with you. 4. You showed the arrows to me. 5. The boys praised themselves.

EXERCISES

391. *Translate, telling to which class each of the pronouns belongs:*

(*a*) 1. Puellae inter sē [2] laudant. 2. Ad vōs necessāria tēla eōdem tempore mittēmus. 3. Tūne mē docēbis? 4. Virī optimī sē nōn laudant. 5. Quō in locō nōbīscum stābis?

---

[1] The preposition **cum** is always appended to the ablative of personal and reflexive pronouns; it is usually appended to the ablative of relative and interrogative pronouns.

[2] *One another.*

(*b*) 1. Vehementer nōbīs dīxit; tum rēs reddere coepimus quae abditae erant. 2. Ante prīmam lūcem hostēs eō sē recēpērunt. 3. Sine timōre omnia cōnsilia tibi prōposuerit. 4. Ego[1] et tū prīmā aestāte domum claudēmus. 5. Caesarī renūntiant agrōs Helvētiōrum mīlia passuum duo ā flūmine abesse.

392. *Translate, expressing all the pronouns:*

(*a*) 1. The general responds that he will not come there. 2. Near what city did the Belgians erect a bridge? 3. What kind of animals did the sailors find there? 4. By whom were you taught? 5. He ought to arrive there with you.

(*b*) 1. The soldiers praise one another and do not fight with each other (themselves).[2] 2. A bridge many feet in width was erected here. 3. We boys are more discreet than you girls. 4. It was necessary to come to the same place within three hours. 5. The man about whose life we have heard said many (things) about the kind of men on the island.

ORAL EXERCISES

393. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Cūr tū melior es quam ego? 2. Tūne tē saepe laudās? 3. Quis tē docēbat? 4. Quod genus librōrum ā magistrō laudātum est? 5. Num veniet eō tēcum?

Romulus and Remus

Rōmulus et Remus ā Faustulō et Accā Lārentiā ēducābantur. Mox omnēs pāstōrēs vī superābant, et latrōnēs ā rapīnā pecorum arcēre coepērunt. Latrōnēs igitur malum cōnsilium cēpērunt[3] et puerōs aut ē terrā expellere aut interficere cupīvērunt.

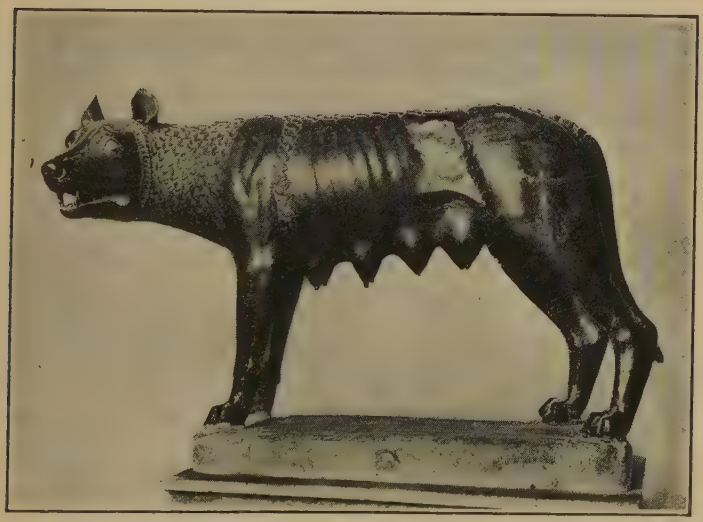
---

[1] Notice the order of personal pronouns in Latin: first, second, third. The personal pronoun as subject is expressed only when there is emphasis or contrast.

[2] **Inter sē.**

[3] *Formed a plan.*

Remus captus est, sed Rōmulus ē perīculō praesentī sē ēripuit. Tum Faustulus necessāriā rē coāctus[1] Rōmulō dīxit Numitōrem eius avum esse. Rōmulus statim cum pāstōribus armātīs ad avum properāvit.



THE FAMOUS CAPITOLINE WOLF.

This statue was erected by the Romans to the animal which was said to have nursed Romulus and Remus till Faustulus found them.

394. *Translate:*

1. With the shepherd the boys remained many years. 2. Within a few years they were youths (**iuvenēs**) of very great strength. 3. They gave aid to the shepherd and killed his[2] enemies. 4. The enemies of the shepherd seized Remus but Romulus saved him from danger. 5. Then it was necessary to drive Amulius from the kingdom.

---

[1] **necessāriā rē coāctus,** *compelled by necessity.* [2] **Eius.**

LESSON LIX

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

In lumine Tuo videbimus lumen.—In Thy light we shall see light.[1]

395. The possessive adjectives are the adjective forms of the personal and reflexive pronouns.

me'us, -a, -um,[2] *my, mine.*
nos'ter, -tra, -trum, *our, ours.*
tu'us, -a, -um, *your, yours* (belonging to one person).
ves'ter, -tra, -trum, *your, yours* (belonging to more than one).
su'us, -a, -um, *his, her, hers, its, their, theirs.*

The possessive adjectives are all declined like adjectives of the first and second declensions, and they agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

396. VOCABULARY

condi'ciō, -ō'nis, f., *condition, terms.*
dēfi'ciō, -ere, -fē'cī, -fectū'rus, *fail, desert* (with **ā** or **ab** and the abl.).
submit'tō, -ere, -mī'sī, -mis'sus, *send under, send to the assistance of, yield* (with dat.).
succē'dō, -ere, -ces'sī, -cessū'rus, *approach; succeed, take the place of* (with dat.).
nam, conj., *for.*
Brū'tus, -ī, m., *Brutus.*
su'us, -a, -um, *his, her, their.*[3]
praefi'ciō,[4] **-ere, -fē'cī, -fec'tus,** *place over* or *in command of* (with acc. and dat.).
praepō'nō,[4] **-ere, -po'suī, -po'situs,** *put over, place in command of* (with acc. and dat.).
prae'stō, -ā're, -stitī, -stitū'rus, *excel, surpass* (with dat.).
prae'sum, -es'se, -fuī, *have command of, be at the head of* (with dat.).
super'sum, -es'se, -fuī, *be left over, survive* (with dat.).

---

[1] The motto of Columbia University.
[2] Voc. sing. masc. **mī.**
[3] **Suus** should never be used in the nominative case.
[4] In the passive the construction is as follows. *He was placed in charge of the camp.* **Castrīs** (dative) **praefectus (praepositus) est.**

Note. — The dative is used with many, but not all, verbs compounded with the prepositions **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super,** and sometimes **circum.** Because of the many exceptions, a vocabulary is a much better guide than the general rule.

Brutus was in command of the ships. **Brūtus nāvibus praeerat.**

(*a*) But if the verb which forms part of the compound is transitive, it may take a direct object in the accusative. This may be either in addition to the dative taken by the compound as a whole, or without it.

He placed Brutus in command of the ships. **Brūtum nāvibus praeposuit.**

Brutus sent the ships ahead. **Brūtus nāvēs praemīsit.**

397. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

preposition condition deficient submission succession

Define, and use each word in an English sentence.

398. Gender of Possessive Adjectives. — The gender of a possessive adjective depends not upon the gender of the owner or owners, but upon the gender of the word it modifies.

Marcus loves his mother. **Mārcus mātrem suam amat.**
Julia loves her mother. **Iūlia mātrem suam amat.**
Julia loves her father. **Iūlia patrem suum amat.**

EXERCISES

399. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Caesar exercituī praefuit, nam ad castra hostium succēdēbat. 2. Rōmānī omnibus virtūte praestitērunt. 3. Nāvibus longīs [1] Brūtum praefēcit. 4. Laudābiminī, puerī,[2] et ā mātre vestrā et ā magistrō vestrō. 5. Deī amīcī nostrī sunt et rēbus hominum praesunt.

(*b*) 1. Imperātor castrīs quae ad rīpam flūminis posita erant Mārcum praefēcit. 2. Is novus mīles in proeliō ā rē pūblicā

---

[1] **Nāvēs longae,** *warships.*

[2] The vocative, the case of address, has the same form as the nominative except in the singular of nouns of the second declension ending in **-us,** where the vocative ends in **-e.**

dēfēcit. 3. Nostrī[1] mīlitibus ā dextrō cornū auxilia celerius submīserant quam vestrī. 4. Centum ex equitibus superfuērunt neque condiciōnēs pācis audīvērunt. 5. Rēx ex urbe expulsus est et fīlius rēgnō successit.

400. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. I am in command of you (*pl.*). 2. The girl excels her brother in courage. 3. Who made the war-ships? 4. The general approached the town and placed a lieutenant in command of the forces. 5. They wished to drive the ambassadors from the town, for the conditions of peace were most unjust.

(*b*) 1. It was necessary to send troops to the assistance of our cavalry. 2. Our skilled lieutenant had been placed in charge of the fortifications. 3. We have informed Caesar that our army will make an attack on the enemy at daybreak. 4. Why will our allies desert us in the middle of the battle? 5. My sister and your brother are friends of the man who has command of the infantry.

ORAL EXERCISE

401. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quis legiōnī praeerat? 2. Tūne exercituī Brūtum praepōnēs? 3. Dubitāvitne Caesar cīvibus frūmentum submittere? 4. Suntne tuī amīcī meliōrēs quam meī? 5. Nōnne nostrī vōbīs virtūte praestant?

Ānserēs Sacrī

Postquam (*After*, conj.) Gallī urbem Rōmam expugnāvērunt, tōtam urbem praeter montem Capitōlīnum dēlēvērunt. Eum (*it*) expugnāre nōn poterant quod mōns altus erat et moenia magna et valida erant. In eō monte erant mīlitēs et cīvēs Rōmānī quī supererant (*were left*). Circum Capitōlium Gallī statiōnēs disposuerant et mortem Rōmānōrum

[1] The possessive is often used substantively; as, **nostrī**, *our men.*

exspectābant. Sed Rōmānīs neque cibus (*food*) neque aqua dēfuit, itaque Gallōs dērīsērunt. Pānem etiam ad Gallōs dēiēcērunt.

Quādam (*a certain*) autem nocte ūnus ex custōdibus Gallicīs vīdit nūntium Rōmānum nūdīs pedibus dēscendentem (*climbing down*) dē Capitōliō. Statim custōs ad ducem Gallicum properāvit et nūntiāvit quid vīdisset (*had seen*).

Proximā nocte, dum lūna obscūra est (*was*), Gallī montem Capitōlīnum magnō silentiō ascendere coepērunt, sequentēs (*following*) sēmitam quā (*by which*) nūntius Rōmānus dēscenderat. Ānserēs autem sacrī excitātī (*aroused*), cum Gallī prope ad summum montem appropinquant, magnum strepitum (*cackling*) ēmittunt. Mīles Rōmānus, Mānlius nōmine, ē somnō excitātus (*aroused*), prīmum Gallum summum mūrum ascendentem (*climbing*) petit (*attacks*) et eum dē mūrō dēicit.

Hic (*this*) Gallus recidēns (*falling backward*) in Gallōs sequentēs (*following*) incidit et eī (*they*) omnēs reliquōs Gallōs ad īmum (*the bottom of*) montem dēiēcērunt (*dashed down;* from **dēiciō**).

Tālī modō Capitōlium ā Mānliō, vīrō fortī, et strepitū ānserum sacrōrum servātum est. Posteā Mānlius "Capitōlīnus" appellātus est.

Translate:

1. In many wars we have heard stories (**fābula**) about the aid which was given by animals. 2. The Gauls had surrounded the mountain but could not overcome the Romans there. 3. A messenger descended from the mountain by a narrow path (**sēmita**). 4. On the following night the Gauls came almost to the top of the mountain. 5. Then the geese (**ānserēs**) gave the alarm (**strepitus**) and the Gauls were thrown back by Manlius.

The Roman Family (*Continued*)

Nine days after a boy was born into a Roman home (eight days in the case of a girl), a great celebration was held. Kinsmen, clients, friends, and the family slaves gathered in the home and the nurse brought the baby into the room and laid it at the feet of the father. If he took the baby up in his arms, there was great joy, for by the act of lifting it up he acknowledged it as a member of the family. Although it seems horrible to us, he sometimes did not take up the baby. In that case slaves would take it away to be left by the roadside or "exposed," as the Romans expressed it. Probably the baby would die unless someone took it in and brought it up. Weak or sickly babies were more liable to be "exposed" than strong ones, and girls were oftener exposed than boys. "Exposure" was not resorted to so frequently, however, when Rome became more civilized. The wait of eight or nine days was prescribed in order to be reasonably sure that the baby would live, as many died just after birth.

On this "name-day" of the baby, the father pronounced before all the witnesses the name he had selected. Then he placed about the baby's neck a **bulla,** or locket, often of gold, which held a charm against witchcraft and the evil-eye. This locket was round or heart-shaped and made of two pieces of metal which fitted tightly together. The boy wore this **bulla** until he became of age and the girl until she was married. If the family was poor, the **bulla** was made of leather instead of a precious metal.

When the father gave the baby a name, he was very much limited in his choice. There were only eighteen "praenomens" or first names, like Marcus, Gaïus, Lucius. Each family had certain names which it used almost entirely, and

the eldest son was usually named for his father. The choice of girls' names was even more limited than that of boys.

The Roman name consists of three parts, the **praenōmen** or given name, like John, the **nōmen** or clan name, and the **cognōmen** or name which marked the particular family of the clan or **gēns** to which one belonged. **Mārcus Tullius Cicerō** illustrates this, Marcus being the given name, Tullius showing the "gens" or clan, and Cicero showing the particular family of the clan. Sometimes the ordinal numerals, Sextus, Septimus, etc., were used as given names. These names originally denoted the order of birth of the boys in the family.

At the age of sixteen the Roman boy laid aside his **toga praetexta** or the crimson-bordered toga of childhood and put on the white **toga virīlis** or the toga of manhood. He also took off his **bulla** at this time. There was no stated age at which the Roman girl reached her majority, probably because she married so early, and therefore there was no great celebration, as in the case of the boy. No other ancient people, however, treated women with as much respect or allowed them as many privileges as the Romans.

LESSON LX

REVIEW

Aquīla non capit muscas. — The eagle does not catch flies.[1]

402. Derivatives. — *A.* Write all the English words you can which seem to be derived from the following:

laus	doceō	succēdō	praeficiō
impellō	dēficiō	sūmō	ego
expōnō	submittō	audeō	praepōnō
prōpōnō			

B. With the aid of an unabridged English dictionary study carefully the form and meaning of the following and compare with the Latin originals:

gentle	jovial	doubt
minister	curriculum	rostrum

C. Mention *three* Latin suffixes used to form nouns from verbs and denoting action in process or the result of an act.

403. Form Drill. — 1. How does the reflexive pronoun differ from the personal? 2. How does the interrogative pronoun differ from the relative in declension? 3. Give the Latin for *Who are you? What man is in the city?* 4. Decline **quī, ego, suus, noster, suī, quis.** 5. When do we use **tuus** and when **vester?** 6. Give the meaning and the nominative, genitive, and gender or the principal parts of the following:

aetās	sagitta	impellō
coniciō	genus	claudō
condiciō	praeficiō	praepōnō

[1] Roman proverb.

404. Syntax Drill. — 1. Mention at least *four* Latin compound verbs with which the dative is used. 2. In what does a relative pronoun agree with its antecedent?

THE DEATH OF AMULIUS

Intereā latrōnēs ad Amūlium rēgem pervēnērunt et Remum vehementer incūsāvērunt. Cupiēbant dēmōnstrāre Remum agrōs Numitōris vāstāre solēre.[1] Itaque Remus ā rēge Numitōrī ad supplicium trāditus est.

A ROMAN ALTAR.
This shows the finding of the twins.

Ubi vērō Numitor Remī vultum cōnsīderāvit et aetātem cognōvit, paene nepōtem agnōvit. Nam Remus mātrī simillimus erat. Dum Numitor dubitat, subitō Rōmulus adest, frātrem līberat, Amūlium interficit, avum Numitōrem in rēgnum restituit.

405. *Translate:*

1. The evil men dragged Remus to the king and Remus lost courage. 2. Romulus however hastened to the city of the king with very great speed. 3. He saw that his brother was in great danger. 4. Amulius feared Romulus who was the braver of the brothers. 5. Amulius was killed by Romulus and Numitor succeded Amulius.

---

[1] *that Remus was accustomed to . . .*

LESSON LXI

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

Semper eadem.—Always the same.[1]

406. The demonstratives point out an object; they are used either substantively or adjectively. They are:

hic, *this* (near me).
ille, *that* (remote from both speaker and the person addressed).
īdem, *the same.*
is, *that.* Review § 224.

(*a*) The first two are often called demonstratives of the first and third persons, respectively.

407. The intensive pronoun is **ipse,** *self.*

(*a*) Learn the declension of **hic, ille, īdem, ipse,** § 605.

408. VOCABULARY

dig′nitās, -tā′tis, f., *worth, position.*
facul′tās, -tā′tis, f., *opportunity, chance, ability.*
ra′tiō, -ō′nis, f., *account, theory, manner, reckoning.*
au′deō, -ē′re, au′sus sum,[2] *dare; dare to* (with infin.).
obsi′deō, -ē′re, -sē′dī, -ses′sus, *besiege.*
perma′neō, -ē′re, -mān′sī, -mānsū′rus, *stay through, abide.*
perter′reō, -ē′re, -uī, -itus, *frighten thoroughly, alarm.*
prohi′beō, -ē′re, -hi′buī, -hi′bitus, *keep away, hinder, prohibit.*
iu′beō, iubē′re, ius′sī, ius′sus, *order.* This verb is used with an infinitive with subject accusative.
hic, haec, hoc, *this.*
ī′dem, e′adem, i′dem, *same.*
il′le, il′la, il′lud, *that.*
ip′se, ip′sa, ip′sum, *self, himself.*

[1] The motto of Queen Elizabeth. Quoted also in the masculine and neuter genders.

[2] **Audeō** has no perfect active tense forms in Latin but the perfect passive tense forms are translated as though they were active: *e.g.*, **ausus est,** *he dared.*

409. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

dignity	ration	faculty
obsessed	prohibition	identify

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES

410. *Translate, telling which demonstrative forms are used substantively and which adjectively:*

(*a*) 1. Huius virī, hae fēminae, huic lēgātō, illōrum mīlitum, illī puerō, illīs hominibus. 2. Hic est malus, ille est peior. 3. Is tuus amīcus est sed eōrum inimīcus. 4. Helvētiī ipsī Germānōs (ā) suīs fīnibus prohibēre ausī sunt. 5. Caesar amīcum suum vocāvit et eius [1] virtūtem laudāvit.

(*b*) 1. Meum nōmen sciēs ex eō amīcō quem ad tē mīsī. 2. Propter proelium perterritae sunt fēminae quae in oppidō permānserant. 3. Hic lēgātus ducī ipsī dignitāte et virtūte praestat. 4. Ratiō frūmentī quod in hīs castrīs relictum erat facta est. 5. Eōdem tempore Caesar suās legiōnēs oppidum obsidēre iussit.

411. *Translate, expressing all the pronouns:*

(*a*) 1. I myself came to your city and remained there two days. 2. These are our friends, those are your enemies. 3. On the same day he will send three legions to the assistance of his men (soldiers). 4. Those men ordered the cavalry to frighten thoroughly the left wing of the line of battle. 5. Caesar dared to place that man in charge of the camp because of his [1] worth.

(*b*) 1. We are thoroughly frightened and we shall keep you away from our fields. 2. We shall order auxiliary troops to attack the rear of the enemy. 3. Caesar very often puts before

---

[1] When *his*, *her*, *their*, etc., used with a genitive, dative, accusative, or ablative in the predicate, do not refer to the subject, use **eius**, or **eōrum**, **eārum**. **Suus** usually refers to the subject of the sentence or clause in which it stands. When, however, it stands in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse, it may refer to the subject of the principal clause.

his lieutenants the theory of the battle and attack. 4. These things will be heard by the Belgians themselves before daybreak. 5. The general will order the bravest of the soldiers to stay and besiege the town.

PHRASES FROM CAESAR

412. *Commit to memory, with the translations:*

1. Patrum nostrōrum memoriā. 2. Ā castrīs suīs. 3. Ante mediam noctem. 4. Praeficere (praepōnere) eum exercituī. 5. Multīs dē causīs.

Decius, Cōnsul Rōmānus

Samnītēs (*The Samnites*) fīnitimī Rōmānōrum erant et cum eīs multōs annōs bellum gerēbant. Decius, cōnsul Rōmānus, in quōdam (*a certain*) bellō exercituī Rōmānō praeerat (*was in command of*, w. dat.). Ante proelium augurēs Rōmānī praedīxērunt deōs victōriam datūrōs esse eī exercituī cuius imperātor suam vītam prō patriā prīmus dedisset (*gave*).

Decius hoc augurium audīvit. Cum prīmum (*As soon as*) signum proelī datum est, in mediōs hostēs incurrit (*rushed*). Sē nōn dēfendit et Samnītēs eum mox interfēcērunt.

Tum mīlitēs Rōmānī, ēlātī (*encouraged*) hōc exemplō et spē victōriae, fortiter in hostēs contendērunt. Diū et ācriter pugnātum est. Tandem autem Rōmānī hostēs vīcērunt et Decius nōn frūstrā mortuus est.

In historiā Rōmānā sunt multa exempla virōrum fortium quī prō patriā suās vītās dedērunt (*gave*). Eōrum factīs Rōma magnō perīculō saepe līberāta est.

Putātisne fābulam huius augurī vēram esse? Nōnne mīlitēs, imperātōre interfectō (*if their leader has been killed*), semper fortius pugnant? Cūr Rōmānī tālēs fābulās nārrāvērunt?

Translate:

1. The general who is at the head of an army ought always to be brave. 2. If he is a true leader and excels his men, they love him. 3. In the battle about which you have heard, Decius set before his soldiers an example of extraordinary valor. 4. Thereupon the Romans hastened with great speed toward the enemies' line of battle. 5. The enemy could not withstand the attack and the Romans conquered.

LESSON LXII

PARTICIPLES

Ave, Imperator! Morituri te salutant. — *Hail, Emperor! Those who are about to die salute you.*[1]

413. There are **four participles,** the *present* and *future* in the active voice and the *perfect* and *future* (or gerundive) in the passive voice.

Present Active Participle = *Present stem* + **-ns** *or* **-ēns**	**portāns** **monēns** **dūcēns** **audiēns**
Future Active Participle = *Participial stem* + **-ūr** + *endings of* **magnus**	**portātūrus** **monitūrus** **ductūrus** **audītūrus**
Perfect Passive Participle = *Participial stem* + *endings of* **magnus**	**portātus** **monitus** **ductus** **audītus**
Future Passive Participle *or* **Gerundive** = *Present stem* + **nd** *or* **end** + *endings of* **magnus**	**portandus** **monendus** **dūcendus** **audiendus**

Note. — For **iō** verbs see § 355.

[1] The call of the Roman gladiators upon entering the arena for the gladiatorial contests.

414. Declension of Participles. — All participles are declined like **magnus,** except the present, which is declined like **potēns** (§ 595), except that it has **e** in the ablative singular.

(*a*) A participle is a verbal adjective. Like a verb, it may take an object and be modified by an adverb ; like an adjective, it agrees with its noun or pronoun in gender, number, and case.[1] It is often best translated by a phrase or clause.

We saw the farmer (as he was) driving his horses swiftly. **Agricolam equōs vēlōciter agentem vīdimus.**

They saw the city (which had been) captured by the enemy. **Urbem ab hostibus captam vīdērunt.**

THE COLOSSEUM.

This was the arena where the gladiatorial contests were held.

415. Time of Participles. — The time denoted by the participle is relative, depending on the time of the principal verb. The present participle denotes the *same* time as the

[1] Compare § 668.

principal verb; the perfect participle, time *before*, and the future participle, time *after* the principal verb.

(*a*) Learn all the participles, active and passive, of **portō, moneō, dūcō, audiō, capiō,** §§ 609–613, and the active participles of **sum** and **possum,** § 614.

416. VOCABULARY

fi'dēs, -eī, f., *faith, pledge, confidence.*
benefi'cium, -ī, n., *kindness, benefit, favor.*
di'gitus, -ī, m., *finger, toe.*
imperā'tum, -ī, n., *command, order.*
malefi'cium, -ī, n., *harm.*
fidē'lis, -e, *faithful, loyal.*
singulā'ris, -e, *one by one; extraordinary.*
senā'tus, -ūs, m., *senate.*
re'gō, -ere, rēx'ī, rēc'tus, *rule.*
sapien'ter, adv., *wisely.*

Form all the infinitives and participles of **capiō, regō.**

417. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

fidelity	sapient	digit	singular
imperative	malefactor	benefit	beneficiary

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES

418. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Ad Caesarem beneficia petentēs vēnērunt. 2. Virōs victōs laudābimus. 3. Audiēns singulārēs virōs hīc cōnsistam. 4. Mīlitēs iniūriam timentēs arma dēpōnere dubitābant. 5. Germānī fidēlēs suum ducem interfectum portantēs eōdem veniunt.

(*b*) 1. Pedes vulnerātus in proximō proeliō duōs digitōs āmīsit. 2. Caesar suōs[1] impetum fortiter sustinentēs vīdit. 3. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī, inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant. 4. Prīncipem in senātū sapienter dīcentem audīvī. 5. Intereā ā plūribus cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī petentēs pācem veniunt prīncipemque ad sē mittī iubet.

[1] See page 232, footnote 1.

419. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Kings when ruling wisely and well are loved by the citizens. 2. Having been influenced by the senate, the Roman people praised its generals. 3. Caesar gave a pledge to the Gauls when they were seeking peace. 4. Pompey, after being placed in command of the army, conquered many provinces. 5. The general, seeing the soldiers of the tenth legion fight long and fiercely, knew that he would conquer (to be about to conquer) the Germans.

(*b*) 1. They drove from the senate the man who was desiring extraordinary favors. 2. Still holding the sword in (with) his wounded fingers, the brave boy was led into the presence of his general. 3. This man remained without harm in a city of great size; that one lived near the sea. 4. The leaders who were about to fight together[1] gave new commands to their companions. 5. The horseman, about to depart from the camp after the battle, seeks aid from his faithful companions.

PHRASES FROM CAESAR

420. *Commit to memory, with the translations:*

1. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī. 2. Senātus populusque Rōmānus. 3. Ōrātiōnem habēre (*to make a speech*). 4. Plūs posse. 5. Plūrimum posse. 6. Inter sē dare.

The Naming of Rome

Deinde Rōmulus et Remus urbem in locīs ubi expositī ēducātīque erant condidērunt. Sed contentiō orta est uter nōmen novae urbī daret.[2] Auspicia adhibēre cōnstituērunt. Remus prior sex vulturēs, Rōmulus posteā duodecim vīdit.

Sīc Rōmulus victor urbem Rōmam vocāvit. Deinde mūrōs exstruere cōnātus est. Remus mūrōs inrīdēns (*mocking*)

---

[1] Inter sē.

[2] *a dispute (as to) which should give.*

saltū trāiēcit. Tum Rōmulus īrātus frātrem interfēcit et sōlus imperiō potītus est.

421. *Translate:*

1. Romulus and Remus founded a city. 2. A dispute arose about the name of the place. 3. Romulus was the victor, and he called the city Rome. 4. Remus made fun of (**inrīdeō**) the walls which Romulus built. 5. Remus jumped over the walls and Romulus killed him.

LESSON LXIII

ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION

Amicus est tanquam alter idem. — A friend is, as it were, another self.[1]

422. Review the declension of all nouns and adjectives, using the following typical words: **porta, annus, puer, liber, praemium, perīculum, aestās, caput, cōnsul, dux, eques, flūmen, frāter, hiems, homō, prīnceps, salūs, timor, vulnus, pars, pōns, corpus, cīvis, altitūdō, hostis, iter, passus, cornū, altus, pulcher, līber, ācer, celer, fortis, recēns, diēs, rēs.**

423. VOCABULARY

equitā'tus, -ūs, m., *cavalry.*
clā'mō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ātū'rus, *shout, cry.*
commū'nicō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *share, communicate.*
ignō'rō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *be unacquainted with.*
occul'tō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *hide, conceal.*
vī'tō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *avoid.*
commū'nis, -e, *common, general.*
mari'timus, -a, -um, *of the sea, maritime.*
occul'tus, -a, -um, *hidden, secret.*

424. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

occult maritime clamorous ignorant communication

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

RULE

425. Ablative of Description. — The quality or description of a noun is expressed by the ablative[2] with an adjective.

---

[1] Cicero.

[2] The genitive is also used to express quality or description, but since this use is just like the English it is necessary only to learn the rule for the ablative.

Erat in Galliā flūmen magnā altitūdine. *There was in Gaul a river of great depth.*

(*a*) *Definite measurement* must be expressed by the genitive.

Flūmen sex pedum altitūdine erat. *The river was six feet in depth.*

EXERCISES

426. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Caesar vir magnā virtūte erat. 2. Nostrī equitēs perterritī impetum gravissimum hostium vītāre cupīvērunt. 3. Caesar iussit equitātum ad moenia magnā altitūdine appropinquāre. 4. Omnēs cōnsentiunt barbarōs rēs maritimās ignōrāre. 5. Dē perīculō commūnī nōs cīvēs monēre dēbēmus.

(*b*) 1. Prīncipēs cōnsilia occulta bellī nōbīscum commūnicant sed hae rēs ab hostibus sapienter occultantur. 2. In mediā pugnā lēgātum dē ācrī equitātūs impetū clāmantem audīvimus. 3. Nūntius dīcit nōs proelium cum hostibus vītāre nōn posse. 4. Occāsū sōlis lēgātus, vir singulārī dīligentiā, castrīs praefectus erat. 5. Mīles erat vir magnae virtūtis et peditēs trāns flūmen quīnque pedum altitūdine dūxit.

427. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. The Germans were men of great size of body. 2. Animals of the sea are very unlike those which we see on land. 3. Human beings are unacquainted with the hidden affairs of the gods. 4. I, about to abide there six days, was eager to see the senate. 5. In three days the cavalry will have arrived at the maritime city (which has been) captured by the Germans.

(*b*) 1. We saw the commander sharing plans with his lieutenants concerning the difficult task of the allies. 2. Caesar himself, being informed of the secret departure of the enemy, ceased to fear longer. 3. The cavalry will wisely avoid a battle with that commander, who is a man of extraordinary ability. 4. I was unable to find your house (since it was) concealed by trees. 5. If you shout with a loud (great) voice, you can be heard very easily by all.

Cloelia

Postquam Rōmānī cum Porsenā, rēge Clūsī, multōs annōs bellum gessērunt, Porsena dīxit sē pācem factūrum esse. Prīmum autem necesse erat Rōmānīs eī obsidēs dare. Rōmānī id libenter fēcērunt quod bellum longum fuerat et multī virī interfectī erant.

Inter līberōs Rōmānōs quī ad Porsenam missī sunt erat puella pulcherrima, nōmine Cloelia. Cloelia in terrā aliēnā diū mānsit. Per multās noctēs mātrem et patrem et patriam vidēre cupīvit, sed frūstrā.

Tandem ad patriam suam redīre (*to go back*) cōnstituit. Equum igitur clam cōnscendit et in flūmen Tiberim dēsiluit. Fortiter trāns flūmen vēlōcissimum equus trānāvit. Cloelia tandem in suā patriā salva erat.

Rōmae (*at Rome*) erat magna laetitia in familiā (*household*) Cloeliae et eius comitum, nam paucae puellae eam secūtae erant (*had followed*). Sed laetitia non diūturna (*lasting*) erat. Nōn oportuit Cloeliam et comitēs effugere, cum (*since*) ad Porsenam ā cīvitāte obsidēs missae essent (*had been sent*). Quamquam Rōmānī suōs līberōs magnopere amāvērunt, honōrem patriae etiam magis amāvērunt. Rōmānī igitur Cloeliam et comitēs ad Porsenam remīsērunt.

Cum obsidēs remissae essent (*were sent back*), Porsena stupuit. Virtūtem Cloeliae et honōrem populī Rōmānī tantum admīrātus est (*admired*) ut (*that*) eās līberāret (*he freed*) et ad suam patriam remitteret (*he sent back*).

Inter Rōmānōs antīquōs fidēs (*a promise*) sacra erat.

Translate:

1. Hostages had been sent by the Romans to the leader of the enemy. 2. After a long war this condition of peace was not unfair. 3. Cloelia, daughter of a Roman chief, was one of the hos-

tages. 4. She remained there many days but finally (**tandem**) fled (**effugiō**) to her own (**suus**) city. 5. Although (**Quamquam**) the Romans sent her back, Porsena gave her liberty.

Police and Fire Protection

It was in the time of the Emperor Augustus that Rome first had an adequate police system and reasonable protection against fire. With the increase in population and the construction of many flimsy wooden **īnsulae** or tenement houses, it became increasingly necessary to guard against great conflagrations, as well as to prevent crime.

Augustus divided the city into seven districts, each with its own main and subordinate police stations, and 1000 police-firemen or **vigilēs** were stationed in each district. The whole force was under the command of a prefect. The discipline was severe and military in its nature. At each police station there were rooms for confining prisoners, and also a torturer to get at the truth quickly. The torturer could not exercise his profession upon Roman citizens, but slaves were not thus protected. Petty cases were settled by the prefect, but more important cases were tried in the regular courts.

At night the *vigiles* patrolled the pitch-dark streets with little lanterns, for there were no street lights in Rome. Often they were able to check fires that would have been very serious if they had not been discovered promptly. They also prevented many crimes that are liable to occur where the streets are absolutely dark. In spite of their efforts, however, the Roman of wealth never went out at night without a bodyguard.

From the fact that the *vigiles* were often seen hurrying to fires with their buckets, they were given the nickname "Bucket-men."

The Palatine Hill.

LESSON LXIV

DATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVE VERBS

Nemo liber est qui corpori servit. — No one is free who is a slave to his body.[1]

428. Review the *four* conjugations, and also **sum** and **possum.** This review should include the active and passive voices, together with the infinitives and participles. Use the following list of typical verbs:

portō, moneō, mittō, mūniō, capiō, and **sum** and **possum.**

429. VOCABULARY

adven'tus, -ūs, m., *approach, arrival.*

cupi'ditās, -tā'tis, f., *desire, longing; desire for* (with gen.).

cōnfī'dō, -ere, cōnfī'sus sum, *trust* (see page 205, note 1).

le'gō, -ere, lē'gī, lēc'tus, *pick out, choose, read.*

dē'ligō, -ere, -lē'gī, -lēc'tus, *pick out, choose.*

no'ceō, -ē're, no'cuī, *harm* (with dat.).

resis'tō, -ere, re'stitī, *take a stand against, resist* (with dat.).

satisfa'ciō, -ere, -fē'cī, -factū'rus, *do enough (for), satisfy* (with dat.).

cu'pidus, -a, -um, *desirous, eager; eager for* (with gen.).

prop'ter, prep. (with accus.), *near; on account of.*

Note. — Many verbs meaning to benefit or injure, please or displease, command or obey, serve or resist, believe or distrust, persuade, pardon, envy, threaten, be angry, and the like, take the dative. Because of the many exceptions, a vocabulary is a much better guide than the rule.

Cōnfīdit mihi. *He trusts me.*

430. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

adventure	cupidity	confidence	noxious
lecture	innocent	resistance	satisfaction

[1] Seneca.

EXERCISES

431. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Propter adventum Caesaris ipsīus Belgae nē servīs quidem sociōrum nostrōrum nocēbunt. 2. Peditēs commissūrī proelium inter sē iūs iūrandum dedērunt. 3. Imperātor prūdēns iussit octāvam legiōnem locum idōneum castrīs dēligere. 4. Lēgistīne dē Germānīs, quī mīlitēs summā virtūte erant? 5. Tibi nōn cōnfīdam, nam amīcīs meīs magnopere nocuistī.

(*b*) 1. Propter amōrem[1] domuum et amīcōrum, equitēs longius iter nōn fēcērunt sed multa mīlia passuum sē recēpērunt. 2. Sī cupidī pācis estis, imperātīs prīncipis nōn resistētis. 3. Ille vir miserrimus cupiditātī aquae satisfacere nōn poterat. 4. Poētam legentem sub arbore et cōgitantem[2] sapienter dē nātūrā vīdimus. 5. Tēla coniecta ē superiōre locō perītīs cōpiīs graviter nocuērunt.

432. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. If the fortifications are of greater height, we can resist the enemy better. 2. Because of a longing for good books, I shall choose the same book twice. 3. The general, (having been) warned of the approach of the enemy, hastens to give the signal for (of) battle. 4. It will not be difficult to injure a few of the unfriendly horsemen. 5. We ought to trust the faith of that citizen.

(*b*) 1. A brave man is in charge of these states from which ambassadors will be chosen. 2. At the same time an extraordinary opportunity was given to this small boy. 3. Caesar knows that the forces of the Belgians cannot resist the Roman cavalry strongly. 4. The girl began to read as carefully as possible about Caesar for he was the bravest of the Roman commanders. 5. You, who are desirous of war, will not be able to satisfy your country's desire for peace.

Atalanta

Ōlim in longinquā terrā habitābat magnus rēx, nōmine Schoeneus. Eius fīlia, Atalanta, celerrima omnium mortā-

---

[1] **Amor** means *love of, fondness for;* **cupiditās** means *desire, craving,* usually in a bad sense.

[2] From **cōgitō,** *to ponder.*

lium erat. Quod Atalanta tam pulchra erat, multōs procōs habēbat. Fortūna autem procōrum mala erat. Omnī (*to each*) procō Schoeneus dīxit, "Sī Atalantam certāmine pedum (*in a foot race*) vincēs, tum eam in mātrimōnium dūcere poteris; sī Atalanta tē vincet, poena mors erit."

Tandem ad rēgiam Schoeneī vēnit Hippomenēs, quī Atalantam in mātrimōnium dūcere cupiēbat. Schoeneus eī condiciōnēs prōposuit. Inde Hippomenēs auxilium ā Venere ōrābat, quae eī tria aurea pōma dedit. Tum Hippomenēs dīxit sē ad certāmen esse parātum.

Dum haec geruntur (*were being done*), omnēs amīcī rēgis ad certāmen convēnerant. Signum tubā datur. Magnō cursū Atalanta et Hippomenēs ēmicant. Atalanta autem celerior est itaque Hippomenēs ūnum ex tribus pōmīs dēmittit. Atalanta pōmum tollit et tum Hippomenēs prior est. Mox tamen Atalanta propter celeritātem suam eum praeterit (*passes*). Hippomenēs igitur secundum pōmum dēmittit, sed iterum Atalanta, pōmō sublātō (*picked up*), eum cōnsequitur (*overtakes*). Nunc ad mētam appropinquant. Ōrāns auxilium ā deā, Hippomenēs tertium pōmum dēmittit. Atalanta id quoque tollit sed spatium ad mētam brevius (*too short*) est. Hippomenēs est victor. Prō (*instead of*) poenā mortis Hippomenēs Atalantam in mātrimōnium dūcit.

Translate:

1. A very beautiful girl always has many suitors (**procus**). 2. If she is the daughter of a king or has much money, her father often sends them away. 3. Atalanta and her father formed a plan which the suitors did not like. 4. To surpass Atalanta in a foot race (**certāmen pedum**) was very difficult and many suitors were afraid. 5. Hippomenes did not fear the penalty of death and by the aid of a goddess surpassed Atalanta in the contest (**certāmen**).

LESSON LXV

WORD FORMATION

Et redit in nihilum quod fuit ante nihil. — It began of nothing and in nothing ends.[1]

433. The Principles of Word Formation which follow are to be studied carefully, or reviewed.[2]

Prefixes. — Note the effect of the following prefixes upon the words with which they are combined:

circum (*around*) — **circumnāvigō,** *sail around;* **circumdūcō, circumveniō, circumdō, circumiciō, circummittō, circumclūdō, circumstō, circumscrībō.**

in (*not*) — **inimīcus,** *not friendly, unfriendly;* **imperītus, inīquus, imprūdēns, incertus, incognitus, innocēns, immōtus, impār, innumerus.** English equivalents — *in* (*im*), *un-*. Notice that this use of **in** is confined to adjectives, adverbs, and a very few nouns, like **īnscientia.**

inter (*between, among*) — **interveniō,** *come between;* **intermittō, interpōnō, interpellō, intericiō, interrogō, intercēdō.**

per (*through* or *thoroughly*) — **perveniō,** *come through, arrive,* and **permoveō,** *move thoroughly, alarm;* **pertineō, perdūcō, perterreō, permittō, permaneō.**

prae (*before*) — **praecēdō,** *go before;* **praestō, praeficiō, praemittō, praesum, praepōnō, praeparō, praesentiō.** English equivalents — *before, in advance, in front of,* etc.

prō (*forward, in front of*) — **prōcēdō,** *go forward;* **prōpellō, prōpōnō, prōiciō, prōmoveō, prōdūcō, prōnūntiō, prōtrahō.** English equivalents — *forth, forward, in front of,* etc.

---

[1] Cornelius Gallus. Literally: *And it returns to nothing, which before was nothing.* The rendering above is from Burton's *Anatomy of Melancholy.*

[2] Review also § 232.

sub (*under, up, close to*) — **suscipiō,** *take up;* **subdūcō, sustineō, succēdō, subiciō, supportō, submittō.** English equivalents — *under, up, in place of, to the aid of, closely,* etc.

Note. — Whenever the compound brings together two letters that are hard to pronounce, a change is often made, as **supportō,** not **subportō.** This is done for the sake of euphony or making the word sound better.

Suffixes. — Review the following suffixes and their effect upon the words with which they are combined: **-tus (-sus), -or, -tiō (-siō),** § 303, § 349, § 381.

434. VOCABULARY

difficul'tās, -ā'tis, f., *difficulty.*
impe'rium, -ī, n., *command, power.*
ino'pia, -ae, f., *want, lack.*
potes'tās, -ā'tis, f., *power, opportunity.*
acci'piō, -ere, -cē'pī, -cep'tus, *take to, receive, accept.*
compel'lō, -ere, com'pulī, -pul'sus, *drive together, collect, force.*
conve'niō, -ī're, -vē'nī, -ventū'rus, *come together, assemble.*
īn'struō, -ere, -strūx'ī, -strūc'tus, *arrange, marshal;* **aciem īnstru'ere,** *to draw up a line of battle.*
possi'deō, -ē're, -sē'dī, -ses'sus, *possess, own.*
trā'dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *hand over, intrust, surrender.*

435. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

imperial	acceptance	compulsion
convene	instruction	possessive

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES

436. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Condiciōnēs pācis nōbīs ab hostibus prōpositās nōn accipimus. 2. Propter inopiam frūmentī per aestātem Caesar ibi permanēre nōn poterat. 3. Sub imperiō huius rēgis inimīcī multae rēs cīvibus dēerant. 4. Rēs pūblica campōs ā Germānīs relictōs possidēre dēbet. 5. Erat negōtium maximae difficultātis hostēs nostrīs fīnibus prohibēre.

(*b*) 1. Scīsne Caesarem omnibus Rōmānīs potestāte et dignitāte praestāre? 2. Caesar in summō monte magnā cum celeritāte aciem īnstrūxit. 3. Prīncipēs ad Caesarem convēnērunt et sē suaque omnia[1] potestātī populī Rōmānī trādidērunt. 4. Belgae cōpiās ē cīvitātibus suīs quam plūrimīs comparāre coepērunt. 5. Paucī quidem cīvēs illā nocte ignī superfuērunt.

437. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. On account of the arrival of the army the king ordered the leaders to assemble. 2. It was easy for Caesar to arrange his line of battle in the middle of the plain near the river. 3. The allies had not hesitated to hand over their arms to the power of the Roman people. 4. We saw six thousand soldiers about to begin battle. 5. I myself (**ipse**) was reading the book to you because of the lack of time.

(*b*) 1. These soldiers will be killed for they have resisted the commands of the chief. 2. At the sixth hour the conquered enemy will surrender themselves and all their possessions to Caesar. 3. The cavalry retreated with great difficulty to the same place whence it had come. 4. We possessed the weapons hidden in the near-by woods. 5. It was not the leader's custom to accept unjust conditions of peace.

The Reign of Romulus

Exitus lūdōrum[2] magnam difficultātem ferēbat. Nam Sabīnī, patrēs et propinquī virginum quae in urbe remanēre coāctae erant, Rōmānīs bellum intulērunt. Tum Rōmulus cum hostibus in eō locō ubi nunc Forum Rōmānum est proelium commīsit.

In mediō proeliō virginēs quae raptae erant prōcessērunt, et patrēs et coniugēs magnopere ōrābant ut fīnem pugnae

---

[1] *their all* (neuter plural accusative) = *all their possessions.*

[2] The Romans had invited the Sabines to view games (**lūdī**) at Rome. While the games were in progress, the Romans stole the **puellae Sabīnae.**

facerent.[1] Utrīque [2] hīs precibus commōtī sunt. Pugnāre dēstitērunt et pācem fēcērunt. Urbs commūnis Rōmānōrum et Sabīnōrum facta est.

Posteā Rōmulus cīvitātem rēxit. Centum senātōrēs lēgit, eōsque ob aetātem dignitātemque patrēs appellāvit.

FORUM RŌMĀNUM.

Plēbem in trīgintā cūriās distribuit. Annō rēgnī trīcēsimō septimō inter tempestātem subitō ex oculīs hominum ēreptus est. Aliī eum ā senātōribus interfectum, aliī ad deōs sublātum [3] esse exīstimāvērunt.

---

[1] **ut . . . facerent,** *to make,* lit., *that they make.*

[2] *I.e.,* both sides.

[3] See **tollō** in the General Vocabulary.

LESSON LXVI

REVIEW

438. Derivatives. — *A*. Write all the English words you can that seem to be derived from the following:

prohibeō	ratiō	regō	clāmō
commūnicō	cōnfīdō	legō	accipiō
compellō	conveniō	adventus	commūnis
claudō			

B. With the aid of an unabridged English dictionary, study carefully the form and meaning of the following and compare with the Latin originals:

profound	focus	stimulus
museum	nominate	penitentiary

439. Form Drill. — 1. Name four Latin demonstratives. 2. In what two ways may they be used? 3. Decline each of the four demonstratives. 4. Decline the intensive pronoun. 5. Give the Latin for: *I myself see you. I see myself. I saw his brother. He carries his own sword.* 6. Give the participles of: **iubeō, trādō, accipiō.**

440. Syntax Drill. — 1. How is the description or quality of a noun expressed in Latin? 2. How must definite measurement be expressed? 3. Give the Latin for: *It was an animal of great height. It was an animal eight feet in height.* 4. Mention at least three intransitive Latin verbs which require the dative. 5. What is the equivalent English ending of a Latin present participle ending in

-ns? What part of speech is this participle? 6. What form of expression in English may be substituted for the literal translation of a Latin participle?

441. *Translate:*

1. Nōs ipsī eōs sub monte stantēs vidēmus. 2. Is vir est amīcus tuus, ille amīcus meus. 3. Caesar, perīculum vidēns, peditēs impetuī hostium resistere iussit. 4. Imperiō populī Rōmānī sē suaque omnia trādere coepērunt. 5. Prīnceps aciem īnstruet et equitēs ē multīs terrīs coāctōs praemittet. 6. Graviter hīs rēbus commōtus dux ex castrīs discesserat et ab equitibus Gallōrum interfectus erat. 7. Dēbēmus Germānōs cupidōs bellī itinere prohibēre. 8. Eundem virum equitātuī praepōnent. 9. Quam longē Gallī sagittās coniciēbant et quam multī vulnerātī sunt? 10. Nox adest et mīlitēs in castrīs vīrēs ante prīmam lūcem recuperābunt.

The Appearance of Roman Streets

Rome, like our own great cities, had its exclusive residential sections and its slums, but even its avenues were very narrow in contrast to our streets today. Streets in Rome were often only fifteen to twenty feet wide and on each side, so close that the balconies almost touched, towered the stuccoed houses, which were wisely limited to seventy feet in height or about six or more stories. This made the streets look still narrower, and, with the prevailing dirty brown color of the stuccoed walls, the streets generally presented an unattractive appearance. It has been stated that there were less than 2000 separate mansions in Rome as against almost 50,000 apartment houses, even in the later days of the city.

The streets were paved with large blocks of lava and had very narrow sidewalks. Here and there were stepping

stones, for the streets were frequently wet and filthy. Carts often wore deep grooves even in the stones which paved the streets.

Shops were almost without number and their wares crowded out upon the sidewalks. It was always a difficult matter to make one's way through the crowded streets and,

A Street in Pompeii.
Notice the "stepping stones" and the ruts worn by carts.

for that reason, wagons were forbidden to use the streets from sunrise until four in the afternoon, except in special cases. About three o'clock business ceased for the day and all Romans made ready for dinner.

With the shop fronts all closed and practically no unbarred windows and only a few windows on the first floor facing the street, the Roman street at night was a very gloomy place.

Except for the wealthy there was no running water in the house and there was a great necessity for the numerous public

fountains which were placed at frequent intervals along the streets. Rome had the best water supply of any large city in the ancient world, and this undoubtedly helped materially to keep it healthy. Wayside shrines of different deities were found at frequent intervals. The stuccoed house walls throughout the city were scribbled over with writing — advertisements, announcements of games, and even the foolish scribbling that we consider the peculiar habit of the ignorant small boy.

LESSON LXVII

ADJECTIVES OF PECULIAR DECLENSION

Audiatur et altera pars. — *Let the other side also be heard.*[1]

442. The following adjectives of the first and second declensions are regular in the plural, but have **-īus** [2] in the genitive and **-ī** in the dative singular of all genders:

a'lius, a'lia, a'liud, *other.*
al'ter, al'tera, al'terum, *one of two, the other* (of two).
ūl'lus, -a, -um, *any.*
nūl'lus, -a, -um, *no, none.*
uter'que, utra'que, utrum'que, *each* (of two).
u'ter, u'tra, u'trum, *which* (of two).
neu'ter, neu'tra, neu'trum, *neither* (of two).
sō'lus, -a, -um, *alone, only.*
tō'tus, -a, -um, *whole.*

(*a*) Learn the declension of **alius,** § 597; notice the peculiarities in the declension of **deus** and **dea,** § 591.

RULE

443. Place Constructions. Locative Case. — With names of cities and towns, with **domus,** *home*, and with **rūs,** *country*, the preposition is not used in *expressions of place.*

(*a*) These words express *place at which* by a case called the *Locative.* Its form is like the genitive in the singular of nouns of the first and second declensions, otherwise like the ablative.

	ORDINARY NOUNS	TOWNS, *domus, rūs*
PLACE FROM WHICH *He comes*	**Ab, dē, ex** with Ablative *from the city,* **Ab urbe venit.**	Ablative *from Rome,* **Rōmā venit.** *from home,* **Domō venit.**
PLACE TO WHICH *He runs*	**Ad** with Accusative *to the city,* **Ad urbem currit.**	Accusative *to Rome,* **Rōmam currit.** *home,* **Domum currit.**
PLACE IN WHICH *He is*	**In** with Ablative *in the city,* **In urbe est.**	Locative *at Rome,* **Rōmae est.** *at home,* **Domī est.**

[1] Seneca.

[2] **Alter** has **īus** in the genitive.

444. VOCABULARY

captī'vus, -ī, m., *captive.*
de'a, -ae, f., *goddess* (**-ā'bus** in dat. and abl. pl.).
fos'sa, -ae, f., *ditch;* **fos'sam perdū'cere,** *to dig a ditch.*
aliē'nus, -a, -um, *belonging to another, strange, unfavorable.*
nōnnūl'lus, -a, -um, *some.*
a'liter, adv., *otherwise.*
fī'dus, -a, -um, *faithful.*
vī'vō, -ere, vīx'ī, vīctū'rus,[1] *live, be alive.*
a'lius . . . a'lius,[2] *one . . . another.*
a'liī . . . a'liī, *some . . . others.*
quot, indecl. adj., *how many?*

445. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

neuter alien vivacious alternate

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES

446. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Nōnnūllī Rōmānī deīs et deābus fīdissimī erant. 2. Alia animālia in marī, alia in silvā vīvunt. 3. Soror ā neutrō frātre magnopere amābātur. 4. Utra puella maior est et utra Rōmam vēnit? 5. Ūna legiō fossam perdūcere multōs passūs longam brevī tempore dēbet.

(*b*) 1. Fēminae fīdae tōtum diem domī erant. 2. Utra puella capta pulchrior erat? 3. Alia puella alium librum ostendit.[2] 4. Mīlitēs domum ex fīnibus victōrum quam celerrimē contenderant. 5. Lēgātus in aliēnō locō pugnāre cupiet, sed Caesar aliter iubēbit.

447. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. One captive is a friend, another an enemy. 2. The father of neither boy was at home. 3. Some (women) do not desire to hasten home from strange lands. 4. The faithful Romans were loved by the gods and goddesses. 5. The gods have given longer life to some than to others.

---

[1] Compare principal parts of **videō, vincō, vīvō, veniō.**

[2] The Romans had an easy way of saying: *One does one thing, another does another.* They said simply: *Another does another thing,* **Alius aliud facit.**

(*b*) 1. Some captives will dig a ditch from one camp to another with very great speed. 2. The whole army had been conquered and the soldiers were living in fear every day. 3. The poet gave a beautiful gift to each boy. 4. The soldiers live in camp in the summer. 5. Our infantry remained all day in line of battle; the enemy did otherwise.

ORAL EXERCISE

448. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quot hōrās hominēs labōrābunt? 2. Quam longē vēnistī? 3. Quam diū vīxit? 4. Labōrābāsne tōtum diem? 5. Utra puella melior est?

Deucaliōn et Pyrrha

Ōlim deī īrātī erant quod hominēs per tōtum orbem terrārum malī impiīque erant. Nec iam templa deōrum adībant nec sacrificia faciēbant. Deī igitur eōs pūnīre cōnstituērunt.

Iuppiter, rēx deōrum, cum reliquīs deīs magnam poenam parat. Dē tōtō caelō imbrēs continuōs in terrās dēmittit. Prīmum flūmina agrōs inundant itaque mare crēscit. Mox nihil nisi summī montēs vidērī possunt. Tandem mōns Parnāsus sōlus caput ab undīs tollit. Hīc Deucaliōn et Pyrrha parvā rate adhaerēbant, nam hāc rate salūtem petīvērunt cum prīmum (*as soon as*) deī imbrēs dēmīsērunt. Perīculum mortis magnum erat, sed mānsuētūdine deōrum cōnfīsī sunt (*trusted*, with abl.) interritī.

Fidēs autem eōrum nōn vāna erat. Nam Iuppiter vīdit omnēs aliōs hominēs submersōs esse, praeter hōs quibus propter pietātem eōrum pepercit (*spared*, w. dat.).

Tum maria recēdēbant et in omnibus terrīs Deucaliōn Pyrrhaque sōlī supererant (*were left*). Maestī ad templum veniēbant (*went*) et hoc ōrāculum ā deā accēpērunt: "Sī no-

vum genus hominum cupitis, post tergum ossa magnae parentis iactāte (*cast*)."

Hoc ōrāculum ambiguum erat, ut omnia ōrācula sunt. Tandem autem Deucaliōn exclāmāvit, "Terra est magna parēns omnium mortālium. Fortasse saxa sunt ossa magnae parentis." Statim ā templō discessērunt et Deucaliōn fēcit ut eī imperātum est (*as he had been ordered*). Tum mīrābile dictū (*strange to say*) saxa virī et fēminae fīēbant (*became*). Tālī modō hominēs ad terrās auxiliō deōrum revertērunt.

Translate:

1. In the story (**fābula**) which you have read there were many evil men (**homō**). 2. Now there are many thousands and very few (**perpaucī**) are evil. 3. Because Deucalion and Pyrrha loved the gods, the gods saved their lives. 4. All the rest were killed by the gods, who always punish wicked men. 5. Have you read a story like this in another (**alius**) book?

LESSON LXVIII

SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

Crescat scientia.—May knowledge increase![1]

449. First Conjugation.

Present Subjunctive = present stem (with **ā** changed to **e**) + *personal endings*, **porte m.**

Second and Fourth Conjugations.

Present Subjunctive = present stem (with the vowel shortened) + **a** + *personal endings*, **mone a m, audi a m.**

Third Conjugation.

Present Subjunctive = present stem (with **e** changed to **a**) + *personal endings*, **dūca m.**

(*a*) Learn the present subjunctive, active and passive, of **portō, moneō, dūcō, audiō,** and **capiō,** §§ 609, 610, 611, 612, 613, also present subjunctive of **sum, possum,** § 614.

(*b*) The indicative mood is used to indicate facts. The most common uses of the subjunctive are to represent something as willed, desired, possible, doubtful, or even contrary to fact. No translation is given for the subjunctive in the paradigms, as the meaning of a subjunctive varies with its use.

450. Subjunctive of Purpose. — In English, purpose is often expressed by the infinitive: *we fight to conquer.* But in Latin prose, purpose is expressed *not* by the infinitive but *by the subjunctive.* The subjunctive is introduced by **ut,** *that, in order that,* if the purpose is positive; by **nē,** *that not, lest,* if the purpose is negative.

[1] The motto of Chicago University.

There are two kinds of purpose clauses, adverbial (sometimes called "pure" purpose clauses) and substantive. The first modifies a verb; the second is used like a substantive, principally as an object. Both are expressed in the same way.

Adverbial ("Pure") Purpose Clauses:

We fight to overcome. **Pugnāmus ut superēmus.**
We fight that we may not be overcome. **Pugnāmus nē superēmur.**

Substantive Clauses of Purpose:

We order him to overcome. **Eī imperāmus ut superet.**
We order him not to be overcome. **Eī imperāmus nē superētur.**

(*a*) Always remember to put the English phrase of purpose into a clause with (*in order*) *that* before beginning to translate.

(*b*) Substantive clauses of purpose are used as objects with most verbs signifying to request, command, urge, persuade, induce, etc.

(*c*) Remember, however, that the word **iubeō,** *order*, requires the infinitive with subject accusative.

451. VOCABULARY

cur′rō, -ere, cucur′rī, cursū′rus, *run.*

im′perō, -ā′re, -ā′vī, -ātū′rus, *order* (with dative).

man′dō, -ā′re, -ā′vī, -ā′tus, *hand over, commission, order* (with acc. and dat.).

persuā′deō, -ē′re, -suā′sī, -suāsū′rus, *persuade* (with dat.).

pos′tulō, -ā′re, -ā′vī, -ā′tus, *claim, demand. Demand of* or *from* takes **ā** or **ab** with abl.

quae′rō, -ere, quaesī′vī, quaesī′tus, *ask, seek.* In the meaning *ask of* or *seek from* **quaerō** takes **ē** (**ex**), **ā** (**ab**) or **dē** with the ablative of the person.

ro′gō, -ā′re, -ā′vī, -ā′tus, *ask* (takes two accusatives, one of the person and one of the thing).

ut, conj., *that.*

nē, conj., *that not, lest.*

Note. — **Imperō, mandō,** and **persuādeō** take the dative of the person, as noted, and in addition the subjunctive of purpose (substantive) as an object, with **ut** or **nē.**

Postulō and **quaerō** take the ablative with a preposition to denote the person, and in addition the subjunctive of purpose (substantive) as an object, with **ut** or **nē.**

452. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

interrogative	mandatory	current	expostulate
imperative	demand	inquisitive	persuasive

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES

453. *Translate, and tell which purpose clauses are adverbial and which substantive:*

(*a*) 1. Pugnāmus fortiter ut ā duce laudēmur. 2. Nūntiīs imperat ut itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant. 3. Mīlitēs celerrimē currunt nē hostēs novissimum agmen videant. 4. Ille vir frātrī persuādet ut rēgnum in cīvitāte occupet. 5. Veniēmus celeriter ut dē perīculō nostrum lēgātum certiōrem faciāmus.

(*b*) 1. Ea quae ego ex eō quaesīvī facere dubitāvit. 2. Tē rogō nē maleficia mea memoriā teneās. 3. Caesar ab eīs postulat ut decem ex captīvīs ad sē addūcantur. 4. Nūntius mittitur ut cīvēs moneantur. 5. Tibi mandābō ut mē certiōrem dē itinere hostium faciās.

454. *Translate, remembering* § 450 (*a*):

(*a*) 1. We come to make peace. 2. Caesar persuades the barbarians to march very quickly through the territory of the Gauls. 3. The enemy comes to seize the royal power at Rome. 4. We shall order the soldiers to pitch camp late in the day. (Use both **iubeō** and **imperō**.) 5. I shall ask the boys to read many books about Rome and the Roman people.

(*b*) 1. Some ran home, others remained there the whole night. 2. A man is selected to warn the captive. 3. From strange places conquering generals had carried many things to Rome. 4. All think that you can persuade neither of the men. 5. The faithful leader demands that the Belgians surrender themselves and all their possessions to him (**sibi**).

ORAL EXERCISE

455. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Dīxistīne puerum cum dīligentiā labōrāvisse? 2. Persuādēbisne eī ut litterās scrībat? 3. Quid mē rogās? 4. Venīsne ut mātrem videās? 5. Nōnne nūntius Rōmam quam celerrimē cucurrit?

456. *Commit to memory, with the translations:*

aciem īnstruere sē suaque omnia in aliēnō locō

Numa and Tullus

Post Rōmulī mortem ūnīus annī interrēgnum fuit. Deinde Numa Pompilius, quī in oppidō Sabīnōrum nātus (*born*) erat, rēx creātus est. Hic vir bellum nōn gessit, sed cum omnibus fīnitimīs pācem statim fēcit. Sub eius imperiō populus in summā fēlīcitāte permanēbat. Morbō dēcessit quadrāgēsimō tertiō rēgnī annō.

Numae successit Tullus Hostīlius, cuius avus in bellō contrā Sabīnōs virtūte multīs antecesserat. Is bellum cum Albānīs gessit, urbemque Albam occupāvit. Trīgintā duōs annōs rēgnāvit.

Translate:

1. After many years Romulus died. 2. The next king was Numa who loved peace. 3. While he was king, the citizens did not wage war, but worked diligently. 4. The next king, who was very brave in war, fought with (his) neighbors. 5. He ruled the state at Rome wisely for many years.

LESSON LXIX

SEQUENCE OF TENSES

Caveat emptor.—Let the buyer beware.[1]

457. Imperfect Subjunctive Active of All Conjugations = *present stem* + **re** + *personal endings;* or *present infinitive active* + *personal endings.*

Perfect Subjunctive Active of All Conjugations = *perfect stem* + **eri** + *personal endings.*

Pluperfect Subjunctive Active of All Conjugations = *perfect stem* + **isse** + *personal endings;* or *perfect infinitive active* + *personal endings.*

(*a*) According to above rules conjugate the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect subjunctive active of **portō, moneō, dūcō, audiō, capiō,** also **sum** and **possum.** Conjugate all but **sum** and **possum** in the passive, following the same general plan as that used in the passive indicative. Compare §§ 609, 610, 611, 612, 613, 614.

458. VOCABULARY

car'rus, -ī, m., *cart, wagon.*
vāl'lum, -ī, n., *rampart.*
vī'cus, -ī, m., *village.*
au'geō, -ē're, aux'ī, auc'tus, *increase.*
e'mō, -ere, ē'mī, ēmp'tus, *take, buy.*
dī'vidō, -ere, dīvī'sī, dīvī'sus, *divide.*
suppor'tō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *carry up.*
senā'tor, -ō'ris, m., *senator.*
ne'gō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ātū'rus, *deny, say that . . . not.*

459. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

negative senatorial augment vicinity preëmpt division

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

[1] We say: *Buyer's risk.*

RULES

460. Classes of Tenses. — Tenses are divided into two classes, *principal* and *historical.*

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Principal Tenses	Present Future Future perfect	Present Perfect
Historical Tenses	Imperfect Perfect Pluperfect	Imperfect Pluperfect

Note. — The present perfect tense, translated by "have" or "has," is not a historical tense in Latin.

He has come to fight or, *that he* ***may*** *fight.* **Vēnit ut pugnet.** Notice that the English uses "may," not "might."

He came to fight or, *that he* ***might*** *fight.* **Vēnit ut pugnāret.**

461. Sequence of Tenses.[1] — Principal tenses of the indicative are generally followed by principal tenses of the subjunctive, and historical tenses of the indicative by historical tenses of the subjunctive.

The present and imperfect subjunctive are used to denote action incomplete at the time of the main verb; the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive are used to denote action complete at the time of the main verb.

EXERCISES ON SUBJUNCTIVES

462. (*a*) 1. Venīmus ut videāmus; vēnimus ut videāmus. 2. Mandant virīs ut pugnent, capiant, moneant. 3. Persuādēbat senātōrī nē pugnāret, caperet, monēret. 4. Mīlitem mittet ut currat, supportet, emat. 5. Lēgātōs mīsit ut imperārent, persuādērent, dīviderent; lēgātōs mittit ut imperent, persuādeant, dīvidant.

---

[1] Notice that the first part of this rule shows whether to use a *principal* or *historical* tense; the second part shows *which one* of the principal or historical tenses to use.

(*b*) 1. We come to attack; we have come to conquer. 2. We came to attack, to conquer. 3. We persuaded the soldiers not to give, buy. 4. The man is sent to hear, to know, to fight. 5. Caesar orders (**imperō**) the lieutenant to carry up, to say, to know.

EXERCISES

463. *Translate, explaining the mood and tense of each subjunctive and infinitive:*

(*a*) 1. Oppidum fossā vāllōque magnā altitūdine mūnīvērunt ut virtūtem cīvium augērent. 2. Veniam ut dē bellō amīcum certiōrem faciam. 3. Quot carrōs ēmimus ut Rōmam celerius veniāmus? 4. Senātōrēs ad terrās aliēnās vēnērunt ut dē nostrīs maritimīs rēbus amplius intellegerent. 5. Imperātor lēgātō persuāsit ut in citeriōre Galliā novōs mīlitēs cōnscrīberet.

(*b*) 1. Equitātus ipse frūmentum exercituī ad vīcum supportābat. 2. Lēgātō imperāverāmus ut itinere hostēs prohibēret. 3. Negant equitēs fortius quam peditēs pugnāvisse. 4. Postulābat ab imperātōre ut campōs captōs dīvideret. 5. Caesar Rōmā contenderat nē vīcī sociōrum ab hostibus oppugnārentur.

464. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Caesar asked the messengers to buy grain and carry it by carts to the wall. 2. The lieutenant will draw up a line of battle in order to increase the enemies' fear. 3. We ordered the senators to send ambassadors and make peace. 4. We shall send the boy home to read the book. 5. We send the lieutenant to persuade the soldiers not to leave the camp.

(*b*) 1. He informs us that some soldiers are hiding, others are retreating. 2. By great rewards the general will persuade two of the soldiers to carry up weapons to the cavalry. 3. The leader denies that the rear of his army is being conquered. 4. Caesar fought long and fiercely to conquer the enemies of Rome. 5. The Helvetians say that their villages are being seized and their fields divided.

ORAL EXERCISE

465. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Cūr vēnerat? 2. Quam diū lēgistī? 3. Quis ex magistrō quaesīvit ut librōs emeret? 4. Cūr nūntium ad vīcum mīsistī? 5. Mittēbārisne ut pugnārēs?

LESSON LXX

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (*Continued*). INDIRECT QUESTION

466. Review §§ 338, 339, and 342.

467. Tenses in Indirect Quotation. —

(1) The *same* time as that of the principal verb is denoted by the *present* infinitive.[1]

(2) Time *before* that of the principal verb is denoted by the *perfect* infinitive.[2]

(3) Time *after* that of the principal verb is denoted by the *future* infinitive.

(1) *He says that the soldiers are fighting.* **Dīcit mīlitēs pugnāre.**
(2) *He says that the soldiers have fought.* **Dīcit mīlitēs pugnāvisse.**
(3) *He says that the soldiers will fight.* **Dīcit mīlitēs pugnātūrōs esse.**

(1) *He said that the soldiers were being led.* **Dixit mīlitēs dūcī.**
(2) *He said that the soldiers had been led.* **Dixit mīlitēs ductōs esse.**
(3) *He said that the soldiers would be led.* **Dixit mīlitēs ductum īrī.**[3]

468. A Subordinate Clause in an indirect quotation is expressed in Latin by the subjunctive mood. The tense of the subjunctive usually depends upon the tense of the introductory verb, *i.e.*, the verb of saying, thinking, knowing, and usually follows the rule for the sequence of tenses.

Direct quotation. He says, "The soldiers are fighting because they are brave."

Indirect quotation.	*He says*	*that the soldiers are fighting*	*because they are brave.*
	Introductory verb	Principal clause in an indirect quotation	Subordinate clause in an indirect quotation
	Dīcit	**mīlitēs pugnāre**	**quod fortēs sint.**
	He said	*that the soldiers were fighting*	*because they were brave.*
	Dixit	**mīlitēs pugnāre**	**quod fortēs essent.**

[1] See § 659, *c*.
[2] See § 659, *d*.
[3] The future passive infinitive is seldom used.

469. VOCABULARY

castel'lum, -ī, n., *stronghold, fort.*
centu'riō, -ō'nis, m., *centurion.*
clā'mor, -ō'ris, m., *shout, noise.*
lī'berī, -ō'rum, m., *children.*
ni'hil (nīl), indeclinable noun, n., *nothing.*
senten'tia, -ae, f., *thought, opinion, feeling.*
compe'riō, -ī're, -perī, -per'tus, *find out, ascertain.*
cir'citer, adv., *about* (with numerals).
sem'per, adv., *always, ever.*

470. Indirect Question. — An indirect question follows a verb of knowing, asking, and the like and is a subordinate clause [1] introduced by an interrogative word or expression.[2] It is expressed by the subjunctive.

Direct Question	*Indirect Question*
Where were they? **Ubi erant?**	*He heard where they were.* **Audīvit ubi essent.**
Where are you? **Ubi es?**	*He knows where you are.* **Scit ubi sīs.**

471. *Translate and give the reason for the mood and tense of each subjunctive and infinitive:*

(*a*) 1. Centuriō ēnūntiāvit castellum propter vāllum altissimum ab hostibus nōn capī posse. 2. Quaeram ex Caesare cūr fortius nōn pugnāveris. 3. Putāvērunt montem ā mīlitibus Rōmānīs tenērī et castra eōrum ibi posita esse. 4. Rogāvī cui pecūnia darētur. 5. Per clāmōrēs intellēximus hostēs sē recēpisse ad montem quī nōn longē abesset.

(*b*) 1. Tē tuam sententiam dē rē pūblicā semper rogābō nē eās rēs ignōrēmus. 2. Exercitus circiter vīgintī mīlia passuum iter fēcit ut dux comperīret quem in locum hostēs sē abdidissent. 3. Sciō vōs nihil cōnfectūrōs esse sī eī persuādēre cupiātis. 4. Per magnōs clāmōrēs comperimus ubi līberī essent. 5. Caesar dīxerat centuriōnem quī dextrō cornū praeesset virum magnā virtūte esse.

---

[1] This subordinate clause is used substantively as an object. It is *not* the subordinate clause in indirect quotation referred to in § 468.

[2] Compare §§ 628 and 671.

472. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. My friends asked me why the children had remained there. 2. The centurions ordered the messengers to find out where the stronghold was. 3. Do you know by whom a thousand captives were killed? 4. Have you asked the captive why he always makes no reply (answers nothing)? 5. The shouts of the soldiers informed us that the Helvetians had resisted the attack, which had been severe.

(*b*) 1. I understand well why you always hesitated to remain home alone. 2. I thought the centurion himself would tell us about the villages and strongholds of the Helvetians. 3. We have always hesitated to ask you your opinion about the common peril. 4. We shall find out from him how many carts the enemy bought. 5. I denied that you had persuaded me to divide my fields.

ORAL EXERCISE

473. *Answer the following questions in Latin:*

1. Quis est amīcus centuriōnis? 2. Scīsne ubi līberī sint? 3. Potesne dīcere cūr centuriō captus sit? 4. Quid comperistī? 5. Num līberī respondent?

The Fourth and Fifth Kings

Post hunc[1] Ancus Mārcius, Numae nepōs, suscēpit imperium. Hic vir, aequitāte et religiōne avō similis, et in bellō et in pāce multās rēs prōsperē perfēcit. Vīcēsimō quārtō annō imperī morbō dēcessit.

Deinde rēgnum Lūcius Tarquinius Prīscus accēpit. Eum Ancus Mārcius tūtōrem fīliōrum relīquerat, sed is ab illīs rēgnum intercēpit. Senātōribus quōs Rōmulus creāverat centum aliōs addidit. Plūra bella fēlīciter gessit, et plūra opera pācis cōnfēcit. Trīcēsimō octāvō imperī annō per Ancī fīliōs, quōs ab rēgnō exclūserat, interfectus est.

---

[1] Tullus. See page 269.

LESSON LXXI

REVIEW

Ab ovo usque ad mala.—"From soup to nuts."[1]

474. Derivatives. — *A*. Write all the English words you can that seem to be derived from the following:

persuādeō	quaerō	currō	mandō	accēdō
senātor	tribuō[2]	tangō[2]	solvō[2]	negō

B. With the aid of an unabridged English dictionary study carefully the form and meaning of the following and compare with the Latin originals:

alibi	alias	responsible	volume
faculty	agent	dividend	salary

475. Form Drill. — 1. Give the formula for making each subjunctive tense, active and passive, in each of the four regular conjugations. 2. Conjugate **possum** and **capiō** through the subjunctive. 3. Name the nine adjectives of peculiar declension. 4. In what two cases do their peculiarities occur and what are the unusual endings? 5. Decline in the singular **tū sōlus.** 6. Write a synopsis of **iubeō** in the subjunctive active and passive third plural. 7. Give the locative case of **Rōma** and of **domus.**

476. Syntax Drill. — 1. Name the *principal* tenses in the indicative and in the subjunctive. 2. Name the *his-*

[1] Horace. Literally: *from the egg as far as to the apples*, in allusion to the Roman custom of beginning a meal with eggs and ending with apples.

[2] Consult the General Vocabulary for the meaning.

torical tenses in the indicative and in the subjunctive. 3. Give the rule for the sequence of tenses. 4. When is the perfect not a historical tense and how does the English usage help to explain this? 5. How do we express purpose? 6. What two kinds of purpose clauses are there? 7. Mention at least three Latin verbs that require a purpose clause as an object. 8. In each of the following English sentences state the introductory word, the mood and the tense that you would use to express in Latin the italicized portion. Explain your reasons.

He comes *to fight.*
He has come *to fight.*
He persuades him *not to fight.*

9. Write in Latin, using both **imperō** and **iubeō:** *He ordered the children to run.* 10. What case and mood follow **mandō, persuādeō, rogō?** 11. What preposition, case, and mood follow **postulō, quaerō?** 12. How are principal clauses in indirect discourse expressed in Latin? Subordinate clauses? Upon what does the verb in the subordinate clause depend for its tense? 13. How can an indirect question be recognized? What is meant by saying it is used substantively? 14. When is the locative case used in Latin? Give two examples of the locative. 15. How are the italicized words below expressed in Latin:

He went *to Rome, from Rome, home, from home, from the city.* He is *in Rome, at home, in the city.*

EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

477. 1. Utrī virō persuāsistī ut illam domum emeret? 2. Aliōs morte Caesar līberāvit, aliōs interficī iubēbit. 3. Tertiae legiōnī imperant nē novissimum agmen hostium oppugnet.

4. Scīmus Germānōs vīribus Gallōs superāvisse. 5. Helvētiī exercituī imperābunt ut circiter centum mīlia passuum ad castellum Rōmānōrum iter faciat. 6. Sī tē sententiam tuam rogō, semper respondēs tē nihil dē eā rē scīre. 7. Ā centuriōnibus dux quaesīvit quot vīcōs capere potuissent. 8. Omnēs mīlitēs domum remīsit nē ab hostibus interficerentur. 9. Imperātor mīlitibus imperāvit ut diū atque ācriter pugnārent. 10. Intellēximus equitēs hostium impetuī resistere nōn posse nam nostrī semper fortissimē pugnārent.

THE AMPHITHEATER AT VERONA.

Every Roman city of any size had its amphitheater. This was next to the Colosseum in size.

THE PUBLIC GAMES

When the city of Rome was still small and struggling for the mastery of the Mediterranean World, there was little time for the elaborate Public Games which later became the greatest delight of the Roman people. In those days simple

festivals were held in honor of the gods, just as the Greek games were held at Olympia and the religious festivals at Athens. The meaning of the festivals was then prominent, as was the meaning of the "Fourth of July" in this country not so many years ago.

As Rome became a great city and her wealth and leisure increased, Juvenal, a great Roman writer, protested that the Roman people cared for only two things — free bread and the Public Games. The days of the Public Games were then merely holidays, not holy days.

A Vestal Virgin.

About eighty years after the birth of Christ, the Flavian Amphitheater or Colosseum was completed at Rome. It was an immense oval bowl of stone and concrete with walls about one hundred and fifty feet in height and accommodated some 50,000 spectators in seats, with standing room for about 20,000 more. In the center was the sandy **arēna** where the contests were held.

On the days of the great games thousands flocked to this amphitheater early in the morning, prepared to spend the day. The best seats were reserved for the great officials, the nobility, and the wealthy. The Vestal Virgins had unusually choice seats and attended regularly, as did many other women of both noble and humble station.

The appeal of the Public Games shows one of the worst sides of the Roman character. Since the virtues of the Romans have been emphasized, it is only fair to note their

faults. Although the early Romans were frugal in their habits, obedient, and self-controlled, they were also often over-proud, coarse, greedy, and cruel. Their finest trait was the spirit of self-sacrifice for Rome and the public welfare and their ability to organize and work together for the common good.

LESSON LXXII

DEPONENT VERBS

Iucundius est carere quam frui. — *It is more blessed to give than to receive.*[1]

478. Deponent[2] **Verbs** have passive forms with active meanings. These verbs are found in each of the four regular conjugations and are distinguished by the ending of the present infinitive: **-ārī, -ērī, -ī, -īrī.**

(*a*) A deponent verb has a few *active forms;* the future infinitive, present and future participles, gerund, and supines. The gerundive always has a *passive meaning;* the perfect passive participle sometimes has a passive meaning.

479. VOCABULARY

cō'nor, -ā'rī, -ā'tus sum (with infin.), *try, attempt.*

hor'tor, -ā'rī, hortā'tus sum (with **ut** or **nē** and subj.), *urge, advise.*

mo'ror,[3] **-ā'rī, -ā'tus sum,** *delay.*

pa'tior, pa'tī, pas'sus sum (with infin.), *suffer, permit, allow.*

polli'ceor, -ē'rī, -itus sum (with fut. infin.), *promise.*

po'tior, -ī'rī, -ī'tus sum, *get possession of* (with abl.).

proficīs'cor, proficīs'cī, profec'tus sum, *set out.*

se'quor, se'quī, secū'tus sum, *follow.*

ū'tor, ū'tī, ū'sus sum, *use* (with abl.).

ve'reor, -ē'rī, -itus sum, *fear, be afraid.*

Note. — The direct object of **potior** and **ūtor** is put in the ablative. *I use the sword.* **Gladiō ūtor.**

---

[1] Cicero. Literally: *It is more pleasant to lack than to enjoy.*

[2] *Deponent* verbs are so named because they *lay aside* passive meanings.

[3] Do not confuse this with **morior, morī, mortuus sum,** *to die.*

480. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

patient sequel use revere exhort

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES ON FORMS

481. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Verēbimur, potiēmur, ūtiminī, morābimur, pollicēberis. 2. Sequeris, sequēris, verētur, potiētur, hortābātur. 3. Patiēbar, morātus est, potīrī, sequī. 4. Proficīscar, proficīscētur, ūtitur, ūtī, hortātī erant. 5. Hortātus est, cōnātus eram, patiēbātur.

(*b*) 1. To fear, he will have set out, I shall use, we promise. 2. He was getting possession of, they will follow, I use. 3. We shall follow, they had urged, you were trying. 4. To follow, we set out, he will follow, I shall permit. 5. They will use, to delay, they allowed, we had read.

EXERCISES

482. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Cōnābimur castrīs potīrī. 2. Gladiō optimē ūteris. 3. Imperātor exercitum hortātus est nē sē reciperet. 4. Imperātor pollicitus est sē ante proelium peditēs hortātūrum esse. 5. Putant trēs virōs tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī posse.

(*b*) 1. Proficīscentur ut senātōrēs videant. 2. Equitēs mīlia passuum multa hostēs secūtī sunt. 3. Ad urbem iter facimus nē senātōrēs impetūs hostium vereantur. 4. Morātī sumus in urbe tōtam noctem. 5. Pater fīliō imperāvit ut līberōs librōs bonōs legere paterētur.

483. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. All had set out at daybreak. 2. We shall follow the enemy about twenty miles. 3. The Helvetians used very many carts. 4. We tried to keep the enemy from the march. 5. The consul will urge the enemy to surrender themselves and all their possessions.

(*b*) 1. Caesar got possession of the larger part of the enemy's strongholds. 2. We promised that the ambassador would be at Rome late in the day. 3. We shall delay at Rome as long as possible. 4. The senator persuaded the general to allow the soldiers to divide the things captured from the enemy. 5. The commander-in-chief will get possession of all Gaul.

ORAL EXERCISE

484. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Cūr tēlō ūtēbāris? 2. Quid verēberis? 3. Quam diū morātī sunt? 4. Cūr Rōmam proficīscēmur? 5. Pollicēbāturne lēgātum ducem secūtūrum esse?

Servius Tullius

Post hunc [1] Servius Tullius, ex nōbilī fēminā nātus, captīvā tamen et servā, suscēpit imperium. Dum in domō Tarquinī Prīscī ēducātur, flamma in eius capite vīsa est. Hōc prōdigiō Tanaquil, Prīscī uxor, summam dignitātem eī portendī [2] intellēxit. Posteā rēx Serviō Tulliō fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dedit.

Servius Tullius bene rēgnum administrāvit. Prīmus omnium cēnsum habuit. Numerus cīvium Rōmānōrum fuit capitum octōgintā tria mīlium. Hic rēx interfectus est scelere fīliae Tulliae et Tarquinī Superbī, fīlī eius rēgis cui Servius successerat, nam ab ipsō Tarquiniō dē gradibus cūriae dēiectus interfectus est.

Fīliae singulāre scelus nārrātur. Uxor Tarquinī erat. In Forum properāvit, ut prīma coniugem rēgem (*as king*) salūtāret. Domum rediēns (*returning*) aurīgam super patris corpus, quod in viā iacēbat,[3] carpentum agere iussit. Servius Tullius rēgnāvit annōs quattuor et quadrāgintā.

---

[1] Tarquinius. See page 276. [2] Present passive infinitive.
[3] Not from **iaciō**.

LESSON LXXIII

SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT

Verbum sat sapienti.—A word to the wise is sufficient.[1]

485. Result is expressed by the subjunctive. *Affirmative* result is introduced by **ut,** *negative* by **ut . . . nōn.** The main clause often contains **tantus,** *so great,* **sīc, ita, tam,** *so,* or some word of similar meaning. The rule for sequence of tenses, § 461, should be followed.

The boy was so good that he was loved. **Puer tam bonus erat ut amārētur.**

Caesar's courage was so great that he could not be conquered. **Virtūs Caesaris tanta erat ut vincī nōn posset.**

(*a*) To distinguish purpose and result clauses try the following rule: if *that* means *in order that,* the clause is one of purpose; if *that* means *so that,* the clause is one of result.

486. VOCABULARY

cus'tōs, -ō'dis, m., *guard, watch, keeper.*

impedīmen'tum, -ī, n., *hindrance;* pl., *heavy baggage.*

suspī'ciō, -ō'nis, f., *suspicion.*

fu'giō, -ere, fū'gī, ——, *flee.*

pau'lō an'te, adv., *a little while before, a little while ago.*

pau'lum, adv., *a little, somewhat;* of time, *a little while.*

tan'tus, -a, -um, *so great, such great.*

ex'trā, prep. with acc., *outside, beyond.*

i'ta,[2] adv. (manner), *so.*

sīc, adv. (manner), *so, in this way.*

tam,[2] adv., *so* (degree).

plū'rimum pos'se, *to be most powerful, to have very great influence.*

---

[1] This is sometimes abbreviated: **verb. sat.,** or **verb. sap.**

[2] **Ita** and **sīc** are used with verbs, **tam** with adjectives and adverbs.

Note. — The accusative is often used adverbially to express degree or extent.

Plūrimum potest. *He is very powerful.*

Paulum morātus est. *He delayed a little* (*while*).

The ablative is often used adverbially with comparatives, also with **paulō, ante,** and **post,** to express the degree of difference.

Paulō ante vēnit. *He came a little while ago* (literally, *before by a little*).

Multō fortius pugnat. *He fights much more bravely* (literally, *more bravely by much*).

487. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

custodian fugitive impediment suspicious extraordinary

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES

488. *Translate; give the reason for the mood and tense of each verb:*

(*a*) 1. Paulō ante domī eram. 2. Rēgēs plūrimum poterant. 3. Ante sōlis occāsum paulum legēmus. 4. Nihil tam malum est ut peius esse nōn possit. 5. Tēlīs ita ūsī sunt ut ūnum ex hostibus interficerent.

(*b*) 1. Sīc pugnāre cōnātur ut ā duce bonō laudētur. 2. Imperātōrem hortātī sumus ut servum suspīciōne līberāret. 3. Brūtō[1] nūntiāre cōnātus est impedīmenta hostium capta esse. 4. Tantus timor mortis omnēs custōdēs occupāvit ut tēlīs nōn ūterentur. 5. Lēgātī perīculum tam timuērunt ut exercitum relinquerent et extrā moenia fugerent.

489. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. The bravest are the most powerful. 2. Did you know that the enemy had fled a little while ago? 3. The bravery of the Romans was so great that they could not be conquered. 4. The boy read so that no one could understand (him). 5. The guard saw such great danger that he did not allow the women to leave the town.

---

[1] **Brūtus, -ī,** m., *Brutus.*

(*b*) 1. The soldiers were so brave that they easily conquered the forces of the Helvetians. 2. They denied that the right wing of the army had fled outside the rampart. 3. The citizens tried to flee from the fire. 4. They used their swords so well that they killed many of the enemy. 5. The leader promised that the cohorts would not delay, but would take possession of the enemy's heavy baggage.

ORAL EXERCISE

490. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Estne puer tam bonus ut ab omnibus amētur? 2. Num Caesar impedīmentīs potiēbātur? 3. Nōnne Caesar apud Rōmānōs plūrimum potuit? 4. Fugiēbatne Rōmā ob suspīciōnēs inimīcōrum? 5. Quam longē exercitum sequēris?

The Public Games (*Continued*)

Gladiators, so-called from the **gladius** or sword with which they fought, were usually criminals, captives, or slaves. Great training schools for gladiators were established, and for a fixed price one could hire as many fighters as he wished. If unusual rivalry was desired, gladiators from different "schools" were hired. There was a regular price for fighting, and, besides, the head of the "school" had to be paid additional money for each gladiator who was killed.

Gladiator Killing a Tiger.

The gladiatorial contests were usually held in the afternoon. Sometimes there were contests between gladiators in chariots or mounted on horseback. The most enjoyable, however, were the contests between a

soldier with heavy armor and a sword and his opponent who had no armor, but only a net and a three-pronged spear. The "netter" tried to entangle his adversary and stab him before he could get loose. One relied on his armor and weapons, the other on his speed.

In other contests it was often the custom to have wild beasts fight against each other and against gladiators. Sometimes there would be a number of criminals who were thrown into the arena with the beasts.

Two customs in connection with the gladiatorial contests are more or less familiar and worthy of comment. When the gladiators entered the arena in a procession, they halted before the seat of the one who was in charge of the games and chanted, **"Nōs moritūrī tē salūtāmus,"** "We who are about to die salute you." This is often quoted.

The second custom relates to the sign for mercy when a gladiator had been overcome. If the spectators wished to show mercy, they made a certain signal with their thumbs (what that signal was we do not know). If not, they turned their thumbs down. So "thumbs down" now signifies to deny or refuse a request.

LESSON LXXIV

FERŌ AND ITS COMPOUNDS

Qui transtulit sustinet. — *He who has brought us across (the sea) sustains us.*[1]

491. Learn the peculiar conjugation of the *present indicative* of **ferō,** § 616, and note that the rest of the forms in the indicative and subjunctive, as well as the infinitives and participles, active and passive, are formed regularly and need cause no difficulty. See § 457.

492. VOCABULARY

fe'rō, fer're, tu'lī, lā'tus, *bear, carry.*

cōn'ferō,[2] **cōnfer're, con'tulī, collā'tus,** *bring together, collect;* (with **sē**), *betake one's self, move, go.*

dif'ferō, differ're, dis'tulī, dīlā'tus, *scatter; differ.*

ef'ferō, effer're, ex'tulī, ēlā'tus, *bring out, carry away.*

īn'ferō, īnfer're, in'tulī, illā'tus, *bring in, upon* or *against.*

bel'lum īnfer're, *to make (offensive) war on* (used with dat.).

sig'na īnfer're, *to advance.*

expug'nō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *take by storm.*

Rhē'nus, -ī, m., *the Rhine.*

audāc'ter, adv., *boldly.*

ita'que, adv. conj., *and so.*

493. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

transfer conference infer differ

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

---

[1] The motto of Connecticut.

[2] Notice the way the accent of the principal parts of compounds of **ferō** swings back and forth like a pendulum.

EXERCISES ON FORMS

494. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Fers, fertur, lātus erit, feram. 2. Distulit, differet, differimus, distulerō. 3. Intulistī, īnferent, intulerat. 4. Collātī erant, feruntur, fert, fertis. 5. Tulērunt, īnfert, tulistī, cōnferam.

(*b*) 1. We differ, he will bring in. 2. They had carried out, we collect, you (*sing.*) carry. 3. They will have collected, he is being carried. 4. They had differed, you (*plu.*) have carried. 5. We shall scatter, they advanced.

EXERCISES

495. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Scīmus Caesarem Germānīs bellum audācter intulisse. 2. Inter sē linguā lēgibusque differunt. 3. Trāns Rhēnum sē cōnferent nē ab exercitū Rōmānōrum vincī possint. 4. Decima legiō signa īnfert itaque urbem expugnat. 5. Sē suaque omnia Caesarī trādidērunt.

(*b*) 1. Quis castrīs praeest? 2. Rōmānī cum Germānīs bellum gessērunt. 3. Iniūriās rēgis malī ferre nōn possumus. 4. Galliae bellum īnferēmus. 5. Nostrī virtūte Gallīs praestitērunt itaque facillimē eōs vincere potuērunt.

496. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. They collected all their weapons into the towns. 2. Brutus made war on his enemies. 3. The infantry and the cavalry differ from each other. 4. We marched many miles that we might make war on the chiefs. 5. The leader ordered the van to advance boldly with a shout and so (*sīc*) to scatter the enemy.

(*b*) 1. The troops of the allies were placed on the left wing. 2. The king said that the captive had been carried away. 3. We asked who he was and why he had come. 4. The Gauls who were across the Rhine surrendered to their conqueror. 5. They could not bring aid to their men.

ORAL EXERCISE

497. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Timēsne tū maximē mortem? 2. Nōnne mīlitēs signa īnferent? 3. Interfectusne erat centuriō? 4. Cūr animālia omnēs in partēs ferēbantur? 5. Quibus Rōmānī bellum intulērunt?

Tarquin the Proud

Tarquinius Superbus cognōmen mōribus meruit. Bellō tamen fortis plūrimōs fīnitimōs populōs vīcit. Templum Iovis [1] in Capitōliō aedificāvit. Posteā, dum urbem Ardeam oppugnat, propter scelus fīlī imperium āmīsit. Nam fīlius Lūcrētiae,[2] nōbilissimae fēminae, coniugī Tarquinī Collātīnī, vim fēcit. Tum haec sē ipsa occīdit.

Hanc ob causam Lūcius Brūtus et Collātīnus et aliī in rēgem inter sē coniūrāvērunt et portās urbis clausērunt. Exercitus quoque rēgem relīquit. Fūgit statim rēx cum uxōre et līberīs. Ita Rōmae rēgnātum est [3] per septem rēgēs annōs ducentōs quadrāgintā quīnque.

---

[1] See **Iuppiter** in the General Vocabulary.

[2] Dative, with **vim fēcit.**

[3] *I.e., royal power continued.*

LESSON LXXV

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

Ars est celare artem.—Art conceals art.[1]

498. Pronouns which do not refer to definite persons or things are called **indefinite pronouns.** As an indefinite pronoun the simple form **quis** (substantive), **quī** (adjective) is not common, except in combinations like **sī quis** and **nē quis.**

1. The substantive forms are:

M. and F.	Neut.
aliquis, *some one.*	**aliquid,** *something.*
quisque, *each one, every one.*	**quidque,** *everything.*

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
quīdam	**quaedam**	**quiddam,** *a certain one, a certain thing.*

2. The adjective forms are:

aliquī	**aliqua**	**aliquod,** *any.*
quisque	**quaeque**	**quodque,** *each.*
quīdam	**quaedam**	**quoddam,** *a certain.*

In indefinite pronouns only the pronominal root is declined. **M** is changed to **n** before **d**; **quendam,** not **quemdam.**

3. **A'liquis,** *some one.*

	Singular		Plural		
	M. and F.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	a'liquis	a'liquid	a'liquī	a'liquae	a'liqua
Gen.	alicu'ius	alicu'ius	aliquō'rum	aliquā'rum	aliquō'rum
Dat.	a'licui	a'licui	ali'quibus	ali'quibus	ali'quibus
Acc.	a'liquem	a'liquid	a'liquōs	a'liquās	a'liqua
Abl.	a'liquō	a'liquō	ali'quibus	ali'quibus	ali'quibus

[1] Literally: *Art is the concealing of art.*

499. VOCABULARY

ini'tium, ini'tī, n., *beginning.*
ar'mō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *arm, equip.*
re'ferō, refer're, ret'tulī, relā'tus, *bring back, report.*
rever'tor, rever'tī (inf.), **rever'tī** (perf.), **rever'sus** (perf. part., deponent), *turn back, return.* The perfect stem tenses (except the participle) are from the active, the others from the deponent.
susci'piō, -ere, -cē'pī, -cep'tus, *take up, undertake.*
quan'tus, -a, -um, *how great? how much?*
inte'reā, adv., *in the meantime, meanwhile.*
pro'pe, adv., *near by, near, nearly;* as prep., with acc., *near.*
a'liquis, a'liquid (**a'liquī, a'liqua, a'liquod,** adj.), *some one, something, some* (as adj.).
quī'dam, quae'dam, quid'dam (**quod'dam,** adj.), *a certain one; a certain one of* (with **ē** or **ex** and the abl.); as adj., *a certain.*
quis'que, quid'que (**quis'que, quae'que, quod'que,** adj.), *every one, each, every.*

Note. — **Quīdam** does *not* take the genitive, although the English suggests it, when **quīdam** is used substantively. *Certain of the men came.* **Quīdam ē virīs vēnērunt.**

Note the effect of the prefix **re** (**red**), *back* or *again*, when used in compound verbs: **referō,** *bring back.* Study the meaning of the following verbs, using the General Vocabulary if necessary:

recipiō, revertor, repellō, retineō, removeō, remittō, reddō.

500. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

initial refer quantity revert

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES

501. *Translate, telling to what class each pronoun belongs:*

(*a*) 1. Quīdam ē Gallīs aliquem ad tē mittent. 2. Quisque multō diē profectus est et prope ad flūmen pervēnit. 3. Ab hīs quaesīvit quae cīvitātēs quantaeque arma suscēpissent.

4. Paulum frūmentī quemque domō efferre iubent. 5. Multī cīvēs auxilium ā suīs amīcīs petīvērunt.

(*b*) 1. Quaedam legiō Rōmam revertētur, et alicui victōriam nūntiābit. 2. Lēgātus pollicētur sē hōc vāllō potītūrum esse quod prope sit. 3. Extrēma pars huius librī difficilior quam initium est. 4. Eōdem tempore quīdam ex hostibus et aliī quī cum eīs fuerant sē in castra recipiēbant. 5. Lēgātī haec [1] sē ad suōs relātūrōs esse dīxērunt et post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; intereā Caesarem nē castra movēret hortātī sunt.

502. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. The king gave arms to some one. 2. It is more difficult to make an end of this speech than a beginning. 3. This task cannot be undertaken by everyone. 4. We do not know how great a number can return. 5. After the battle Caesar ordered [2] the soldiers to arm the allies.

(*b*) 1. A certain one of the messengers will return boldly to report all these things to Caesar. 2. Certain barbarians had encamped near by, across a river of great depth. 3. She is distinguished and so I prefer her to all my other friends. 4. This man was a sailor, that man a farmer. 5. The cavalry will drive their horses into the territory of the Belgians, and in the meantime the leader will learn something about the army of the enemy.

---

[1] See § 21. [2] Write in two ways, using **imperō** and **iubeō**.

LESSON LXXVI

REVIEW

Mens aequa in arduis.—A mind serene in difficulties.[1]

503. Derivatives. — *A*. Write all the English words you can which seem to be derived from the following:

differō	īnferō	ferō	quantus
initium	referō	revertor	ūtor
vereor	praesum	cōnferō	fugiō
potior	sequor	loquor[2]	arbitror[2]

B. With the aid of an unabridged English dictionary, study carefully the form and meaning of the following and compare with the Latin originals:

patient	nihilist	libretto	bounty
rapture	supporter	cordial	graduation

504. Form Drill. — 1. Define a deponent verb and give the present infinitive endings of deponents in the four conjugations. 2. How is it possible to tell to what conjugation a deponent verb belongs? 3. Conjugate **sequor** through the indicative and subjunctive moods; give all the infinitives and participles, with their meanings. 4. Give a synopsis of each of the following in the indicative and subjunctive, third person plural: **hortor, polliceor, ūtor, potior.** 5. What *active forms* do deponent verbs have?

[1] Motto on the statue of Warren Hastings in Calcutta. The words are based on a famous expression of Horace.

[2] Consult the General Vocabulary for the meaning.

What form always has a *passive meaning?* 6. Conjugate the present indicative active and passive of **ferō**; give a synopsis of **ferō** in the indicative and subjunctive, third person singular, active and passive. 7. Decline **aliquis, quisque, quīdam.** What happens to **m** before a **d** in **quīdam?**

505. Special Drill. — 1. How is **uter** used and what does it mean? 2. What case and mood follow **iubeō? imperō?** 3. When *must* the genitive be used to express description? 4. What cases follow **petō?**

EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

506. 1. Audīvimus quae et quanta oppida expugnārentur. 2. Liber tam gravis erat ut ā puerō parvō efferrī nōn posset. 3. Rēgis amor pācis tantus erat ut proeliō mīlitēs prohibēre cōnārētur. 4. Paulō ante lēgātus custōdibus persuāserat nē extrā vāllum fugerent sed ut audācter tēlīs ūterentur. 5. Imperātor cum suīs custōdibus prīmā lūce proficīscētur ut impedīmentīs hostium potiātur. 6. Ubi nostrōs virtūte aliīs parēs esse intellēxit, mīlitibus imperāvit ut signa īnferrent. 7. Id quōsdam ē captīvīs rogāvī ut comperīrem quam in partem agmen sē cōntulisset. 8. Sentīmus hostēs nōbīs bellum īnferre cōnārī quod domō profectī sunt. 9. Scīvērunt equitātum cui Brūtus praepositus esset in Germāniam missum esse. 10. Cuique quī suscēperit id officium praemium dabō.

507. Syntax Drill. — 1. What *two* verbs govern the ablative? 2. How is a *result* clause expressed in Latin? How is *negative* result introduced? How is *negative* purpose introduced? 3. How do you test the conjunction "that" in an English sentence to know whether the following clause should be expressed as a *purpose* clause or as a *result* clause in Latin? 4. **Imperātor tam celeriter venit ut hostēs impedīmentīs potīrī nōn possint.** Change **venit** to **vēnit** and com-

plete the sentence. 5. What construction follows **quīdam** when it means "certain of ——"? 6. Explain the use of the adverbial accusative and adverbial ablative.

Tarpeia

Sabīnī cum Rōmānīs bellum gerēbant et agrōs Rōmānōrum occupābant. Rōmam exercitum dūxērunt et urbem intrāvērunt sed Capitōlium capere nōn poterant. Ubi ab Capitōliō nōn longē āfuērunt, puellam Tarpeiam, fīliam ducis Rōmānī, portantem aquam extrā moenia vīdērunt.

Dux Sabīnōrum putāvit puellam in Capitōlium exercitum dūcere posse, itaque dīxit sē Tarpeiae praemium datūrum esse. Puella ab eō postulāvit ut sibi (*her*) daret rēs quās in sinistrīs manibus Sabīnī gererent.

The Tarpeian Rock.

Sabīnī aureōs ānulōs et armillās in sinistrīs manibus gerēbant. Brevī tempore Sabīnī in Capitōliō stant et Tarpeiae praemium dare parant. In puellam scūta iaciunt, nam scūta quoque Sabīnōrum erant in sinistrīs manibus. Tarpeia interficitur; Sabīnī Capitōlium occupant.

The Public Games (*Continued*)

The contests that stood highest in the favor of the Roman people were the chariot races. In the early days of Rome a valley between two of the seven hills of Rome provided a natural race course where the spectators could sit on the hillsides and watch the chariot races. Later, wooden benches were provided, then seats of stones, and eventually there were seats for 385,000 people, according to some accounts. Finally, the rough seats were replaced by seats of marble, and beautifully decorated covered stands were provided for the nobility. Here again we see the popularity of sports in antiquity and the immense accommodations which were provided for the crowds.

In the center of the race course was a long, narrow "backbone" or **spīna,** as the Romans called it, around which the chariots raced. On this were placed beautiful statues, columns, and trophies. Beyond the ends of the spina were the **mētae,** barriers around which the chariots turned. Since the spina was narrow, the turns were very sharp and therefore the most dangerous points in the race. Ordinarily there were seven laps in each race. On the ends of the spina there were seven marble dolphins and seven eggs of huge size, one of which was removed at the end of each lap to signal to the charioteers the number of laps left. Immense sums of money were wagered on these races, and the charioteer who won frequently became a great public favorite and amassed a large fortune. The charioteers, however, were usually foreigners and slaves and were looked down upon as a class. The four-horse chariots with their plunging horses and their bold drivers presented a thrilling spectacle, particularly as they grazed the turns at each end of the course.

LESSON LXXVII

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

Consule Planco. — When Plancus was consul.[1]

508. The ablative absolute consists of two words in the ablative case loosely connected grammatically with the rest of the sentence. It may consist of

(1) a substantive and a participle, **signō datō.**

(2) a substantive and an adjective, **perīculō magnō.**

(3) two substantives, **Caesare imperātōre.**

The Ablative Absolute is usually best translated by a clause. It generally denotes time, cause, condition, or concession. The substantive in the Ablative Absolute never denotes the same person or thing as the subject or object of the main verb.

The participle and the adjective must agree with the substantive in gender, number, and case.

1. **Signō datō, oppidum oppugnāvērunt.** (*The signal having been given*) *When the signal had been given, they attacked the town.*

2. **Perīculō magnō, Caesar signum dedit.** (*The danger* [*being*] *great*) *Since the danger was great, Caesar gave the signal.*

3. **Caesare imperātōre, ad victōriam exercitus dūcētur.** (*Caesar* [*being*] *general*) *If Caesar is general, the army will be led to victory.*

4. **Multīs mīlitibus āmissīs, oppidum expugnāvimus.** (*Many soldiers having been lost*) *Although many soldiers had been lost, we took the town by storm.*

Note. — The verb **sum** has no present participle. Consequently the connecting word *being* cannot be expressed in the Latin of 2 and 3, but must be supplied in the translation.

---

[1] Horace. An expression used by the Romans for "in the good old days."

509. Perfect Participles. — There is no perfect active participle in Latin. We cannot put literally into Latin: *The leader, having given the signal, fought bravely.* There is no Latin word meaning *having given;* but the same idea may be expressed by changing the participle to the passive and making it agree with *signal* in the ablative instead of with *leader* in the nominative.

The signal having been given, the leader fought bravely. **Signō datō, dux fortiter pugnāvit.**

(*a*) Such an ablative absolute may be rendered as an independent coördinate clause: *The leader gave the signal and fought bravely.*

(*b*) A deponent verb has a perfect participle with an active meaning; so no change is necessary in the case of a deponent verb. *Having encouraged the Remi, Caesar ordered the entire senate to come to him.* **Caesar, Rēmōs hortātus, tōtum senātum ad sē convenīre iussit.**

510. VOCABULARY

col'ligō, -ere, collē'gī, collēc'tus, *gather, collect.*

tol'lō, -ere, sus'tulī, sublā'tus, *lift, remove.*

tri'buō, -ere, tri'buī, tribū'tus, *assign, grant, distribute.*

distri'buō, -ere, -tri'buī, -tribū'tus, *divide, apportion, distribute.*

aedifi'cium, aedifi'cī, n., *building.*

Gal'ba, -ae, m., *Galba.*

immortā'lis, -e, *immortal.*

invic'tus, -a, -um, *unconquered, invincible.*

incen'dō, -ere, -cen'dī, -cēn'sus, *set on fire, burn* (with acc.).

(*a*) Note the effect of the prefix, **dis-**, *apart, in different directions,* when used in compound verbs: **distribuō,** *apportion in different directions.* Study the meaning of the following verbs, using the General Vocabulary, if necessary:

differō dīmittō discēdō dispōnō dispellō

(*b*) Note the effect of the suffix **-ium,** denoting something connected with the action of the verb, either the act itself or the result: **aedificō,** *build;* **aedificium,** *a building.* Study

the meanings of the following words, using the General Vocabulary, if necessary.

studium	cōnsilium	maleficium
imperium	colloquium	subsidium

511. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

edifice	invincible	incendiary	collection
tribute	extol	distribution	incense

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES

512. *Translate; render ablatives absolute both literally and by clauses, and decide which makes the better English:*

(*a*) 1. Spē dēpositā, fūgērunt. 2. Cūr, pāce factā, diūtius pugnātis? 3. Omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris cum omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt. 4. Intereā mīlitēs legiōnum duārum, ē castrīs profectī, in summō monte ab hostibus vidēbantur. 5. Hīs rēbus gestīs, Belgae statim lēgātōs mīsērunt ad Caesarem quī[1] sē trāditūrōs esse pollicērentur.

(*b*) 1. Hostēs ōrdinem agminis Caesaris nōn cognōvērunt. 2. Omnem equitātum quī[2] novissimum agmen morārētur praemīsit. 3. Hīs cōpiīs collēctīs, Brūtus, cui prōvincia tribūta erat, plūrimum poterat. 4. Galba dīxit deōs immortālēs huic invictō populō auxilium esse lātūrōs. 5. Caesar, armīs omnibus in oppidum collēctīs, exercituī frūmentum distribuit.

513. *Translate, expressing the subordinate clauses by the use of the ablative absolute when possible:*

(*a*) 1. While Caesar is leader, our forces are invincible. 2. Since many soldiers had been lost, the commander received recruits into his army. 3. When the cavalry had been sent ahead, the general ordered the infantry to follow without fear.

---

[1] quī = ut eī. [2] quī here = ut is.

4. Having burned all the buildings and removed the women and children from the city, they collected the guards and awaited the enemy. 5. When these things have been done, they fortify the towns and carry the grain[1] out of the fields into the towns.

(*b*) 1. It is easier to promise than to do. 2. The senate was very powerful among the Romans. 3. When the letters had been received, Caesar enlisted two brave legions in Gaul. 4. We distributed money to the allies and hastened home as quickly as possible. 5. The senate makes as good laws as possible that it may remove the fear of harm.

Domus Rōmāna

Pictūram domūs Rōmānae vidēmus. Ante iānuam erat vēstibulum. Cōnsuētūdō erat in līmine "Salvē"[2] scrībere.

A Pompeian Mosaic.

Iānitor ad iānuam saepe stābat. Ibi canis saepe erat, aut in solō (*floor*) pictūra canis cum verbīs "Cavē[3] canem" vidērī poterat. Super iānuam est scrīptum, "Nihil intret[4] malī."

Interior domus in trēs partēs dīvīsa est. Prīma pars appellāta est ātrium. Ibi in mediō tēctō apertum spatium relictum est. Pluvia per id spatium in impluvium dēscendēbat. In ātriō dominus suōs amīcōs accipiēbat. Pariēs pictūrīs saepe montium, animālium, virōrum, fēminārum pulchrē ōrnātus est. In tablīnō, quod ātriō proximum erat, dominum pecūniam servāvisse nōnnūllī putant.

---

[1] See page 36, footnote 2.

[2] Imperative of **salveō**.

[3] Imperative of **caveō**.

[4] Subjunctive to express a wish (prayer). *Let no evil (nothing of evil) enter.*

THE COURT OF A ROMAN HOUSE.

Tertia pars domūs et pulcherrima erat peristȳlium. Hīc pulchrī flōrēs et fontēs columnīs marmoreīs inclūsī sunt. Inter tablīnum et peristȳlium vēlum erat. Sī domus fenestrās habēbat, in superiōre parte parietis erant et parvae.

LESSON LXXVIII

SUBJUNCTIVE WITH *CUM*

Abeunt studia in mores. — Pursuits pass over into habits.[1]

514. Clauses introduced by *cum* may denote *circumstance, time, cause,* or *concession.*

515. *Cum* Circumstantial. — Cum, meaning *when,* takes the subjunctive to denote the circumstances under which an action took place. This use is found only in the imperfect and pluperfect tenses.

When this had been announced to Caesar, he set out from the city. **Caesar, cum hoc eī nūntiātum esset, ab urbe profectus est.**

(*a*) When the **cum** clause merely fixes the time of the action or state described by the principal clause, the verb is put in the indicative, perfect tense. This is sometimes called **cum** *temporal.*

When Caesar came into Gaul, the Aedui were the leaders. **Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, prīncipēs erant Aeduī.**

516. *Cum* Causal. — Cum, meaning *since* (*because*), regularly takes the subjunctive, in any tense.

Since we are fighting bravely, we shall not be conquered. **Cum fortiter pugnēmus, nōn vincēmur.**

Since they were retreating, we attacked the town. **Cum sē reciperent, oppidum oppugnāvimus.**

517. *Cum* Concessive. — Cum, meaning *although,* takes the subjunctive, in any tense.

Although we had set fire to the town, they did not surrender. **Cum oppidum incendissēmus, nōn sē dēdidērunt.**

---

[1] Ovid.

Although Caesar thought that the Roman legions were invincible, he did not hasten into Gaul. **Caesar cum legiōnēs Rōmānās esse invictās exīstimāret, in Galliam nōn contendit.**

(*a*) The tense usage in all these subjunctive clauses is the same as that described in § 461.

518. VOCABULARY

cala'mitās, -ā'tis, f., *disaster.*
cau'sa, -ae, f., *cause, reason.*
cau'sā (governs the genitive, which it always follows, as an expression of purpose), *for the sake of.*
me'tus, -ūs, m., *fear.*
mō'tus, -ūs, m., *movement, commotion, revolt.*
rū'mor, -ō'ris, m., *rumor, report.*
cē'terī, -ae, -a, *all the others, the rest.*
af'ferō, -fer're, at'tulī, allā'tus, *bring.*
trādū'cō, -dū'cere, -dūx'ī, -duc'tus, *lead across* (with two accusatives).
repe'riō, -ī're, rep'perī, reper'tus, *find, discover.*
ta'men, adv., *nevertheless, still, however.*
cum, conj., *when, since, although;* **cum prī'mum,** *as soon as,* used with the indicative.

Note. — **Trādūcō** governs two accusatives. *He led the army across the bridge.* **Exercitum pontem trādūxit.** Sometimes **trāns** is also used. **Exercitum trāns pontem trādūxit.**

Note the effect of the prefix **trāns** (**trā**), *across,* when used in compound verbs: **trādūcō,** *lead across.* Study the meaning of the following verbs, using the General Vocabulary if necessary: **trānseō, trādō, trānsportō, trānsferō, trānsmittō, trānscrībō.**

519. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

etc. calamity commotion rumor traduce

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES

520. *Translate, giving the reason for the mood and tense of each verb:*

(*a*) 1. Cum esset Caesar in Galliā, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur. 2. Cum tēla sua āmīsisset, pugnāre nōn potuit.

3. Cum metus calamitātis magnus sit, tamen centuriōnēs signa īnferunt. 4. Cum prīmum Caesar proelium commīsit, mīlitēs hostium in ūnum locum collēctōs audācter pugnāre intellēxit. 5. Sī līberōs amāmus, in potestāte hostium diūtius manēre nōn possumus.

(*b*) 1. Cum ab hīs quaereret quae cīvitātēs in armīs essent, causam bellī repperit. 2. Dare melius est quam accipere. 3. Hāc rē factā, duābus legiōnibus relictīs, cēterās sex legiōnēs ex castrīs ēdūxit. 4. Metū sublātō partem suārum cōpiārum flūmen magnā lātitūdine trādūcere cōnātī sunt ut castra expugnārent. 5. Multa dē stellīs atque eārum mōtū, dē terrae magnitūdine, dē deōrum immortālium vīribus et potestāte scīmus.

521. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Although they have received wounds, they fight for the sake of power. 2. When these other things had been learned, Caesar then conquered the Gauls and removed the fear of revolt. 3. Although we have found out many things about the stars, there is much[1] which we do not know. 4. When the legions had been left in the camp, the general led the rest of the soldiers across the territory of the enemy. 5. Although rumors of disaster had been brought to us, yet we did not give up hope.

(*b*) 1. When the people had been informed concerning the death of the consul, many declared that he had been an excellent man. Some, however, thought otherwise. 2. She excels her brother in diligence. 3. Caesar has assigned part of the army to Brutus in order that he may attack the enemy on the left wing. 4. Although they were men of great power and courage, nevertheless they were not invincible. 5. As soon as we found out who had been bringing evil reports about us, we did not trust those men longer.

---

[1] *There is much = There are many things.*

LESSON LXXIX

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

Si monumentum requiris, circumspice. — *If you seek a monument, look about you.*[1]

522. A Conditional Sentence consists of two parts: (*a*) the *conditional clause* and (*b*) the *conclusion*. For example, in the sentence, *If you say this, you are wrong*, the clause introduced by *if* is the conditional clause, while *you are wrong* is the conclusion.

There are different kinds of conditional sentences. Latin usage closely resembles the English. Conditions are usually introduced by **sī**, *if*.

523. Conditional Sentences of Fact. — Sometimes the conditional clause assumes something to be true, and the conclusion contains a statement of fact. In this case the indicative is used both in the conditional clause and in the conclusion.

If Caesar is fighting, he is conquering. **Caesar**[2] **sī pugnat, vincit.**

If the boy was good, he was being praised. **Puer sī bonus erat, laudābātur.**

524. Conditional Sentences of Doubt. — In this class the conclusion states that something *would* take place if a

[1] Motto on the tomb of Sir Christopher Wren in St. Paul's Cathedral, London, of which Wren was the architect. From this was adapted the motto of Michigan: **Sī quaeris pēnīnsulam amoenam, circumspice.** *If you seek a delightful peninsula, look about you.*

[2] In Latin a word serving as common subject or object of the main clause and a subordinate clause usually stands before the subordinating conjunction, without punctuation mark.

certain condition *should* be fulfilled. This is the statement not of a *fact*, as in the first class, but of an *idea* depending upon something about which there is a doubt. Both verbs are put in the subjunctive, usually present tense.

If Caesar should fight, he would conquer. **Caesar sī pugnet, vincat.**
If the boy should be good, he would be praised. **Puer sī bonus sit, laudētur.**

525. Conditional Sentences Contrary to Fact. — Both conclusions and conditions that are *contrary to fact* are expressed by the subjunctive. The use of the tenses should be carefully noted. If the thing is contrary to fact *at the present time*, the imperfect is used; if it was contrary to fact *in the past*, the pluperfect is used.

If Caesar were fighting, he would be conquering. **Caesar sī pugnāret, vinceret.**

This implies that Caesar is *not* fighting and so is *not* conquering. It is a condition in present time contrary to fact.

If Caesar had fought, he would have conquered. **Caesar sī pugnāvisset, vīcisset.**

This implies the same as the last sentence except that the time is past instead of present.

526. VOCABULARY

Ae'duus, -ī, m., *an Aeduan.*
Catilī'na, -ae, m., *Catiline.*
dēfēn'sor, -ō'ris, m., *defender, protector.*
ho'nor, -ō'ris, m., *honor, esteem, worth.*
tur'-ris, -is (-ium), f., *tower.*
ver'bum, -ī, n., *word;* plural, *speech.*
ēri'piō, -ere, ēri'puī, ērep'tus, *snatch away, free;* **sē ēri'pere,** *escape.*
nū'dō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *strip bare, leave unprotected.*
num'quam, adv., *never.*
nōn mo'do . . . sed e'tiam, adv., *not only . . . but also.*
ni'si, conj., *if not, unless.*

Note the effect of the suffix **-tor (-sor)** when combined with a verb stem: **dēfēnsor,** *defender*, one who defends. Study

the meaning of the following nouns, using the General Vocabulary, if necessary:

explōrātor victor imperātor ōrātor competītor rēctor

Equivalent English suffixes are *-er*, *-tor*, *-sor*.

527. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

honor verbal nude turret

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

528. SUMMARY OF CONDITIONS

CLASS	TIME	MOOD	TENSE	ILLUSTRATION
Fact	Present	Indicative	Present	1. *If Caesar is fighting, he is conquering.* **Caesar sī pugnat, vincit.**
	Past		Imperfect or Perfect	2. *If Caesar was fighting, he was conquering.* **Caesar sī pugnābat, vincēbat.** *If Caesar fought, he conquered.* **Caesar sī pugnāvit, vīcit.**
	Future		Future	3. *If Caesar fights, he will conquer.* **Caesar sī pugnābit, vincet.** See Note.
Doubt	Future	Subjunctive	Present	*If Caesar should fight, he would conquer.* **Caesar sī pugnet, vincat.**
Contrary to Fact	Present	Subjunctive	Imperfect	1. *If Caesar were fighting, he would be conquering.* **Caesar sī pugnāret, vinceret.**
	Past		Pluperfect	2. *If Caesar had fought, he would have conquered.* **Caesar sī pugnāvisset, vīcisset.**

Note. — Observe carefully the difference between the tenses used in the *conditional clause* in English and in Latin. The English uses, "If Caesar

fights (*present*), he will conquer." The Latin more correctly uses, "If Caesar shall fight (*future*), he will conquer." **Caesar sī pugnābit, vincet.**

EXERCISES

529. *Translate, first giving the mood, tense, and consequent time and class of each conditional sentence:*

(*a*) 1. Sī bonī essēmus, laudārēmur. 2. Sī perīculum videāmus, nōn timeāmus. 3. Rēx sī bene rēxisset, nōn interfectus esset. 4. Sī pater tuus Rōmānus est, tū Rōmānus es. 5. Sī perīculum cognōscās, nōn modo tē ēripiās sed etiam nōs moneās.

(*b*) 1. Urbēs[1] sī bene dēfenderentur, capī numquam possent. 2. Urbs sī nūdābitur, dēfendī nōn poterit. 3. Sī tēlīs ūtī potuissent, nōn victī essent. 4. Puerī sī bonōs sociōs habērent, nōn pugnārent. 5. Sī oppidum mūniātur, id capere nōn possīmus.

530. *Translate, first noticing what time and thought are expressed and what mood and tense are required:*

(*a*) 1. If I were you, I should be better. 2. If you can run, I can follow you. 3. If you had delayed longer, we never should have been able to snatch you away from the fire. 4. If we should make an end of the battle, many would survive. 5. If the attack had been made as quickly as possible, the enemy would have fled.

(*b*) 1. If the king should return home, not only his friends but his former enemies would receive him. 2. If the Aeduans are[2] brave, the town will be taken by storm. 3. If Catiline had brought war on us, we should have sent him from the state. 4. If you have been good, you have been praised. 5. If the rest had fled, we should have discovered their flight.

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES

531. *Translate, first giving mood, etc., as in* § 529:

(*a*) 1. Sī urbs ā nōbīs dēfendātur, hostēs eam nōn capere possint. 2. Sī illīs verbīs ūsus esset, ē perīculō numquam sē ēripuisset.

---

[1] See footnote 2 on page 307. [2] See note, § 528.

3. Oppidum sī dēfēnsōribus nūdābātur, impetum diū sustinēre nōn poterat. 4. Mīles sī gravissimum vulnus accipiat, ex proeliō ā quibusdam mīlitibus ferātur. 5. Caesar honōris Aeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum esse dīxit.

(*b*) 1. Sī turris ad mūrum movērētur, in dēfēnsōrēs sagittās iacerēmus. 2. Bona causa est cūr tē tam saepe dēfendam. 3. Dux cum prīmum repperit ubi hostēs essent, proelium commīsit. 4. Sī Catilīna in urbe ad hunc diem mānsisset, tantīs perīculīs rem pūblicam numquam līberāvissēmus. 5. Senātus haec intellegit, cōnsul videt; hic tamen vīvit. Vīvit? Etiam in senātum venit.

532. *Translate, first noticing the time, etc., as in* § 530:

(*a*) 1. If the captives had tried to flee, they would have been killed. 2. If your city should be stripped of defenders, what would you do? 3. If the king rules well, the citizens will do that which he commands. 4. If the enemy's cavalry should set fire to our camp, we should try to defend it. 5. If the guards had defended the place more diligently, the fortifications could not have been taken by storm.

(*b*) 1. Unless the city had been deprived of defenders, the army of the Aeduans would not have been conquered. 2. The remaining Gauls will be invincible. 3. When we surrender, we shall hand over our arms to them. 4. When we had found out that the tower could be moved, we hastened to move it as quickly as possible. 5. If Cicero were living, he would be held in esteem by the men not only of our state but also of many other states.

Robert, King of Scots. I

Robertus, Scōtōrum rēx, bellum cum Britannīs nōn prōsperē prīmō gerēbat. Erant enim in castrīs hostium multī Scōtī, quī ob prīvātās iniūriās Britannīs auxilium ferēbant; ex quibus ūnus cōnstituit Robertum capere per canem quem ā rēge accēperat. Robertus forte, quem hostēs maiōribus

cōpiīs circumveniēbant, mīlitēs fugā (*in flight*) in omnēs partēs discēdere iusserat.

Cum ūnō comite sē in silvās abdidit. At hostēs cane ductī ad rēgis perfugium facile vēnērunt. Rēx autem lātrātū canis admonitus per alveum flūminis circiter duo mīlia passuum ambulāvit, quō cōnsiliō servātus est. Nam canis, quī vēstīgia dominī in terrā cognōscere potuerat, aquā dēceptus est.

LESSON LXXX

REVIEW

Divide et impera.—Divide and govern.[1]

533. Derivatives. — *A.* Write all the English words you can which seem to be derived from the following:

fidēs	nūdō	mōtus	rūmor
aedificium	immortālis	turris	causa
incendō	trādō	valeō [2]	verbum
colligō	honor	nāscor [2]	dēspiciō [2]
distribuō	ōrō [2]	(ad)iungō [2]	

B. With the aid of an unabridged English dictionary study carefully the form and meaning of the following and compare with the Latin originals:

item ensign conjugal accident lapidary oriole

C. Study the effect of the prefixes **ante,** *before, in front of, ahead of,* and **sē** (**sed**), *aside, apart,* when used in compound verbs: **antecēdō,** *go before,* **anteferō, antepōnō; sēcēdō,** *go apart,* **sēparō, sēclūdō.** What additional English (or Latin) words can you think of that have these prefixes?

D. Study the effect of the suffixes **-ālis, -īlis, -āris, -ārius,** *pertaining to,* as in **mortālis,** *pertaining to death,* using the General Vocabulary, if necessary:

frūmentārius	legiōnārius	mīlitāris	singulāris
servīlis	cīvīlis	līberālis	nāvālis

Equivalent English suffixes include: *-al, -il(e), -ary.*

[1] Motto of Louis XI of France.

[2] Consult the General Vocabulary for the meaning.

534. Form Drill. — 1. How is each participle formed and declined? 2. Give all the participles of **ferō, trādūcō, ēripiō.** 3. Of what three combinations may an Ablative Absolute consist? 4. What participle is lacking in the conjugation of **sum?** 5. What does the Latin use to express ideas which in English are expressed by the perfect active participle? What advantage have deponent verbs in this respect? 6. Give four possible translations of **rūmōre audītō.** 7. Translate, first by a clause and then by an Ablative Absolute: (*a*) *When Caesar had received the grain, he ordered his soldiers to break camp.* (*b*) *Since Caesar was commander-in-chief, the Romans easily conquered the enemy.*

535. Syntax Drill. — 1. Of what does an Ablative Absolute consist? 2. What is the rule for agreement in an Ablative Absolute construction? 3. What three kinds of clauses may be introduced by **cum?** 4. Give the law of Sequence of Tenses. 5. In Conditional Sentences what mood and tense are used to express (*a*) a fact in present, past, future time? (*b*) a statement contrary to fact in present, past time? (*c*) a doubt in future time? 6. What tense must be used in Latin to express the italicized word in the sentence following: If he *summons* me, I shall go?

EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

536. 1. Trēs arborēs in ōrdine stantēs manent. 2. Metū mōtūs sublātō Caesar suās cōpiās pontem trādūcere contendit. 3. Sī Brūtus paulō ante revertisset, causam calamitātis repperisset. 4. Armīs trāditīs, sē dēfendere nōn possunt. 5. Decem legiōnibus cōnscrīptīs, in Galliam contendēs. 6. Cum fīnem proelī nox fēcisset, nūntius ad lēgātum missus est. 7. Sī sē ēripiet et posteā reperiētur, numquam sē suspīciōne līberābit. 8. Cum fortiter impetum nostrōrum mīlitum sustinērent, ā suō duce vidēbantur.

9. Cum līberōs amēmus, servī diūtius nōn erimus. 10. Multae cīvitātēs Gallōrum quae Rōmānīs bellum intulerant eīs tandem sē suaque omnia trādidērunt.

537. ROBERT, KING OF SCOTS. II

Duās hōrās in silvā errant rēx comesque fidēlis. Tandem trēs hominēs armātōs vident. Rēx famē cōnfectus (*overcome*) hospitium petit. Ad casam dūcitur ā latrōnibus (nam latrōnēs erant hominēs) et benignē cēnā accipitur.[1] Post cēnam rēx somnō sēsē dedit.

Comitem, quī dīligenter vigilāre ā rēge iussus erat, somnus impediēbat. Tum latrōnēs partem casae petiērunt ubi Robertus comesque dormiēbant.

Rēx, quī leviter dormiēbat, adventum latrōnum audīvit, gladiumque cēpit. Hīc atrōciter pugnātum est, rēx enim gladiō ūnum latrōnem trānsfīxit, at comes rēgis ā latrōnibus interfectus est.

Tum rēx īrā et dolōre incēnsus (*inflamed*), quod gladium ē corpore latrōnis trahere nōn poterat, face ārdentī secundī latrōnis caput ēlīsit. Ubi id vīdit tertius, morte comitum perterritus fugere cupīvit. Nec tamen ē perīculō ēvāsit, ā rēge enim mortālī vulnere cōnfectus est.

THE ROMAN THEATER

In comparison with the Greeks, the Romans cared little for the theater, although theatrical performances were a part of the great festivals. The construction of the Roman theater was like that of the Greeks, however; at first the stage was located at the bottom of a hill upon which the spectators could sit in a semicircle and watch the performance.

Later stone seats were provided on the hillside and more

[1] *is entertained at (by) dinner.*

elaborate stages were constructed. The stage was spacious, both in width and in depth. The high wall at the back of the stage was richly decorated with columns, between which stood statues, of the gods, or of the Muses. This wall might well have served as stage-setting for many a tragedy. However, movable scenery, made of painted boards, was used both for tragedies and for comedies. Changes of scenery could be effected in the following way. Two scenes could be set in place before the play began. At the proper time the boards composing the front scene could be pulled off to either side of the stage.

THE SMALLER ROMAN THEATER AT POMPEII.

Plays were produced at Rome mainly at certain great festivals, which came in April, July, September, and November. The performances began early in the morning; several plays were given in succession on one day.

The Romans greatly preferred comedy to tragedy. They also liked the pantomimes in which the actor, aided by a chorus and music, tried to tell a story and portray character without speaking. Women never appeared as actors in the great Roman plays, although they did appear in the pantomimes, if they cared nothing for their reputation.

Since the Roman theater had no satisfactory means of artificial lighting, performances were of necessity given in the daytime. The usual comedy probably required about two hours for its presentation.

LESSON LXXXI

EŌ. DATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVE VERBS

Furor fit laesa saepius patientia. — *Beware the fury of a patient man.*[1]

538. Learn the **conjugation of** *eō* in full, § 617.

ad'eō, -ī're, -iī (-ī'vī), -itus, *go to, approach, visit* (followed by the accusative).

cōn'sulō, -su'lere, -su'luī, -sul'tus, *plan, consult* (with acc.); *take counsel for* (with dat.).

crē'dō, -ere, crē'didī, crēditū'rus, *trust, believe* (with dat.).

e'ō, -ī're, i'ī (ī'vī), itū'rus, *go.*

ex'eō, -ī're, -iī (-ī'vī), -itū'rus, *go out, withdraw.*

lo'quor, lo'quī, locū'tus sum, *speak, say.*

pā'reō, -ē're, pā'ruī, —, *obey* (with dat.).

pla'ceō, -ē're, -uī, -itū'rus, *please* (with dat.).

ser'viō, -ī're, -ī'vī, -itū'rus, *be slave to, serve* (with dat.).

539. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

exit consultation credit loquacious placid

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

RULE

540. Dative with Intransitive Verbs. — Many verbs meaning to *benefit* or *injure*, *please* or *displease*, *command*[2] or *obey*, *serve* or *resist*, *believe* or *distrust*, *persuade*, *pardon*, *envy*, *threaten*, *be angry*, and the like, take the dative.

Note. — Compare **cōnfīdō, noceō, resistō** (Vocabulary and *Note*, Lesson 64) and **imperō, mandō, persuādeō** (Vocabulary, Lesson 68).

---

[1] Publilius Syrus. Literally: *Patience too often abused becomes madness.* The English is from Dryden's *Absalom and Achitophel.*

[2] **Iubeō** takes the accusative as subject of a following infinitive. It is never used with the dative.

I believe you. **Tibi crēdō.**
He persuaded the soldiers. **Mīlitibus persuāsit.**

EXERCISES

541. *Translate, giving the construction of each noun or pronoun:*

(*a*) 1. Rōmam ībimus ut tē cōnsulāmus. 2. Nōbīs imperāvit ut rēgī servīrēmus. 3. Dīxērunt facile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī.[1] 4. Mīlitibus imperat ut in proelium eant. 5. Omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque quae adīre potuerant incēnsīs, exercitum flūmen trādūxērunt et castra in fīnibus hostium posuērunt.

(*b*) 1. Rūmōribus audītīs, imperiō rēgis restitimus et reī pūblicae cōnsuluimus. 2. Legiō cum in proelium fortiter īsset, hostibus nōn diū restitit. 3. Maiōrī tamen partī placuit nōn modo castra dēfendere sed etiam signa īnferre. 4. Sī mihi imperāvisset nē quid[2] loquerer, eī pāruissem. 5. Cīvibus persuāsit ut dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent.

542. *Translate, paying particular attention to the verbs in subordinate clauses:*

(*a*) 1. If they had trusted me, they would not have gone. 2. If you consult me, I shall order you to escape. 3. If the towers were higher, we could resist the enemy better. 4. Although they believe us, they will not obey us. 5. If you should go at daybreak, it would please me.

(*b*) 1. Slaves obey their masters as well as possible. 2. We know that you have never taken counsel for your friends. 3. The general, having been warned of the danger, nevertheless did not hesitate to approach the bank of the river. 4. When Catiline seizes the royal power, he will send some men from the city, and others he will kill. 5. The left wing of the army approached the enemy's line of battle as bravely as possible.

---

[1] Infinitive used as a substantive, subject of **esse**.

[2] *Anything*, when used with **nē**.

LESSON LXXXII

VOLŌ, NŌLŌ, MĀLŌ. DATIVE OF PURPOSE

Fere libenter homines id quod volunt credunt.—Men gladly believe what they wish to.[1]

543. Syntax of *volō, nōlō, mālō.* — The infinitive with subject accusative is used with **volō, nōlō, mālō** when the subject of the dependent verb is not the same as that of the governing verb. When the subject of both verbs is the same, the complementary infinitive is used.[2]

I wish you to go. **Volō tē īre.**
I wish to go. **Volō īre.**

Learn particularly the present indicative and subjunctive in the conjugation of **volō, nōlō, mālō,** § 615.

544. VOCABULARY

col'lis, -is (**-ium**), m., *hill.*
lēgā'tiō, -ō'nis, f., *embassy, mission.*
mūnī'tiō, -ō'nis, f., *fortification.*
ob'ses, -idis, m. or f., *hostage, pledge, security.*
re'giō, -ō'nis, f., *region, boundary, district.*
subsi'dium, subsi'dī, n., *aid, support;* pl., *reinforcements.*
mā'lō, māl'le, mā'luī, *prefer.*
nō'lō, nōl'le, nō'luī, *be unwilling.*
occī'dō, -ere, -cī'dī, -cī'sus, *kill, slay.*
vo'lō, vel'le, vo'luī, *be willing, wish.*

545. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

voluntary	legation	munitions
region	benevolent	subsidy

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

[1] Caesar.

[2] Compare § 660 and (*a*).

RULE

546. Dative of Purpose. — A dative expressing purpose is often used in connection with another dative called a dative of reference.

The legion served as aid to Caesar. **Legiō auxiliō Caesarī fuit.**
He sent men as aid to the army. **Virōs subsidiō exercituī mīsit.**

Here **auxiliō** and **subsidiō** are datives of purpose; **Caesarī** and **exercituī** are datives of reference.

EXERCISES

547. *Translate:*

1. Obsidibus acceptīs, lēgātiōnem ad Belgās suscipere vult. 2. Deō volente, Rōmae tē vidēbimus. 3. Hīs difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō. 4. Volō tē tuō patrī placēre. 5. Māluerāmus cōpiās vestrās auxiliō nōbīs et nostrō oppidō venīre.

(*b*) 1. Decima legiō Caesarī subsidiō erat et multās mūnītiōnēs fēcit. 2. Caesar nōluit legiōnēs auxiliō Aeduīs mittere. 3. Hīs facile pulsīs, singulārī celeritāte ad collem cucurrērunt. 4. Caesar memoriā tenēbat cōnsulem occīsum esse exercitumque eius ab Helvētiīs pulsum. 5. Captīvīs custōdēs praepōnit, ut quae agant et quibuscum loquantur scīre possit.

548. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. We are willing to send an embassy to as many states as possible. 2. Caesar had been unwilling to dispatch the tenth legion as aid for Galba. 3. If I had preferred to remain at home, I should not have gone with you. 4. He thought it would not be difficult to take the fortification by storm. 5. We shall always resist the Germans.

(*b*) 1. In these regions it was not the custom to exchange hostages. 2. If I believed your words, I should not delay your arrival. 3. When we wished you to approach the hill nearby, we could see no difficulty. 4. We wish to defend these regions with towers of

great height. 5. After hostages had been handed over, Caesar remained in the fortifications ten days that the rest of the cavalry might come to his aid (as aid to him).

Virginēs Vestālēs

Vesta dea erat Rōmānōrum quae ignī focōque praeerat. Rōmae fuit Vestae templum, quō in templō sex Virginēs Vestālēs sacrum ignem semper custōdiēbant.

Site of the Temple of Vesta.

Sex annōs nātae[1] virginēs hōc ministeriō fungī[2] coepērunt, ā Pontifice Maximō dēlēctae. Trīgintā annōs officiīs in templō fūnctae sunt; tum aut templum relinquere aut manēre ibi eīs licuit. Virginēs Vestālēs maximō in honōre ā populō Rōmānō habēbantur.

---

[1] From **nāscor**.

[2] **Fungor,** like **ūtor** and **potior,** has its direct object in the ablative case.

Vestālēs sacrum ignem custōdīvērunt et, cum esset perīculum, eum ad locum tūtum portāvērunt. Nōnnumquam Rōmā ignem extulērunt, nē hostēs eum occupāre possent.

Rōmānī putāvērunt Vestam in Ītaliā esse ab Aenēā cultam, et eum prīmum Virginēs Vestālēs dēlēgisse.

LESSON LXXXIII

SEMI-DEPONENTS. DATIVE OF POSSESSOR

Gaudeamus igitur iuvenes dum sumus. — *Let us rejoice, then, while we are young.*

549. **Semi-deponents** are verbs which have the *present system* in the active voice and the *perfect system* in the passive voice, but both with the active meaning.

au'deō, -ē're, au'sus sum, *dare.*
gau'deō, -ē're, gāvī'sus sum, *rejoice.*
so'leō, -ē're, so'litus sum, *be accustomed.*
fī'dō, fī'dere, fī'sus sum, *trust.*

550. VOCABULARY

clas'sis, -is (**-ium**), f., *a fleet.*
conven'tus, -ūs, m., *assembly, meeting.*
plāni'tiēs, -ē'ī, f., *plain.*
Ve'netī, -ō'rum, m., *the Veneti.*
au'deō, -ē're, au'sus sum, *dare.*
cōnspi'ciō, -ere, -spex'ī, -spec'tus, *behold, catch sight of.*
ēdo'ceō, -ē're, ēdo'cuī, ēdoc'tus, *show, inform, instruct.*
fī'ō, fi'erī, fac'tus sum, *become, be made, happen.* Learn the conjugation, § 618.
ēgre'dior, -ī, -gres'sus sum, *step forth, go out.*
prōgre'dior, -ī, -gres'sus sum, *advance.*
trāns'eō, -ī're, -iī (**-ī'vī**), **-itus,** *go across.*
i'tem, adv., *likewise.*

Note. — The verb **fīō** is used as the passive of **faciō,** which has no passive forms in the tenses formed from the present stem. The perfect stem tenses in the passive of both verbs are identical and have the same meaning.

551. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

audacious transitive conspicuous progress

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

RULE

552. Dative of Possessor. — The dative is used with **sum** to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject.

The boy has a book. **Puerō liber est.**

Cicero's name was Marcus Tullius. **Cicerōnī[1] nōmen erat Mārcus Tullius.**

EXERCISES

553. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Virō erat pulcherrima domus. 2. Nōnne hieme in mare īre ausus es? 3. Impetus in eōs fit et perterrentur. 4. Armātās cōpiās hostium īnstrūctās in plānitiē lātitūdine magnā cōnspexit. 5. Brūtum classī nāvibusque quās convenīre iusserat praeficit et in Venetōs eum proficīscī iubet.

(*b*) 1. Quaerit ex eō sōlō quae in conventū dīxerit. 2. Mīlitibus multa tēla erant. 3. Huic magnīs praemiīs persuādet ut ad hostēs trānseat, et quid fierī velit ēdocet. 4. Hostēs item, cōpiīs ē castrīs ēductīs, paulum prōgressī trāns plānitiem aciem īnstrūxērunt. 5. Putāmus eum mercātōribus neque crēdidisse neque cōnfīsum[2] esse.

554. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. The diligence of my pupils pleases me greatly. 2. The Veneti had very many ships. 3. They informed the Veneti that they wished to assemble on the plain, near the sea. 4. They went across the river and led the army among the enemy. 5. The leader dares to advance to the regions of the enemy and is asking about their fleet.

(*b*) 1. Caesar, beholding the arrival of the cavalry, likewise drew up a line of battle on the top of the hill. 2. Other forces were sent as aid to Caesar. 3. They had set out in the winter and two thousand of their men had been slain. 4. Citizens always trust the defenders of their country. 5. The soldier, a man of great courage, became leader of the enemy.

---

[1] **Cicerō, -ōnis,** m., *Cicero* (a famous Roman).

[2] Notice that **cōnfīdō,** in vocabulary of Lesson 64, is a semi-deponent.

The First Punic War

Annīs[1] quadringentīs nōnāgintā post urbem conditam[2] Rōmānōrum exercitūs prīmum in Siciliam trānsiērunt, atque rēgem Syrācūsārum Poenōsque, quī multās urbēs in eā īnsulā occupāverant, superāvērunt.

Excavations at Carthage.

Quīntō annō huius bellī, quod contrā Poenōs gerēbātur, prīmum Rōmānī in marī dīmicāvērunt. Carthāginiēnsēs[3] vīcērunt, trīgintā nāvēs occupāvērunt, quattuordecim mersērunt, septem mīlia hostium cēpērunt, tria mīlia occīdērunt. Nūlla victōria Rōmānīs grātior fuit.

---

[1] Ablative of degree of difference with **post**, which has the force of a comparative.

[2] *After the city founded, i.e., after the founding of the city.*

[3] Accusative.

LESSON LXXXIV

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

Crescit eundo.—It grows as it goes.[1]

555. The Gerund is a *verbal noun.* It consists of the present stem + **nd** (or **end**) + neuter endings of the second declension. It is found in the genitive, dative, accusative, ablative, singular only: **portandī, portandō, portandum, portandō.**

556. The Gerundive (Future Passive Participle) is a *verbal adjective.*[2] It is formed by the present stem + **nd** (or **end**) + endings of **magnus**: **portandus, -a, -um.**

557. Gerund and Gerundive Uses. — The gerund *may* take a direct object. But usually when it would have an object, the gerundive is used instead, the object taking the case of the gerund and the gerundive agreeing as an adjective with the object.

Desirous of seeking peace. **Cupidus pācem petendī** (gerund: unusual). **Cupidus pācis petendae** (gerundive construction: the usual form).

The hope of conquering the enemy is great. **Magna est spēs vincendī hostēs** (gerund: unusual). **Magna est spēs vincendōrum hostium** (gerundive construction: the usual form).

---

[1] The motto of New Mexico. Literally: *It grows by going.*

[2] An easy way to distinguish gerund and gerundive is to think that "the gerund*ive* is an adject*ive*."

558. VOCABULARY

adver'sus, -a, -um, *turned toward, facing, face to face.*
cae'dēs, -is (**-ium**), f., *slaughter.*
commeā'tus, -ūs, m., *supplies, provisions.*
hīber'na, -ō'rum, n., *winter quarters* (properly an adj.; supply **castra**).
por'tus, -ūs, m., *harbor, port.*
sa'lūs, -ū'tis, f., *safety.*
cōnsuēs'cō, -ere, -suē'vī, -suētū'rus, *become accustomed.*
effi'ciō, -ere, -fē'cī, -fec'tus, *accomplish, bring about.*
occur'rō, -ere, -cur'rī, -cursū'rus, *meet* (with dat.).
prox'imē, adv., *next, most recently.*

Note the effect of the prefix **ob** (**oc**), *against, toward,* when used in compound verbs: **occurrō,** *run against.* Study the meaning of the following verbs, using the General Vocabulary, if necessary: **oppugnō, occīdō, obiciō, opprimō, offerō, oppōnō.**

559. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

hibernate adverse occur efficient

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

RULE

560. The Expression of Purpose. — The most common ways of expressing purpose are:

1. Subjunctive with **ut** or **nē.** **Missī sunt ut urbem vidērent.** *They were sent to see the city.*
2. Subjunctive with relative pronoun. **Missī sunt quī**[1] **urbem vidērent.**
3. Gerundive construction with **ad.** **Missī sunt ad urbem videndam.**
4. Gerundive construction with **causā.** **Missī sunt urbis videndae causā.**[2]

In Latin prose, purpose *must not* be expressed by the infinitive.

---

[1] In this usage **quī** is equivalent to **ut** and a personal pronoun (**ut eī**).
[2] Note that **causā** *always follows* the gerundive construction.

EXERCISES

561. *Express the purpose in as many ways as possible:*

1. They went to close the gates. 2. We have teachers to instruct the children. 3. Soldiers go into battle to slay the enemy. 4. Caesar has come to conquer Gaul. 5. Will you hasten to see the king?

562. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Mīlitēs pugnandī fīnem fēcērunt. 2. Ad pācem petendam prīncipēs Rōmam venīre cōnsuēvērunt. 3. Nautae in portum salūtis petendae causā contendunt. 4. Nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsērunt. 5. Efficiēbat ut commeātūs ab Aeduīs et reliquīs cīvitātibus sine perīculō ad sē portārī possent.

(*b*) 1. Caede hostium factā mīlitēs praesidiō hībernīs erunt. 2. Caesar bellī gerendī causā multās legiōnēs parābat. 3. Suspīciōnis vītandae causā in locīs occultīs convenīre cōnsuēscunt. 4. Duae legiōnēs, quae proximē cōnscrīptae erant, tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedīmentīs erant. 5. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversīs hostibus occurrēbant.

563. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Each advanced for the sake of crossing the river. 2. We were informed that the war ships had assembled, and we went into winter quarters to seek safety. 3. The Romans had very many captives. (*Express in two ways.*) 4. I was unwilling to meet you. 5. The captives had become accustomed to resist the victors very often.

(*b*) 1. We thought that the consul, after calling the senate together, had dismissed it. 2. I asked him what he was doing. 3. We closed the gates and, a garrison being left at the camp, we sent men in different directions to seek supplies. 4. The leaders will show how great a slaughter was made by the army. 5. They met the cavalry half way up the hill, but did not dare to advance to the attack.

PHRASES FROM CAESAR

564. *Commit to memory, with the translations:*

1. Salūtis causā. 2. Hōc proeliō nūntiātō. 3. Hīs rēbus gestīs. 4. Magnō numerō interfectō. 5. Hīs obsidibus acceptīs.

The Capture of Regulus

Paucīs annīs interiectīs[1] bellum in Āfricam trānslātum est. Hamilcar, Carthāginiēnsium dux, pugnā nāvālī superātur. Cum Rōmānī in Āfricam vēnissent, Poenōs plūribus proeliīs vīcērunt, plūrimōs hominēs cēpērunt, multās cīvitātēs in fidem recēpērunt.[2]

The Citadel and Harbor at Carthage.

Tum victī Carthāginiēnsēs pācem ā Rōmānīs petiērunt. Quam cum Rēgulus, Rōmānōrum dux, nōn daret nisi dūrissimīs condiciōnibus,[3] Carthāginiēnsēs auxilium ā Lacedaemoniīs petīvērunt. Hī exercitum mīsērunt, quī proeliō vīcit. Rēgulus ipse captus et in vincula coniectus est.

[1] *I.e., after an interval of a few years.* [2] *took under their protection.*
[3] *on the hardest terms.*

LESSON LXXXV

FUTURE ACTIVE AND PASSIVE PARTICIPLES WITH *SUM*[1]

Ad captandum vulgus. — *To catch the crowd.*[2]

565. The Future Active Participle used with forms of **sum** denotes impending action or that which is about to happen.

The present of **sum** is used for the present tense, the imperfect for the imperfect, etc. The participle agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case.

Caesar was about to begin the battle. **Caesar proelium commissūrus erat.**

The Romans had intended to (had been about to) fight. **Rōmānī pugnātūrī fuerant.**

We thought the enemy would (were about to) come. **Exīstimāvimus hostēs ventūrōs esse.**

Notc. — In the first example above **commissūrus** (*about to begin*) is used with **erat** (*was*), exactly as would be expected from the English usage. Use natural English in translating the Latin, as shown in the last two examples.

(*a*) Conjugate **sum** with **scrīptūrus** throughout the indicative and subjunctive, including present and perfect infinitives, *e.g.*, **scrīptūrus sum, es, est, scrīptūrī sumus, estis, sunt,** etc.

---

[1] These combinations are called the Active and Passive Periphrastic Conjugations, the Active being the combination of the future active participle with **sum,** the Passive the future passive participle (or gerundive) with **sum.** They are also called respectively the first and second periphrastic conjugations.

[2] Compare "to play to the gallery."

566. The Future Passive Participle (Gerundive) used with forms of **sum** denotes necessity or that which ought to be done. The gerundive agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case.

The soldiers must be (are to be) sent. **Mīlitēs mittendī sunt.**
The signal must be (is to be) given. **Signum dandum est.**

Note. — In the first example above note that **mittendī** *(to be sent)* is used with **sunt** *(are)*, exactly as would be expected from the English usage. In translating the Latin, convey the meaning rather than the exact words.

(*a*) Give a synopsis of **sum** with **scrībendum** through the indicative and subjunctive third person singular, including the present and perfect infinitive, *e.g.*, **scrībendum est,** etc.

567. VOCABULARY

aper'tus, -a, -um, *uncovered, open, exposed.*
tempes'tās, -tā'tis, f., *storm, bad weather.*
va'dum, -ī, n., *shoal, ford.*
adgre'dior, -ī, -gres'sus sum, *step up to, approach, attack.*
ar'bitror, -ā'rī, -ā'tus sum, *think.*
cohor'tor, -ā'rī, -ā'tus sum, *encourage.*
sta'tuō, -ere, -uī, -ū'tus, *determine, decide.*
plērum'que, adv., *for the most part, generally.*
sta'tim, adv., *immediately, at once.*

568. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

tempest exhort arbitrate aperture

Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

RULE

569. Dative of Agent. — With the Future Passive Participle used with **sum** (Passive Periphrastic) the dative is used to denote the agent or doer of the action.

You must give the signal. **Signum tibi dandum est.**[1]
Caesar must fight. **Caesarī pugnandum est.**

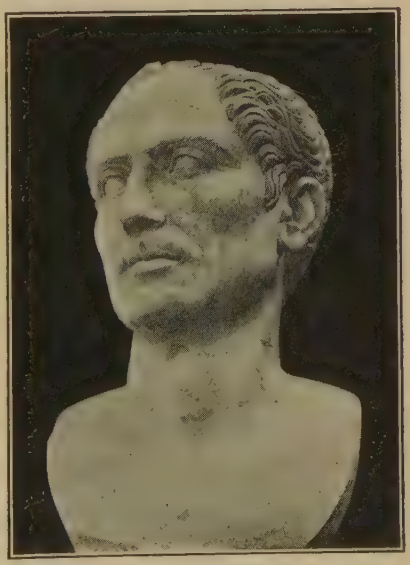
[1] Notice that all sentences in the active voice must be recast before they can be expressed literally by the Passive Periphrastic: "The signal is to be given by you," "It must be fought by Caesar."

EXERCISES

570. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Putāvit sibi Rhēnum vadīs esse trānseundum. 2. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda. 3. Magnopere tibi placitūrī fuerāmus. 4. Aciēs īnstruenda in apertīs campīs et mīlitēs cohortandī erant. 5. Hīs rēbus adductī exīstimāvimus hīberna Gallōrum nōbīs capienda esse.

(*b*) 1. Adversō exercituī in apertō locō occurrunt. 2. Prō rē pūblicā audācter castellum adgressūrī sumus. 3. Propter tempestātēs difficultās nāvigandī maxima est. 4. Arbitrātī sumus commeātum ad hīberna statim mittendum esse. 5. Caesar plērumque nolēbat equitātum suum in plānitiē apertā hostēs adgredī.



JULIUS CAESAR.

571. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. The gates must generally be closed by us for the sake of safety. 2. I was accustomed to give you an opportunity of seeing the beautiful buildings at Rome. 3. A brave citizen has often been an aid to the king. 4. The general, encouraging his men, set out late in the day to attack the garrison. 5. Our forces must cross the wide river by fords, the town of the enemy must be burned, and their children taken.

(*b*) 1. The Romans for the most part had no exposed ports. (*Two ways.*) 2. We did not dare to meet the Veneti on account of the stormy weather, and took the opportunity of retreating into

port. 3. Having been greatly influenced by the reports which he had heard, Caesar determined that he must leave the winter quarters immediately. 4. Having advanced many miles, we approached the Veneti face to face near the ford. 5. They had been informed that they must drive the enemy from their open fields immediately.

LESSON LXXXVI

REVIEW OF CASES[1]

Bis dat qui cito dat.—He gives twice who gives quickly.

572. Nominative. — Subject of a finite verb, § 17. Predicate nominative, § 41.

573. Genitive. — Possession, § 36. Of the whole, § 305. Description or quality, § 425. Definite measurement, § 425.

574. Dative. — Indirect object, § 79. With adjectives meaning *like*, *equal*, etc., § 280. With verbs compounded with **ad, ante, con,** § 396. With intransitive verbs meaning *benefit* or *injure*, § 540. Agent with passive periphrastic, § 569. Possessor with **sum,** § 552. Of purpose, § 546.

EXERCISES

575. *Translate, giving the construction of each noun and pronoun:*[2]

(*a*) 1. Tēla ad mīlitēs Caesaris ferenda sunt. 2. Maior soror ab omnibus pulchrior habēbātur. 3. Caesarī id nūntiātum est. 4. Imperātor mīlitibus imperāvit ut fortiter resisterent. 5. Spēs victōriae legiōnēs addūxit.

(*b*) 1. Erat fossa vīgintī pedum altitūdine. 2. Belgīs bellum intulērunt. 3. Hic amīcus meus est, ille tuus. 4. Equitātuī, quem auxiliō Caesarī Aeduī mīserant, fortis vir praeerat. 5. Hīs

[1] The forms may be reviewed as the teacher sees fit.

[2] In these review lessons consult the General Vocabulary for new words.

rēbus cognitīs, centuriōnēs praemittit quī locum idōneum castrīs dēligant.

576. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. The Germans did not have large horses. (*Two ways.*) 2. The Belgians say that they are the bravest of all. 3. The fleet was sent as a protection to the city. 4. We met the girls in the road. 5. We must take the opportunity not only of burning the buildings but also of recovering our hostages.

(*b*) 1. They did not dare to resist the enemy. 2. For the sake of safety they made a fortification of thirty feet in height. 3. At the arrival of the Germans our men fought more bravely. 4. The men were like their leader in courage. 5. He will order the lieutenant to send soldiers as aid to our men.

LESSON LXXXVII

REVIEW OF CASES

Ense petit placidam sub libertate quietem. — With the sword she seeks calm repose in freedom.[1]

577. Accusative. — Adverbial, § 486. Direct object, § 21. Duration of time and extent of space, § 328. Place *into, to, toward, near* which, § 112. Place *to* which without a preposition, § 443. Subject of an infinitive, § 342. With prepositions, § 368.

578. Ablative. — Absolute, § 508. Accompaniment with **cum,** § 136. Agent with a preposition, § 167. Cause without a preposition, § 312. Degree of difference, § 486. Manner, § 151. Means or instrument, § 87. Place *in, from, out of* which, § 112. Quality, § 425. Specification, § 294. Separation, § 351. Time when, § 245. With prepositions, § 367. With verbs **ūtor** and **potior,** § 479. Adverbial, § 486. Place *from* which without a preposition, § 443.

579. Locative. — Place *in* or *at* which with names of cities and towns, **domus,** and **rūs,** § 443.

580. Vocative. — The vocative is used as the case of address, § 5.

[1] The motto of Massachusetts.

EXERCISES

581. *Translate, giving the construction of each noun and pronoun:*

(*a*) 1. Sciēbant Rōmānōs plūrimum et virtūte et hominum numerō posse. 2. Hīs verbīs audītīs, eum ab sē dīmittit. 3. Haec rēs ūnam partem castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat. 4. Galbam cum duābus legiōnibus praesidiō castrīs relīquit. 5. Ab hōc locō vir, Galba nōmine, magnā cum celeritāte mīlia passuum octō iit.

(*b*) 1. Dux, vir summā virtūte, ad bellum ā Caesare mittētur. 2. Mediā nocte Caesar, eīsdem ducibus ūsus quī nūntiī vēnerant, eōs auxiliō urbī mīsit. 3. Decem ante diēbus Galba moenia dēfēnsōribus nūdāverat. 4. Venetī plūs nāvibus quam hostēs poterant. 5. Ob inopiam frūmentī nōs manēre Rōmae est difficillimum.

582. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Friends,[1] we shall use our weapons as well as possible. 2. The citizens at Rome wished to please their king. 3. The large animals ran out of the woods at daybreak and remained near the town all day. 4. We use our weapons to deprive the city of its defenders. 5. If the leader orders, you will set out.

(*b*) 1. Marcus,[1] you can surpass the enemy in courage. 2. Caesar was informed that the top of the mountain was held by the enemy. 3. Caesar with his brave men stormed the town with great courage. 4. We followed the cavalry about five miles and fought more bravely than they. 5. After the gates had been closed, they sent a messenger to the general who was attacking the town.

---

[1] The vocative does not stand first in a Latin sentence.

LESSON LXXXVIII

REVIEW OF SUBJUNCTIVES

Finis coronat opus. — *The end crowns the work.*

583. Subjunctives. — Causal clauses, § 516. Circumstantial clauses, § 515. Concessive clauses, § 517. Conditional clauses, §§ 522–525. Indirect questions, § 470. Purpose (Adverbial and Substantive), § 450. Result, § 485. Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Quotation, § 468.

EXERCISES

584. *Translate, explaining each subjunctive:*

(*a*) 1. Mīles ita ēgit ut imperātor eum laudāret. 2. Quid ēgeris sciō. 3. Caesar cum aciem īnstrūxisset, legiōnibus signum dedit. 4. Cum domī meae mē interficere cōnātī essent, senātum convocāvī. 5. Sī facultās mīlitibus data esset, ācerrimē pugnāre ausī essent.

(*b*) 1. Hostēs cum ā tertiā hōrā ad sōlis occāsum pugnāvissent, tamen victī sunt. 2. Praemiīs magnīs prīnceps cīvitātibus persuāsit nē Caesarī bellum īnferrent. 3. Tantīs perīculīs occurrit ut salūtis causā fugiat. 4. Dux dīcit mīlitēs in hostēs omnia tēla quae colligere possint iactūrōs esse. 5. Sī mīlitēs cohortēris, fortius pugnent.

585. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. He saw in how great peril the camp was. 2. They surrendered to Caesar, since he was very powerful. 3. When Cicero saw the danger, he tried to save the state. 4. He sent a man to enlist two legions. (*Express the purpose in several ways.*)

5. Caesar commanded us to bring the captives back. (*Use both* **iubeō** *and* **imperō**.)

(*b*) 1. Since their fleet had been taken, they could not defend themselves. 2. He said that a few of the Gauls who had fled survived. 3. Although we do not understand the movements of the sun and moon, nevertheless it pleases us to see them. 4. If the enemy had been braver, they would not have sought peace. 5. The army was so powerful that it could not be taken.

View from the Citadel of Carthage.

The Heroism of Regulus

Fortūna tamen in aliīs locīs Carthāginiēnsibus[1] nocuit. Cum plūribus proeliīs victī essent, Rēgulum rogāvērunt ut Rōmam proficīscerētur et pācem ā Rōmānīs impetrāret. Haec tamen erat condiciō, ut, sī pāx nōn esset facta, Rēgulus Carthāginem reverterētur.

Ille cum Rōmam vēnisset, dīxit sē Rōmānum esse dēstitisse ex illā diē quā in potestātem Poenōrum vēnisset. Tum Rōmānīs praecēpit nē pācem cum hostibus facerent.

[1] Dative. See § 540.

Dīxit Carthāginiēnsēs cāsibus frāctōs tālem pācem spērāre ut [1] paucīs annīs bellum redintegrāre possent.[2] Sibi mortem crūdēlem parātam esse sē nōn ignōrāre, sed vītam prō patriā dēpōnere [3] magnam laudem esse. Oportēre sē [4] in Āfricam revertī.[5] Sententia Rēgulī obtinuit (*prevailed*); in Āfricam reversus crūdēlissimīs suppliciīs interfectus est.

---

[1] **tālem pācem ut,** *such a peace that.*

[2] *they would be able.*

[3] Subject of **esse.**

[4] Subject of **revertī,** which is itself the subject of **oportēre.**

[5] This passage in the form of direct discourse would run as follows: **Carthāginiēnsēs cāsibus frāctī pācem spērant tālem ut paucīs annīs bellum redintegrāre possint. Mihi mortem crūdēlem parātam esse nōn ignōrō, sed vītam prō patriā dēpōnere magna laus est. Oportet mē in Āfricam revertī.**

SUPPLEMENTARY READING

THE STORY OF PERSEUS

Haec fābula ā poētīs dē Perseō nārrātur. Perseus fīlius erat Iovis, maximī deōrum. Avus Perseī propter ōrāculum eum timēbat itaque eum adhūc īnfantem cum mātre interficere cupiēbat. In arcam igitur ligneam eōs inclūsit et in mare

PERSEUS AND THE GORGON'S HEAD.

This is the conception of the artist Canova. It is in the Vatican at Rome.

coniēcit. Tempestās enim magna mare turbābat et mors et īnfantī et mātrī aderat.

Iuppiter tamen omnia haec vīdit et fīlium suum servāre dēcrēvit. Perdūxit igitur arcam in longinquam īnsulam ubi Perseus cum mātre multōs annōs habitābat. Polydectēs, rēx huius īnsulae, Danaēn (*acc.*), mātrem Perseī, magnopere amābat atque eam in mātrimōnium dūcere volēbat. Hoc tamen cōnsilium Perseō minimē grātum erat. Polydectēs igitur Perseum dīmittere studēbat. Eum ad sē vocāvit et

haec dīxit: "Iam dūdum tū adulēscēns es. Tempus igitur est arma capere et virtūtem ostendere. Hinc abī (*go hence*) et caput Medūsae ad mē refer."

Perseus Leaves the Island

Perseus ab īnsulā discessit et diū Medūsam frūstrā quaesīvit. Tandem per auxilium deōrum ad sorōrēs Medūsae pervēnit, ā quibus tālāria galeamque magicam accēpit. Apollō autem et Minerva eī falcem et speculum dedērunt. Tum, postquam tālāria pedibus induit (*put on*), in āera ascendit et tandem ad eum locum pervēnit ubi Medūsa cum cēterīs Gorgonibus habitābat. Gorgonēs autem mōnstra erant speciē horribilī, capita enim eārum serpentibus multīs contēcta sunt. Manūs eārum ex aere factae sunt.

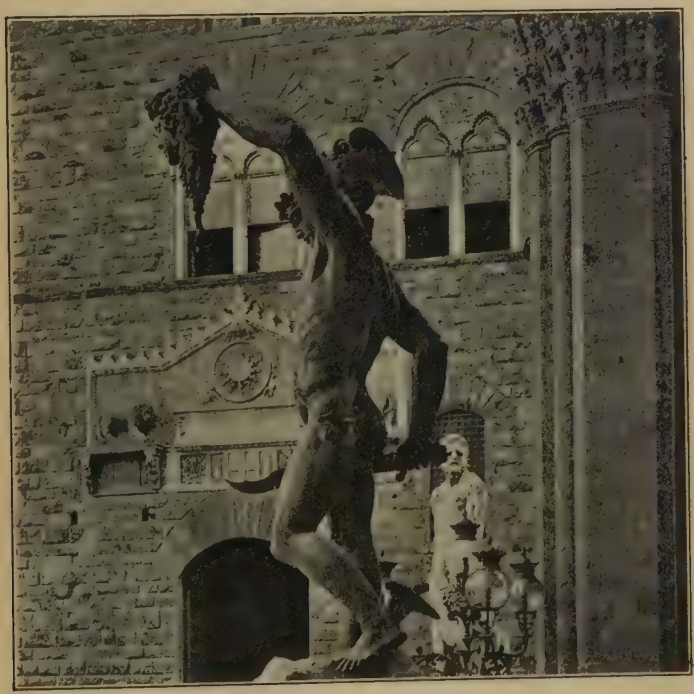
Caput Gorgonis.
This is Bernini's conception of the Gorgon's head.

The Fight with the Gorgon

Rēs difficillima erat caput Gorgonis abscīdere, cōnspectū enim eius hominēs in saxum vertēbantur. Propter hanc causam Minerva speculum Perseō dederat. Ille igitur tergum vertit et in speculum īnspiciēbat. Hōc modō caput eius ūnō ictū abscīdit. Cēterī Gorgonēs, ē somnō excitātae et īrā commōtae, Perseum necāre studēbant, sed Perseus fugiēns

galeam magicam induit. Ubi hoc fēcit, statim ē cōnspectū eārum ēvāsit (*vanished*).

Post haec Perseus in fīnēs Aethiopum (*of the Ethiopians*) vēnit, in quibus Cēpheus rēx erat. Cēpheus et Neptūnus,



PERSEUS HOLDING ALOFT THE HEAD OF MEDUSA.
This statue by Benvenuto Cellini is in Florence.

maris deus, inimīcī erant; Neptūnus igitur mōnstrum saevissimum ē marī cotīdiē mīsit quod hominēs dēvorābat. Cēpheus, ut cīvēs suōs servāret, ōrāculum cōnsuluit et ā deō iussus est fīliam mōnstrō trādere. Eius fīlia, Andromeda, pulcherrima erat et ā patre magnopere amābātur; rēx tamen imperāta deī facere nōn dubitābat.

Perseus Rescues Andromeda

Ubi Andromeda, ad līmus dēducta, ad rūpem adligāta est (nam ita ōrāculum iusserat), Perseus subitō accurrit. Tōtam rem audit et puellam videt. Simul mōnstrum procul cōnspicitur. Iam magnā celeritāte ad locum ubi puella est mōnstrum appropinquat.

At Perseus, ubi haec vīdit, gladium strīnxit, et, postquam tālāria induit, in āera sublātus est (*was borne*). Diū et ācriter cum mōnstrō pugnat. Tandem Perseus mōnstrum occīdit et Andromeda salva est. Prō tantō beneficiō Cēpheus Perseō Andromedam in mātrimōnium dedit. In fīnibus Aethiopum Perseus et Andromeda paucōs annōs in magnō honōre habitābant. Tandem autem Perseus cum Andromedā suam mātrem quaesīvit et eam salvam invēnit. Paulō post Polydectēs et avus Perseī, quod malī fuerant, ā Perseō interfectī sunt, ille (*the former*) in saxum conversus (*turned*), hic (*the latter*) discō occīsus.

THE STORY OF ULYSSES

Homeward Bound

Urbs Trōia ā Graecīs decem annōs obsessa est. Dē hōc bellō Homērus, maximus poētārum Graecōrum, Īliadem, opus

The Ruins of Troy.

The story of the excavations at Troy reads like a novel. Here were found the ruins of city after city, each built upon the wreckage of a former one. The sixth from the bottom is thought to be Homer's Troy.

nōtissimum, scrīpsit. Trōiā tandem per īnsidiās[1] captā, Graecī longō bellō dēfessī domum revertī mātūrāvērunt. Omnibus rēbus igitur ad profectiōnem parātīs, nāvēs dēdūxērunt et magnō cum gaudiō solvērunt.

---

[1] The *stratagem* of the wooden horse.

Erat inter prīmōs ducēs Ulixēs quīdam, vir summae virtūtis ac prūdentiae. Hic rēgnum īnsulae Ithacae obtinuerat, et puellam pulcherrimam nōmine Pēnelopēn in mātrimōnium dūxerat.[1] Nunc igitur, cum iam decem annōs quasi in exsiliō cōnsūmpsisset, magnopere patriam et uxōrem vidēre cupiēbat.

The Lotus Eaters

Postquam tamen pauca mīlia passuum ā lītore Trōiae prōgressī sunt, tanta tempestās subitō orta est ut nūlla nāvis cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae aliās in partēs disicerentur.[2] Nāvis autem quā[3] ipse Ulixēs vehēbātur, vī tempestātis ad merīdiem dēlāta, decimō diē ad lītus Libyae pervēnit. Ancorīs iactīs Ulixēs cōnstituit nōnnūllōs ē sociīs in terram expōnere, quī quālis esset nātūra eius regiōnis cognōscerent,[4] et aquam ad nāvem reportārent.

Hī igitur ē nāve ēgressī imperāta facere parābant. Dum tamen fontem quaerunt, ā quibusdam ex incolīs hospitiō acceptī sunt. Cibus autem eōrum hominum erat mīrus quīdam frūctus, quem lōtum appellābant. Quem cum Graecī gustāvissent, patriae et sociōrum statim oblītī,[5] cōnfirmāvērunt sē semper in eā terrā permānsūrōs esse, ut dulcī illō cibō[6] in aeternum vēscerentur.

The Departure

At Ulixēs, cum ab hōrā[7] septimā ad vesperum exspectāvisset, nōnnūllōs ē reliquīs sociīs mīsit, ut quae causa esset

---

[1] *Had married.* Literally what?

[2] *they were driven, some in one direction, others in another.* Notice how much shorter the Latin is.

[3] Ablative of means.

[4] **quī cognōscerent**, *who should learn, to learn.*

[5] The verb **oblīvīscor** often takes the objective genitive.

[6] Ablative with **vēscōr**.

[7] The day from sunrise to sunset was divided by the Romans into twelve equal parts, called "hours" (**hōrae**).

morae cognōscerent. Hī igitur ad vīcum, quī nōn longē āfuit, sē contulērunt; quō cum vēnissent,[1] sociōs suōs quasi vīnō ebriōs repperērunt. Tum eīs persuādēre cōnābantur ut sēcum[2] ad nāvem reverterentur.

Illī tamen resistere ac manū sē dēfendere coepērunt, saepe clāmitantēs sē numquam eum locum relictūrōs esse. Quae cum ita essent,[3] nūntiī ad Ulixem revertērunt. Hīs rēbus cognitīs Ulixēs ipse cum omnibus quī in nāve relictī erant ad locum vēnit; et sociōs suōs frūstrā hortātus invītōs ad nāvem reportāvit. Tum ancorīs sublātīs quam celerrimē ē portū solvit.

The One-eyed Giant

Posterō diē ad terram ignōtam vēnērunt; tum quod nātūram eius regiōnis ignōrābat, ipse Ulixēs cum duodecim ē sociīs in terram ēgressus locum explōrāre cōnstituit. Paulum ā lītore prōgressī ad spēluncam ingentem pervēnērunt, cuius introitus arte et manibus mūnītus erat.

Mox, etsī intellegēbant sē nōn sine perīculō id factūrōs, spēluncam intrāvērunt; quod cum fēcissent, magnam cōpiam lactis invēnērunt, quod in vāsīs ingentibus erat. Dum tamen mīrantur quis eam sēdem incoleret,[4] sonitum terribilem audīvērunt.

Oculīs ad portam versīs mōnstrum horribile vīdērunt, hūmānā quidem figūrā, sed ingentī magnitūdine corporis. Cum autem vīdissent gigantem ūnum tantum (*only*) oculum habēre in mediā fronte positum, intellēxērunt hunc esse ūnum ē Cyclōpibus, dē quibus fāmam iam accēperant.

---

[1] *and when they had come there (thither).*

[2] *I.e.*, cum sē.

[3] *and since these things were so.*

[4] This imperfect apparently violates the rule for sequence of tenses. But **mīrantur**, though a present, has the force of an imperfect tense.

The Giant's Supper

Cyclōpēs autem pāstōrēs erant quīdam, quī īnsulam Siciliam et praecipuē montem Aetnam incolēbant, ibi enim Volcānus, praeses fabrōrum et ignis repertor, cuius servī Cyclōpēs erant, officīnam suam habēbat.

Graecī igitur ubi mōnstrum vīdērunt, perterritī in interiōrem partem spēluncae refūgērunt et sē ibi cēlāre cōnābantur.

Mount Aetna in Sicily.

The cave of Polyphemus was supposed to be here and the rocks he threw at Ulysses are still shown scattered in the sea just off shore. This picture is taken from the Greek theater at Taormina.

Polyphēmus autem, hoc enim nōmen gigantis erat, pecora sua in spēluncam ēgit; tum cum[1] saxō ingentī portam obstrūxisset, ignem in mediā spēluncā fēcit. Hōc factō, oculō omnia perlūstrābat, et cum sēnsisset hominēs in interiōre parte spēluncae cēlārī, magnā vōce exclāmāvit: "Quī estis, hominēs? Mercātōrēs an latrōnēs?"

[1] Although the word following **cum** is an ablative, **obstrūxisset** shows that **cum** must be the conjunction.

Tum Ulixēs respondit sē neque mercātōrēs neque latrōnēs esse, sed vī tempestātis ā rēctō cursū dēpulsōs eō pervēnisse. Tum Polyphēmus quaesīvit ubi esset nāvis eōrum. Ulixēs respondit nāvem suam in rūpēs coniectam et frāctam esse. Polyphēmus autem nūllō datō respōnsō duo ē sociīs manū corripuit, et membrīs eōrum dīvulsīs[1] carnem dēvorāre coepit.

ULYSSES.
From an ancient relief.

No Way of Escape

Dum haec geruntur, Graecōrum animōs tantus terror occupāvit ut nē vōcem quidem ēdere[2] possent, sed omnī spē salūtis dēpositā mortem praesentem exspectārent. At Polyphēmus, postquam famēs hāc tam horribilī cēnā dēpulsa est, somnō sē dedit.

Quod cum vīdisset Ulixēs, nē tantam occāsiōnem omitteret, in animō habuit pectus mōnstrī gladiō trānsfīgere. Tamen cōnstituit prius[3] explōrāre quō modō ē spēluncā ēvādere possent. At cum saxum cōnsīderāret quō introitus obstrūctus erat, dubitābat. Tanta enim erat eius saxī magnitūdō ut nē ā decem quidem hominibus āmovērī posset.

Quae cum ita essent, Ulixēs hōc dēstitit cōnātū. Sociī cum intellēxissent quō in locō (*situation*) rēs essent, dē fortūnīs suīs dēspērāre coepērunt. Ille tamen nē animōs dēmitterent[4] vehementer hortātus est; dēmōnstrāvit sē iam anteā ē multīs

---

[1] *I.e.*, tearing them limb from limb.
[2] **vōcem ēdere**, *utter a word.*
[3] *First, i.e.*, before taking any action.
[4] *not to lose courage.*

et magnīs perīculīs ēvāsisse, neque in tantō discrīmine deōrum auxilium āfutūrum esse.

A Plan for Vengeance

Prīmā lūce, Polyphēmus iam ē somnō excitātus idem quod proximō diē fēcit,[1] correptīs enim duōbus ē reliquīs virīs carnem eōrum sine morā dēvorāvit. Tum, cum saxum āmōvisset, ipse cum pecore suō ē spēluncā prōgressus est; quod cum vidērent, Graecī magnam in spem vēnērunt sē ēvāsūrōs esse.[2] Mox tamen ab hāc spē repulsī sunt, nam Polyphēmus, postquam omnēs ovēs ēgressae sunt, saxum in locum restituit.

Tum reliquī lacrimīs sē dēdidērunt, Ulixēs vērō, quī, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, vir magnī fuit cōnsilī, etsī bene intellegēbat rem in discrīmine esse, nōndum dēspērābat. Tandem hoc cēpit cōnsilium. Ē lignīs quae in spēluncā erant pālum magnum dēlēgit; hunc summā cum dīligentiā praeacūtum fēcit; tum postquam sociīs suum cōnsilium ostendit, reditum Polyphēmī exspectābat.

A Glass too Much

Sub vesperum Polyphēmus ad spēluncam vēnit, et eōdem modō quō[3] anteā cēnāvit. Tum Ulixēs ūtrem vīnī cēpit, quem forte sēcum attulerat, et postquam magnam crātēram vīnō complēvit, gigantī eam dedit. Polyphēmus, quī numquam anteā vīnum gustāverat, tōtam crātēram statim hausit; quod cum fēcisset, tantam voluptātem percēpit ut iterum et tertium (*a third time*) crātēram replērī iusserit.[4]

Tum quaesīvit quō nōmine Ulixēs appellārētur. Ille respondit sē Nēminem appellārī; quod cum audīvisset, Poly-

---

[1] *I.e.*, idem fēcit quod proximō diē fēcerat.

[2] sē ēvāsūrōs esse, *that they were going to escape*, depends on and explains spem.

[3] *in the same way in which, i.e., in the same way as.*

[4] In clauses of result the perfect subjunctive is frequently used after historical tenses.

phēmus ita locūtus est: "Hanc tibi grātiam prō tantō beneficiō referam:[1] tē ultimum omnium dēvorābō." Hīs dictīs, cibō vīnōque gravis brevī tempore somnō oppressus est. Tum Ulixēs sociīs convocātīs, "Habēmus," inquit, "quam petiimus facultātem;[2] nōn igitur tantam occāsiōnem nōs omittere oportet.[3]"

Nobody

Hāc ōrātiōne habitā, postquam extrēmum (*the end of*) pālum igne calefēcit, oculum Polyphēmī, dum dormit, ārdentī lignō trānsfōdit; quō factō, omnēs in dīversās spēluncae partēs sē abdidērunt. At ille subitō illō dolōre ē somnō excitātus clāmōrem terribilem sustulit, et dum per spēluncam errat Ulixī manum inicere cōnābātur; cum tamen iam caecus esset, nūllō modō hoc efficere potuit.

Laocoön.

He was a priest of Apollo at Troy and was strangled by serpents together with two of his sons because he had offended the god.

Intereā reliquī Cyclōpēs, clāmōre audītō, undique ad spēluncam convēnērunt, et ā Polyphēmō quaesīvērunt quam ob causam tantum clāmōrem sustulisset. Ille respondit sē graviter vulnerātum esse, et magnō dolōre afficī; cum tamen cēterī quaesīvissent quis eum vulnerāvisset, respondit ille, "Nēmō id fēcit." Deinde ūnus ē

---

[1] **hanc tibi grātiam referam**, *I will return you* (*i.e., do you in return*) *this favor.*

[2] **quam facultātem**, *the opportunity which.*

[3] *We ought not to lose such a chance.* **Omittere is the subject of the impersonal verb oportet.**

Cyclōpibus "At sī," inquit, "nēmō tē vulnerāvit, cōnsiliō (*by the will*) deōrum, quibus[1] nostrās vīrēs oppōnere nōn dēbēmus, hōc suppliciō afficeris." Hīs dictīs discessērunt Cyclōpēs.

The Escape

At Polyphēmus furōre impulsus Ulixem iterum quaerere coepit; tandem cum portam invēnisset, saxum quod portae obiectum erat āmōvit. Tum ipse in introitū sēdit et ovium ēgredientium terga manibus tractābat, nē virī inter ovēs ēgredī possent.

Quod cum vīdisset Ulixēs hoc cōnsilium cēpit; postquam trēs ovēs inter sē (*to one another*) vīminibus coniūnxit, ūnum ē sociīs ventribus eārum subiēcit; deinde ovēs hominem sēcum ferentēs ad portam ēgit. Polyphēmus postquam manūs tergīs ovium imposuit, eās ēgredī passus est. Ulixēs ubi hoc vīdit, omnēs suōs sociōs eōdem modō ēmīsit. Ipse ultimus ēvāsit.

The Wrath of Polyphemus

Hīs rēbus ita cōnfectīs, Ulixēs cum sociīs quam celerrimē ad lītus contendit; quō cum vēnissent, ab eīs quī in nāve relictī erant magnā cum laetitiā acceptī sunt. Hī enim, eōs in perīculum grave vēnisse (id quod erat[2]) arbitrātī, aut nōnnūllōs submittere aut omnēs auxilium ferre parābant.

Tum Ulixēs quam celerrimē proficīscī cōnstituit. Iussit igitur omnēs nāvem cōnscendere, et, ancorīs sublātīs, paulum ā lītore in altum prōvectus est. Tum magnā vōce exclāmāvit: "Tū, Polyphēme, quī iūra hospitī spernis, iūstās poenās crūdēlitātis tuae dedistī, nec tibi invideō." Hāc vōce audītā Polyphēmus īrā vehementer commōtus ad mare sē contulit, et saxum ingēns in eam partem unde vōcem venīre sēnsit frūstrā adiēcit. Graecī autem incolumēs cursum tenuērunt.

---

[1] Dative, indirect object of **oppōnere**.

[2] *that which was* (the case), *i.e.*, as was really the case.

The Winds

Pauca mīlia passuum ab eō locō prōgressus Ulixēs ad īnsulam quandam nōmine Aeoliam pervēnit. Haec patria erat ventōrum. Ibi rēx Aeolus ipse Graecōs hospitiō accēpit, atque eīs persuāsit ut paucōs diēs in eā regiōne manērent. Septimō diē, cum sociī ē labōribus sē recēpissent, Ulixēs, nē annī tempore ā cursū exclūderētur, sine morā proficīscī statuit. Tum Aeolus sociōs Ulixis amplē dōnīs dōnāvit,[1] atque ipsī magnum dedit saccum, in quō omnēs ventōs praeter Zephyrum[2] inclūserat. Ulixēs hoc dōnum libenter accēpit; tum ē portū solvit.

Novem diēs Zephyrō secundō cursum tenuerant, iamque in cōnspectum patriae suae veniēbant. Ulixēs, quī dēfessus erat, paulum quiētis[3] capiēbat. At sociī, quī quid in illō saccō inclūsum esset ignōrābant, cum vidērent ducem somnō oppressum esse, magnam occāsiōnem sibi darī arbitrātī sunt, crēdēbant enim aurum ibi cēlārī. Itaque saccum sine morā solvērunt.

Tum, ventīs līberātīs, tanta tempestās subitō orta est ut illī cursum tenēre nōn possent, sed in eandem partem unde erant profectī referrentur. Ulixēs ē somnō excitātus quō in locō rēs esset statim intellēxit; saccum solūtum, Ithacam post tergum relictam vīdit. Tum vērō maximē īrā commōtus sociōs incūsābat quod cupiditāte pecūniae adductī spem salūtis prōiēcerant.

The Home of Circe

Brevī intermissō spatiō Graecī īnsulae cuidam appropinquāvērunt, quam Circē, fīlia Sōlis, incolēbat. Ubi ad terram pervēnit, Ulixēs sociōs in duās partēs dīvīsit, quārum alterī[4] Eurylochus, vir summae virtūtis, alterī ipse praeesset.[5] Hōc

---

[1] *presented with gifts.*
[2] The west wind was left out, because it was favorable for Ulysses.
[3] Genitive of the whole, depending on **paulum**.
[4] Dative with **praesum**. [5] *was to be in command.*

factō Eurylochus cum duōbus et vīgintī sociīs ē nāve ēgressus in interiōrem partem īnsulae profectus est. Magnus tamen timor animōs omnium occupāverat. Vix quidem poterant eī quī in nāve relictī erant lacrimās tenēre, crēdēbant enim sē sociōs suōs numquam posteā vīsūrōs esse.

Illī autem brevī tempore ad vīllam quandam pervēnērunt. Hīc Circē ipsa omnēs ut domum intrārent invītāvit. Eurylochus, quī īnsidiās timēbat, forīs exspectāre cōnstituit; at reliquī rē novā adductī intrāvērunt. Cēnam invēnērunt omnibus rēbus īnstrūctam, quam libenter vīdērunt. At Circē vīnum medicāmentō quōdam miscuerat; quod cum illī bibissent, gravī somnō subitō oppressī sunt.

Transformation and Countercharm

Tum Circē, quae artis magicae summam scientiam habēbat, baculō aureō quod gerēbat capita eōrum tetigit; quō factō omnēs in porcōs subitō conversī sunt. Intereā Eurylochus, quī ignōrābat quid in aedibus agerētur, ad occāsum sōlis exspectāvit; tum sōlus ad nāvem revertī cōnstituit. Eō cum vēnisset, tīmōre ita perturbātus est ut vix ea quae vīderat nārrāre posset.

At Ulixēs satis intellēxit sociōs suōs in perīculō esse, et Eurylochō imperāvit ut sine morā ad eam domum sē dūceret. Ille tamen multīs cum lacrimīs Ulixem ōrābat nē in tantum perīculum sē prōiceret.[1] Ulixēs autem respondit sē nēminem invītum sēcum adductūrum; eī licēre in nāve manēre;[2] sē ipsum sine ūllō auxiliō rem susceptūrum.[3] Hoc cum magnā vōce dīxisset, ē nāve dēsiluit, et nūllō sequente sōlus in viam sē dedit.[4]

---

[1] **nē sē prōiceret**, *not to throw himself.*

[2] Subject of the impersonal **licēre**.

[3] This passage in the form of direct discourse would run as follows; **Nēminem invītum mēcum addūcam; tibi licet in nāve manēre; ego ipse sine ūllō auxiliō rem suscipiam.**

[4] *put himself on the way, started.*

Paulum itineris[1] prōgressus ad vīllam pervēnit, quam statim intrāre statuit, intellēxit enim hanc esse eandem dē quā Eurylochus dīxisset.[2] At cum ad līmen vēnisset, subitō adulēscentem figūrā pulcherrimā vīdit, aureum baculum manū gerentem. Hic, "Quid tē," inquit, "impellit, aut quō ruis? Nōnne scīs hanc esse Circēs[3] domum? Hīc inclūsī sunt amīcī tuī, ex hūmānā figūrā in porcōs conversī. Num cupis ipse eundem cāsum ferre?"

Ulixēs ubi vōcem audīvit deum Mercurium agnōvit; nūllīs[4] tamen precibus ā cōnsiliō dēterrērī potuit. Quod cum Mercurius sēnsisset, herbam quandam eī dedit, quam[5] contrā artem magicam maximam vim habēre dīcēbat. "Hanc cape (*take*)," inquit, "et, ubi Circē tē baculō tetigerit,[6] tū gladiō impetum in eam fac (*make*)." Hīs dictīs Mercurius ex oculīs Ulixis sē ēripuit.

The Enchantress Foiled. Restoration

Brevī intermissō spatiō Ulixēs domum intrāvit, et ab ipsā Circē benignē exceptus est. Omnia eōdem modō atque[7] anteā facta sunt. Cēnam omnibus rēbus īnstrūctam vīdit, et accumbere[8] iussus est. Mox, ubi famēs cibō dēpulsa est, Circē pōculum aureum vīnō replētum Ulixī dedit. Ille timēbat nē (*that*) venēnum in vīnō esset, pōculum tamen hausit; quō factō Circē, postquam caput eius baculō tetigit, ea verba locūta est quibus sociōs eius anteā in porcōs converterat.

At tanta erat vīs eius herbae quam Mercurius dederat ut neque venēnum neque verba quicquam efficere possent. Ulixēs autem, ut eī Mercurius praecēperat, gladiō impetum in eam

---

[1] Genitive of the whole, depending on **paulum**.

[2] This verb is subjunctive, because it is the verb of a subordinate clause of the indirect statement.

[3] A Greek form of the genitive.

[4] *not . . . any*. Put the negative with the translation of **potuit**.

[5] The subject of **habēre**.

[6] *touches*, literally *shall have touched*.

[7] *as*. **Atque** regularly has this meaning after words of likeness.

[8] To recline at table was a Roman custom, often attributed by Latin writers to others than Romans.

fēcit. Tum Circē, cum sēnsisset artem suam nihil valēre,[1] multīs cum lacrimīs eum nē sē interficeret[2] ōrāvit.

Ulixēs autem, ubi sēnsit eam timōre perterritam esse, postulāvit ut sociōs sine morā in hūmānam figūram redūceret. At Circē hīs rēbus graviter commōta ad pedēs eius sē prōiēcit, et multīs cum lacrimīs iūre iūrandō cōnfirmāvit sē omnibus rēbus[3] eī[4] satisfactūram esse; tum porcōs in domum immittī iussit. Illī cum ducem suum agnōvissent, magnō dolōre affectī sunt, quod nūllō modō potuērunt eum dē rēbus suīs certiōrem facere.

Circē tamen unguentō quōdam corpora eōrum ūnxit; quō factō omnēs in figūram hūmānam redditī sunt. Magnō cum gaudiō Ulixēs amīcōs agnōvit, et nūntium ad lītus mīsit, quī reliquīs[5] Graecīs sociōs receptōs esse dīceret. Illī autem hīs rēbus cognitīs statim ad domum Circēs sē contulērunt; quō cum vēnissent, omnēs ūniversī laetitiae sē dēdidērunt.

Afloat Again

Posterō diē Ulixēs in animō habēbat ex īnsulā quam celerrimē discēdere; Circē autem, quae iam amōrī sē submittēbat,[6] omnibus precibus eum ōrāre coepit ut paucōs diēs apud sē morārētur. Hōc tandem impetrātō tanta beneficia in eum contulit ut tōtum annum ibi cōnsūmeret. Tum autem magnus amor patriae et uxōris eum cēpit. Sociīs igitur ad sē convocātīs quid in animō habēret ostendit.

Ubi tamen ad lītus dēscendit, nāvem suam tempestātibus ita frāctam invēnit ut paene inūtilis esset; sociī autem cum tantā dīligentiā labōrābant ut ante tertium diem nāvem refēcerint. Circē ubi vīdit profectiōnem parārī, Ulixem vehementer ōrābat ut eō cōnsiliō dēsisteret. Ille tamen, nē annī tempore ā cursū exclūderētur, rē frūmentāriā comparātā eōdem diē nāvem solvit.

---

[1] **nihil valēre**, *had no power*, or *effect*.
[2] **nē sē interficeret**, *not to kill her*.
[3] Ablative, *in all respects*.
[4] Dative, depending on **satisfactūram esse**.
[5] Indirect object of **dīceret**.
[6] *was submitting herself to, was yielding to.*

GAUDEAMUS IGITUR

Student Song

1. Gau-de-a-mus i-gi-tur, Ju-ve-nes dum su-mus;
2. U-bi sunt, qui an-te nos In mun-do fu-e-re?
3. Vi-ta nos-tra bre-vis est Bre-vi fi-ni-e-tur,

Gau-de-a-mus i-gi-tur, Ju-ve-nes dum su-mus;
U-bi sunt, qui an-te nos In mun-do fu-e-re?
Vi-ta nos-tra bre-vis est Bre-vi fi-ni-e-tur,

Post ju-cun-dam ju-ven-tu-tem, Post mo-les-tam se-nec-tu-tem,
Tran-se-as ad su-pe-ros, A-be-as ad in-fe-ros,
Ve-nit mors ve-lo-ci-ter, Ra-pit nos a-tro-ci-ter,

Nos ha-be-bit hu-mus, Nos ha-be-bit hu-mus.
Quos si vis vi-de-re, Quos si vis vi-de-re.
Ne-mi-ni par-ce-tur, Ne-mi-ni par-ce-tur.

4. Alma mater floreat,
Quæ nos educavit,
Caros et commilitones,
Dissitas in regiones
Sparsos, congregavit.

5. Vivat et res publica
Et qui illam regit,
Vivat nostra civitas,
Mæcenatum caritas,
Quæ nos hic protegit.

VEXILLUM STELLATUM

ANTHONY F. GEYSER, S. J. — JOHN S. SMITH

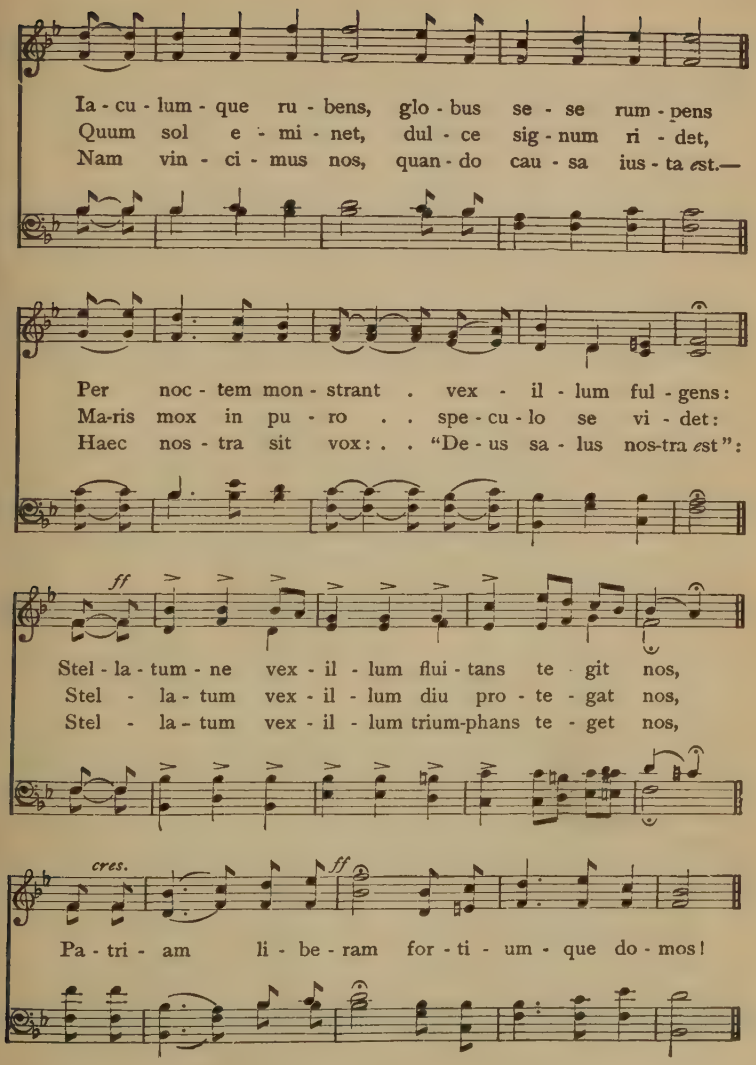
1. Po - test - ne cer - ni, pro - ful - gen - te di - e,
2. Vix in o - ra ma - ris vi - sum per te - ne - bras,
3. Sic es - to sem - per, ma - nus quam li - be - ra

Sa - lu - ta - tum sig - num cir - ca noc - tis ad - ven - tum?
Hos - tis u - bi cas - tra ta - ci - tus col - lo - ca - vit,
Ar - cet a pa - tri - a bel - li vas - ta - ti - o - nem!

La - ti clav*i*[1] et stel - lae, de - cer - tant*e* a - ci - e,
Quid est hoc quod ven - tus, mon - tis per la - te - bras
Tri - um - phan - te pa - ce pa - tri - a pros - pe - ra

Glo - ri - o - se cin - gunt op - pi - di mu - ni - men - tum!
Vo - li - tans, a - pe - rit rur - sus et com - pli - ca - vit?
De - um lau - det qui nos sta - tu - it na - ti - o - nem!

[1] Letters printed in italics are elided in singing.


Ia - cu - lum - que ru - bens, glo - bus se - se rum - pens
Quum sol e - mi - net, dul - ce sig - num ri - det,
Nam vin - ci - mus nos, quan - do cau - sa ius - ta est.—
Per noc - tem mon - strant . vex - il - lum ful - gens:
Ma-ris mox in pu - ro . . spe - cu - lo se vi - det:
Haec nos - tra sit vox: . . "De - us sa - lus nos-tra est":
ff
Stel - la - tum - ne vex - il - lum flui - tans te - git nos,
Stel - la - tum vex - il - lum diu pro - te - gat nos,
Stel - la - tum vex - il - lum trium-phans te - get nos,
cres.
ff
Pa - tri - am li - be - ram for - ti - um - que do - mos!

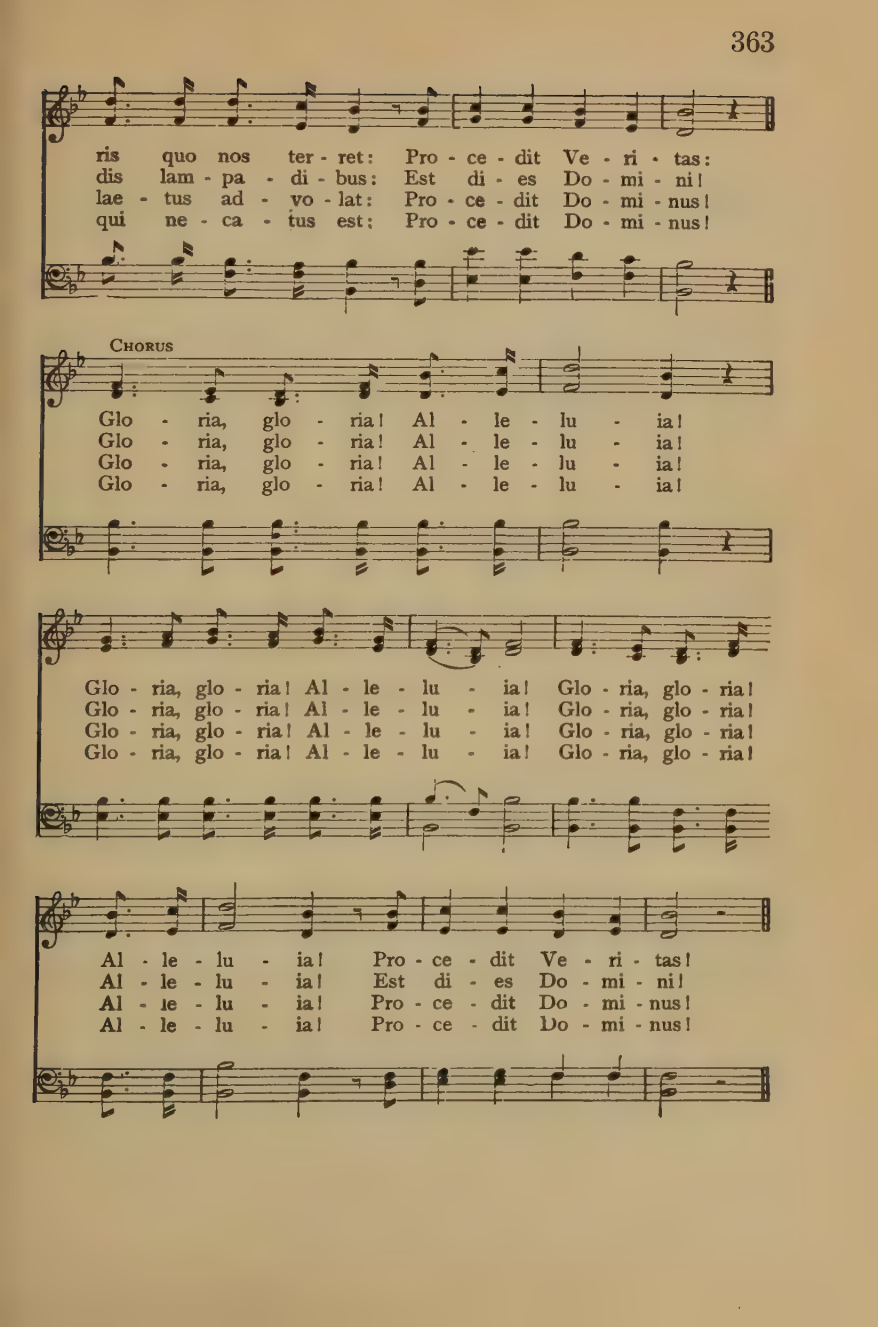
REI PUBLICAE PAEAN MILITARIS

ANTHONY F. GEYSER — WILLIAM STEFFE

Allegretto

1. Vi - di o - cu - lis, ut De - us ful - gi - dus in - ce - de - ret; Mox vin - de - mi - am con - cul - cans u - vas i - ra con - te - ret,
2 Vi - di Do - mi - num cas - tro - rum cen - tum spis - sum ig - ni - bus; A - ram po - su - e - re De - o ves - per - ti - nis ro - ri - bus;
3. Tu - ba ce - ci - nit quae num - quam ad re - cep - tum per - so - nat; Cor - da lus - trat ho - mi - num quos iu - di - can - dos ad - vo - cat;
4. De - us li - li - is re - ful - gens ul - tra ma - re na - tus est; Chris - ti pu - ri - ta - te nos - ter an - i - mus sa - cra - tus est;

Li - be - ra - vit ful - gur en - sis ce - le -
Le - go ius - tam De - i le - gem lu - ri -
Ci - to, an - i - ma, re - spon - de, pes dum
Mo - ri - a - mur De - o, no - bis di - re


ris quo nos ter - ret: Pro - ce - dit Ve - ri - tas:
dis lam - pa - di - bus: Est di - es Do - mi - ni!
lae - tus ad - vo - lat: Pro - ce - dit Do - mi - nus!
qui ne - ca - tus est: Pro - ce - dit Do - mi - nus!
Chorus
Glo - ria, glo - ria! Al - le - lu - ia!
Glo - ria, glo - ria! Al - le - lu - ia!
Glo - ria, glo - ria! Al - le - lu - ia!
Glo - ria, glo - ria! Al - le - lu - ia!
Glo - ria, glo - ria! Al - le - lu - ia! Glo - ria, glo - ria!
Glo - ria, glo - ria! Al - le - lu - ia! Glo - ria, glo - ria!
Glo - ria, glo - ria! Al - le - lu - ia! Glo - ria, glo - ria!
Glo - ria, glo - ria! Al - le - lu - ia! Glo - ria, glo - ria!
Al - le - lu - ia! Pro - ce - dit Ve - ri - tas!
Al - le - lu - ia! Est di - es Do - mi - ni!
Al - le - lu - ia! Pro - ce - dit Do - mi - nus!
Al - le - lu - ia! Pro - ce - dit Do - mi - nus!

FLEVIT LEPUS PARVULUS

16th Century Student Song

1. Fle - vit le - pus par - vu - lus cla-mans al - tis vo - ci - bus:
2. Ne - que in hor - to fu - i, ne - que o - lus co - me - di.
3. Lon - gas au - res ha - be - o, bre - vem cau - dam te - ne - o.

Quid fe - ci ho - mi - ni - bus, quod me se-quun-tur ca - ni - bus?

Quid fe - ci ho - mi - ni - bus, quod me se-quun-tur ca - ni - bus?

4. Leves pedes habeo, magnum saltum facio. Quid etc.
5. Domus mea silva est, lectus meus durus est. Quid etc.

DIES FESTUS HODIE

C. M. Von Weber, 1826

1. Tem - pus hoc lae - ti - ti - ae! Di - es fes - tus ho - di - e!
2. Sti - lus nam et ta - bu - las Fe - ri - a - les e - pu - lae,
3. Quic-quid a - gant a - li - i Iu - ve - nes a - me - mus

Om - nes de - bent psal - le - re, Can - ti - le - nas pro - me - re:
Et Na - so - nis car - mi - na Vel auc - to - rum pa - gi - na.
Et cum tur - ba plu - ri - mum Lu - dum ce - le - bre - mus.

DOMINE SALVAM FAC

Charles Gounod

Maestoso
ff

Do - mi-ne, sal-vam fac pa - tri - am nos-tram A - me - ri - cam,

et ex - au - di nos in di - e quâ in - vo - ca - ve - ri - mus te.

INTEGER VITAE

HORACE, Ode xxii — F. FLEMMING, 1810

1. In - te - ger vi - tæ, sce - le - ris - que pu - rus
2. Si - ve per Syr - tes i - ter æs - tu - o - sas,
3. Nam - que me sil - va lu - pus in Sa - bi - na,

Non e - get Mau - ris jac - u - lis nec ar - cu, Nec ve - ne -
Si - ve fac - tu - rus per in - hos - pi - ta - lem Cau - ca - sum,
Dum me - am can - to La - la - gen, et ul - tra Ter - mi - num

na - tis gra - vi - da sa - git - tis, Fus - ce, pha - re - tra.
vel quæ lo - ca fa - bu - lo - sus Lam - bit Hy - das - pes.
cu - ris va - gor ex - pe - di - tis, Fu - git in - er - mem.

The pure in life and free from crime needs no Moorish darts nor bow, nor, my Fuscus, a quiver laden with poisoned arrows, whether he means to journey over the boiling Syrtes, or over the inhospitable Caucasus, or the places laved by storied Hydaspes. For from me, whilst singing my Lalagé in my Sabine wood, and roving beyond its bound with cares cast aside, there fled a wolf, unarmed as I was.

Translated by WILLIAM COUTTS.

APPENDIX I

FREQUENCY OF LATIN WORDS AND PHRASES

LATIN IN EVERYDAY USE

Below are given some words of Latin derivation in common use today. Look up the derivation of these words and show in the case of each how Latin helps you with the meaning or the spelling or both. Can a Latin student confuse *accept* and *except*, *altar* and *alter*, *assent* and *ascent*, *session* and *cession?* How do you know that a *pantry* was not originally a place for *pans*?

In Business: success, experience, salary, competent, application, capital, principal, interest, receipt, credit, debit, debt, deficit, proprietor, commercial, mercantile, refer, prefer, regular, competition, diary, clerical, factory, manufacture, credentials, certificate, particular.

In the English Class: narration, description, exposition, argument, unity, coherence, sentence, declarative, interrogative, exclamatory, positive, negative, verb, regular, transitive, infinitive, participle, auxiliary, imperative, conjunction, coordinate, subordinate, pronoun, personal, relative, conjunctive, demonstrative, punctuation, pronunciation, declension, conjugation, volume, simile, literary, legend, vocabulary, dictionary.

Agriculture: agriculture, horticulture, floriculture, arable, cereal, biennial, perennial, stamen, corolla, calyx, fungus.

Biology: animal, quadruped, centipede, nares, pelvis, pectus, vertebra, tibia, femur, digit, cuticle, antennae, pulmonary, maxilla, mammal.

Mathematics: plus, minus, exponent, coefficient, transpose, subtract, subtrahend, minuend, dividend, divisor, multiplicand, multiplier, decimal, unit, radius, digit, radical, numerator, denominator, addition, subtraction, multiplication, division, proportion, equation, solution, circle, circumference, semicircle, vertical, perpendicular, factor, quantity.

In General: herb, separate, ambulance, tenement, oculist, spectacles, dentist, matron, relative, pantry, necessary, anniversary, complexion, circus, testament, testimony, motor, dependent, candidate, association, delegate, committee, itinerary, prohibition, secretary, accept, except, conductor, eraser, manual, professor, assignment, ignorance, vacation, college, university, lecture, diligence, discipline, superintendent, examination, privilege, laboratory, finally, similar, occasion, accommodate, preparation, occurrence, effect, affect, compliment, complement, conscience, describe, supersede, opposite, prejudice, counsel, council, possession, simultaneous, benefit, adjacent, comparative, apparatus, temperate, temporal, latitude, lateral.

STATE MOTTOES

Two fifths of the States have Latin mottoes, some of which have already appeared in the Lessons.

Ad astra per aspera	Kansas
Cedant arma togae	Wyoming
Crescit eundo	New Mexico
Dirigo	Maine
Ditat Deus	Arizona
Dum spiro spero	South Carolina
E pluribus unum	United States
Ense petit placidam sub libertate quietem	Massachusetts
Excelsior	New York
Justitia omnibus	District of Columbia
Montani semper liberi	West Virginia
Nil sine numine	Colorado
Qui transtulit sustinet	Connecticut
Regnant populi	Arkansas
Salve	Idaho
Salus populi suprema lex esto	Missouri
Scuto bonae voluntatis tuae coronasti nos	Maryland
Si quaeris peninsulam amoenam circumspice	Michigan
Sic semper tyrannis	Virginia

LATIN WORDS IN THE CONSTITUTION

Note the large proportion of words derived from the Latin.[1]

Preamble to the *Constitution*

We, the *people* of the *United States*, *in order* to *form* a more *perfect union*, *establish justice*, *insure domestic tranquillity*, *provide* for the *common defence*, *promote* the *general* welfare, *secure* the blessings of *liberty* to ourselves and our *posterity*, do *ordain* and *establish* this *constitution* for the *United States* of *America*.

LATIN PHRASES

Below is a partial list of familiar Latin phrases, some of which have already appeared in the mottoes of the Lessons.

Ad finem
Ad infinitum
Ad modum
Ad nauseam
Ad referendum
Ad valorem
Alias
Alibi
Alma Mater
Alter ego
Ante bellum
Aqua vitae
Bona fide
Carthago delenda est
Cave canem
Ceteris paribus
Corpus Christi
De gustibus non disputandum
De novo
Deo, amicis, patriae
Deo volente *or* Volente deo
Deus vobiscum
Dramatis personae
Dux femina facti
Ecce homo
E pluribus unum
Excelsior
Exeunt
Exit
Ex officio
Ex post facto
Ex tempore
Ex voto
Facsimile
Fiat
Fiat lux
Gloria in excelsis
Habeas corpus
In armis
In esse
In extremis
Infra dignitatem (infra dig.)
In memoriam

[1] Selections from English Classics with which the student is familiar may be treated in the same way.

In pace
In posse
In situ
In statu quo
Inter nos
In toto
Ipse dixit
Ipso facto
Ita lex scripta est
Labor omnia vincit
Lapsus linguae
Lapsus memoriae
Lares et Penates
Laus Deo
Lex non scripta
Lex terrae
Mea culpa
Mens sana in corpore sano
Meum et tuum
Mirabile dictu
Modus operandi
Morituri salutamus
Multum in parvo
Ne plus ultra
Nolens volens
Non compos mentis
Nulli secundus
Omnia ad Dei gloriam
Pater noster
Pater patriae
Pax vobiscum
Per annum
Per capita
Per diem
Per se
Post mortem
Prima facie
Pro bono publico
Pro et con(tra)
Pro rata
Pro tempore
Quid nunc
Requiescat in pace
Res gestae
Semper fidelis
Sine die
Sine dubio
Sine qua non
Sui generis
Summum bonum
Te Deum laudamus
Tempus fugit
Terra firma
Ultimatum
Una voce
Vade mecum
Veni, vidi, vici
Versus
Via
Vice versa
Vivat res publica
Vivat rex
Viva voce
Vox populi, vox Dei

ABBREVIATIONS FROM LATIN WORDS

A.D. — Annō Dominī
Aet. — Aetātis
A.M. — Ante merīdiem; Artium Magister
A.U.C. — Annō urbis conditae
e.g. — exemplī grātiā
etc. — et cētera
i.e. — id est
I.H.S. — In hōc signō; Iēsus hominum salvātor
I.N.R.I. — Iēsus Nazarēnus Rēx Iūdaeōrum
N.B. — Notā bene
P.M. — Post merīdiem
P.S. — Post scrīptum
S.P.Q.R. — Senātus Populusque Rōmānus
vs. — versus

LATIN QUOTATIONS

Quotations from the Latin are constantly met in reading, and in the speech of many persons. Below are given some of the best-known, many of which have already appeared in the Lessons.

Alea iacta est. The die is cast. — *Caesar at the Rubicon.*

Ave Caesar! Morituri te salutant. Hail, Caesar! those about to die salute you! — *Gladiators in the Arena.*

Carpe diem. Seize the opportunity. — *Horace.*

Cui bono? To whose advantage? — *Cicero.*

Cum grano salis. With a grain of salt. — *Pliny.*

De mortuis nil nisi bonum (bene). Of the dead nothing but good (should be spoken or said). — *Diogenes Laertius.*

Diem perdidi. I have lost a day. — *Titus.*

Dira necessitas. Dire necessity. — *Horace.*

Disiecta membra. Scattered members (parts). — *Horace.*

Docendo discitur. We learn by teaching. — *Seneca.*

Eheu fugaces anni! Alas, the fleeting years! — *Horace.*

Errare humanum est. To err is human. — *Seneca.*

Facilis descensus Averno. The descent to Avernus is easy. — *Vergil.*

Factum fieri infectum non potest. You can't undo what's done. — *Terence.*

Festina lente. Make haste slowly. — *Augustus in Suetonius.*

Finis coronat opus. The end crowns the work. — *Ovid.*

Fortes fortuna adiuvat. Fortune favors the brave. — *Terence.*

Fortuna caeca est. Fortune is blind. — *Cicero.*

Hinc illae lacrimae. Hence those tears. — *Terence.*

In hoc signo vinces. In this sign (the cross) thou wilt conquer. — *Constantine.*

In medias res. Into the midst of things. — *Horace.*

In medio tutissimus ibis. The middle course is the safest. — *Ovid.*

Ipse dixit. He said it himself. — *Cicero.*

Labor omnia vincit. Work conquers everything. — *Vergil.*

Laudator temporis acti. A praiser of times gone by. — *Horace.*

Licentia poetica. Poetic license. — *Seneca.*

Lupus in fabula. The wolf in the fable. — *Terence.*

Mens sana in corpore sano. A sound mind in a sound body. — *Juvenal.*

Nec possum tecum vivere, nec sine te. I can't live with you, nor without you. — *Martial.*

Nil homini certum est. Nothing is sure to man. — *Ovid.*

Nomen et omen. The name and the portent. — *Plautus.*

Non omnia possumus omnes. We can't all do everything. — *Vergil.*

Non omnis moriar. I shall not wholly perish. — *Horace.*

(Astra castra) Numen lumen. (The stars my camp) God my light. — *Motto of University of Wisconsin.*

Omnia mutantur. All things change. — *Ovid.*

O tempora! O mores! Oh the times! Oh the customs! — *Cicero.*

Pares cum paribus facillime congregantur. Birds of a feather flock together. — *Cicero.*

Per aspera ad astra. To the stars through bolts and bars. — *Seneca.*

Periculum in mora. Danger in delay. — *Livy.*

Potior est, qui prior est. First come first served, *or* The early bird catches the worm.— *Terence.*

Quod erat demonstrandum. Which was to be proved. — *Euclid.*

Quot homines, tot sententiae. As many opinions as people. — *Terence.*

Rara avis. A rare bird. — *Horace.*

Requiescat in pace. Let him rest in peace.

Roma aeterna. Rome the eternal. — *Tibullus.*

Semper idem. Always the same. — *Cicero.*

Summa summarum. The ultimate control, or, the final settlement (The total of totals). — *Plautus.*

Suum cuique. To every one his own. — *Cicero.*

Tempus edax rerum. Time, the devourer of (all) things. — *Ovid.*

Timeo Danaos et dona ferentes. I fear the Greeks even when bringing gifts. — *Vergil.*

Ultima Thule. The farthest land. — *Vergil.*

Vae victis. Woe to the vanquished! — *Livy.*

Vanitas vanitatum et omnia vanitas. Vanity of vanities, all is vanity. — *Ecclesiastes i, 2.*

Veni, vidi, vici. I came, saw, conquered. — *Caesar.*

Vires acquirit eundo. It gains strength as it goes. — *Vergil.*

Virginibus puerisque. For girls and boys. — *Horace.*

Vita brevis, ars longa. Life is short, art long. — *Hippocrates.*

APPENDIX II

HELPFUL HINTS

In studying Latin one will find that certain words, forms, and constructions occur over and over again. If these are carefully memorized, his work will be much easier. In this appendix the commonest of these forms and constructions are so grouped that they can be readily learned. Nothing is included unless it will be of value later on.

The work in Derivatives and Word-formation and the suggestions for a Notebook will also help make your study easier.

In the lists the words are in alphabetical order, by groups. The English meanings are printed in a separate column so that either column may be covered with a sheet of paper for rapid memory drill.

FIRST HALF YEAR

Vocabulary. — The following list is to be memorized thoroughly. Time-limited tests are recommended, in which teachers should strive to secure at least 90 per cent efficiency.

Verbs

First Conjugation

a′mō	*love*
appel′lō	*name, call*
cōnfir′mō	*strengthen, assert*
dō	*give*
exspec′tō	*look out for, wait for*
labō′rō	*toil, suffer*
lī′berō	*set free*
nā′vigō	*sail*
nūn′tiō	*give news, announce*
oc′cupō	*seize*
pa′rō	*make ready, prepare*
com′parō	*make ready, buy, compare*
por′tō	*carry*
pug′nō	*fight*
ser′vō	*keep, save*
spec′tō	*look at*
su′perō	*overcome, surpass defeat*
vo′cō	*call*

Second Conjugation

ha′beō	*have, hold*
mo′neō	*warn, advise*

mo'veō	*move*
commo'veō	*move thoroughly, alarm*
permo'veō	*move strongly, excite*
remo'veō	*move back, withdraw*
respon'deō	*answer*
te'neō	*hold*
conti'neō	*hold together, bound*
obti'neō	*hold fast, obtain*
perti'neō	*extend, belong to*
★ susti'neō	*uphold, resist*
ti'meō	*be afraid, fear*
vi'deō	*see*

Third Conjugation

a'gō	*drive, do, plead*
cō'gō	*drive together, gather, compel*
red'igō	*reduce*
cē'dō	*move, go away, yield*
discē'dō	*go away*
excē'dō	*go out, withdraw*
dēfen'dō	*ward off, defend*
dū'cō	*lead*
addū'cō	*lead to, influence*
indū'cō	*lead on, influence*
perdū'cō	*lead through, construct*
prōdū'cō	*lead forward, protract*
ge'rō	*carry on*
lū'dō	*play*
mit'tō	*send*
āmit'tō	*send away, let go, lose*
commit'tō	*send together, entrust, join*
dīmit'tō	*send away, dispatch*
intermit'tō	*interrupt, stop*
permit'tō	*entrust; allow*
praemit'tō	*send ahead*
remit'tō	*send back, let go, relax*
pe'tō	*seek, attack, ask*
relin'quō	*leave behind*
scrī'bō	*write*
cōnscrī'bō	*write together, enroll*
vin'cō	*conquer*

Irregular

sum	*be*
ab'sum	*be away, be absent*
ad'sum	*be near, be present*

First Declension

agri'cola	*farmer*
amīci'tia	*friendship*
a'qua	*water*
fā'ma	*reputation, rumor*
fē'mina	*woman*
fī'lia	*daughter*
fortū'na	*chance, fortune*
fu'ga	*flight*
iniū'ria	*wrong*
īn'sula	*island*
lin'gua	*tongue, language*
lū'na	*moon*
memo'ria	*memory*
mēn'sa	*table, dish*
nātū'ra	*nature, character*
nau'ta ★	*sailor*
pa'tria	*one's country*
pecū'nia	*money*
poe'na	*penalty, punishment*

poē'ta	*poet*
por'ta	*gate*
prōvin'cia	*province*
puel'la	*girl*
pug'na	*fight*
rēgī'na	*queen*
sil'va	*forest*
ter'ra	*earth, land*
vi'a	*way, road*
victō'ria	*victory*
vī'ta	*life*

Second Declension

a'ger	*field, country*
a'nimus	*spirit, courage, heart*
an'nus	*year*
ar'ma	*arms, implements*
auxi'lium	*aid, assistance*
bel'lum	*war*
cas'tra	*camp*
cōnsi'lium	*plan, counsel*
de'us	*god*
do'minus	*master*
e'quus	*horse*
fac'tum	*deed*
fī'lius	*son*
frūmen'tum	*grain*
gla'dius	*sword*
li'ber	*book*
★ lo'cus	*place*
magis'ter	*master, teacher, helmsman*
negō'tium	*business, task*
nu'merus	*number*
o'culus	*eye*
offi'cium	*service, duty*
op'pidum	*town*
perī'culum	*trial, danger*
po'pulus	*people, nation*
prae'mium	*reward*
praesi'dium	*garrison, protection*
proe'lium	*battle*
pu'er	*boy*
rēg'num	*kingdom, royal power*
ser'vus	*slave*
sig'num	*sign, signal, standard*
so'cius	*ally*
ves'per	*evening*
vir	*man*

Third Declension

aes'tās	*summer*
altitū'dō	*height*
ar'bor	*tree*
auctō'ritās	*authority, influence*
ca'put	*head*
cele'ritās	*swiftness, speed*
cōn'sul	*consul*
cor'pus	*body*
dux	*leader*
flū'men	*river*
frā'ter	*brother*
hi'ems	*winter*
ho'mō	*man, human being*
lātitū'dō	*width*
lēx	*law*
līber'tās	*freedom*
★ lūx	*light*
magnitū'dō	*greatness, size*
mā'ter	*mother*
mī'les	*soldier*
multitū'dō	*large number, crowd*
nō'men	*name*
pa'ter	*father*
pāx	*peace*
pēs	*foot*
prīn'ceps	*leading man, chief*
rēx	*king*
sōl	*sun*

so'ror	*sister*
tem'pus	*time*
vic'tor	*conqueror*
vir'tūs	*manliness, bravery*
vōx	*voice, word*

Adjectives, Pronouns, Numerals

ae'quus	*level, equal, kindly*
al'tus	*high, deep*
amī'cus	*friendly*
am'plus	*large, splendid*
bar'barus	*foreign, rude*
bo'nus	*good*
cer'tus	*sure, certain*
crē'ber	*close, thick, frequent*
de'cimus	*tenth*
ēgre'gius	*outstanding, distinguished*
fīni'timus	*neighboring*
ignō'tus	*unknown*
inimī'cus	*unfriendly*
inī'quus	*uneven, unfair*
in'teger	*whole*
lā'tus	*wide*
lī'ber	*free*
lon'gus	*long*
mag'nus	*great*
ma'lus	*bad*
me'us	*my, mine*
mi'ser	*wretched*
mul'tus	*much;* (plu. *many*)
nō'nus	*ninth*
nos'ter	*our, ours*
nō'tus	*known*
no'vus	*new*
octā'vus	*eighth*
par'vus	*small*
pau'cī	*a few, few*
prī'mus	*first*
pū'blicus	*belonging to the people, public*
quār'tus	*fourth*
quīn'tus	*fifth*
re'liquus	*left behind, remaining, rest of*
secun'dus	*following, second, favorable*
sep'timus	*seventh*
sex'tus	*sixth*
ter'tius	*third*
ti'midus	*fearful, cowardly*
tu'us	*thy, thine, your, yours*
ū'nus	*one*
vē'rus	*true*
ves'ter	*your, yours*
cen'tum	*hundred*
de'cem	*ten*
du'o	*two*
no'vem	*nine*
oc'tō	*eight*
quat'tuor	*four*
quīn'que	*five*
sep'tem	*seven*
sex	*six*
trēs	*three*
vīgin'tī	*twenty*
is	*this, that, he*
quī	*who, which, that*

PREPOSITIONS, ADVERBS, CONJUNCTIONS

ā (ab)	*from, away from, by*	pos′teā	*after that, afterwards*
ad	*to, toward, near*	tum (tunc)	*at that time*
an′te	*before*	u′bi	*where, when*
cum	*with*	ac (at′que)	*and also, and*
dē	*down from, concerning*	aut	*or*
ē (ex)	*out of*	aut . . . aut	*either . . . or*
in	*in, into*	cūr	*why*
per	*through*	et	*and*
post	*after, behind*	et . . . et	*both . . . and*
prō	*in front of, in behalf of*	e′tiam	*also, even*
si′ne	*without*	-ne	(interrogative particle)
sub	*under, close to*	nec (ne′que)	*and not, nor, neither*
trāns	*across*	ne′que . . . ne′que	*neither . . . nor*
an′teā	*before that, previously*	quam	*how, as, than*
iam	*now, already, presently*	-que	*and*
nōn	*not*	quod	*because*
nunc	*now*	sed	*but*

Division of Words into Syllables, and Quantity. — From the beginning of the study of Latin careful attention should be given to pronunciation, quantity of vowels, and division into syllables. In written work the pupil should be encouraged to indicate the quantity of vowels, thus showing that he understands the correct pronunciation.

Inflections. — Frequent time-limited tests on inflections will insure accuracy and speed.

a. Nouns: 1st declension.
2d declension.
3d declension — omitting *i* stems.

b. Adjectives: 1st and 2d declension.

c. Formation of adverbs from these adjectives.

d. Pronouns: the demonstrative *is* and the relative *quī*.
e. Verbs: conjugation of *sum* throughout the indicative.
1st conjugation; indicative, active and passive.
2d conjugation; indicative, active and passive.
3d conjugation; indicative, active and passive, omitting *iō* verbs.
Principal parts of the verbs in the word list.

Principles of Syntax. — The rules involved under the following twelve topics are to be thoroughly memorized and applied in oral and written exercises:

a. Subject nominative.
b. Agreement of verb.
c. Direct object.
d. Agreement of adjective.
e. Predicate nominative.
f. Predicate adjective.
g. Agreement of relative pronoun.
h. Indirect object.
i. Appositive.
j. Ablative of means.
k. Adnominal use of genitive without distinction.
l. Accusative and ablative taught as following prepositions of word list without any attempt at classification.

Word Formation. — Attention should be called to the many phonetic changes in both consonants and vowels that appear in Latin compounds; for example, *acci'piō* = *ad* + *ca'piō*, *affi'ciō* = *ad* + *fa'ciō*, *occī'dō* = *ob* + *cae'dō*, *oc'cidō* = *ob* + *ca'dō*, *perfec'tus* = *per* + *fac'tus*, *cō'gō* = *co(n)* + *a'gō*, *sur'gō* = *sub* + *re'gō*, *susti'neō* = *sub* + *te'neō*, *libel'lus* = *li'ber* + *lus*, *scrīp'tor* = *scrīb* + *tor*, *āc'tiō* = *ag* + *tiō*, *col'locō* = *con* + *lo'cō*, etc.

The unassimilated forms of some of these words are often found; for example, *con'locō*, *adfi'ciō*. Careful study of such changes should be made in order that the pupil may

detect easily words which otherwise would seem quite unfamiliar.

a. Prefixes

ā (*ab*, *abs*), *ad*, *con* (= *cum*) (prepositional and intensive force), *dē*, *ē* (*ex*), *in* (prepositional use).

These prefixes are to be studied for two purposes: first, to show how the meaning of the simple Latin verb is modified by the addition of the prefix; second, to define more exactly the meaning of English derivatives. For example, in the first half year:

dū′cō, *lead* + ab = abdū′cō, *lead away.*
+ ad = addū′cō, *lead to.*
+ con = condū′cō, *lead together.*
+ dē = dēdū′cō, *lead down.*
+ ē = ēdū′cō, *lead out.*
+ in = indū′cō, *lead into.*

English derivatives: *adduce*, *conduce*, *deduce*, *educe*, *induce*, *conduct*, *deduct*, *induct*, *conducive*, *deduction*, etc. The pupil should be warned that some of these prefixes have merely an intensive force.

b. Suffixes

The meanings of the following suffixes and their effect upon the stems with which they are combined should be carefully studied:

(1) Nouns from adjectives:

-TĀS, *-(T)IA*, *-TŪDŌ* (forming abstract nouns denoting condition or quality). The most common equivalent English suffixes include: -ship, -(t)y, -ness, -tude.

(2) Adjectives from nouns:

-ĀNUS, *-ICUS*, *-IUS* (forming adjectives denoting "pertaining to"). The most common equivalent English suffixes include: -an, -ic, -y.

c. English derivatives

(1) Since a very large number of English words has come directly or indirectly from Latin, special attention should be given to the derivation of such words. The following list, from which the teacher may make her selection, will be suggestive as a basis for this study. From each of these verbs the pupil should be required to make a list of all the more important English derivatives. Pupils may find a notebook helpful in this connection.

Ser'vō, lo'cō, vo'cō, pug'nō, vi'deō, mo'veō, dū'cō, mit'tō, te'neō, por'tō, cē'dō, pu'tō, pa'rō, nūn'tiō, spec'tō, ha'beō, mo'neō, a'gō, scrī'bō, cognōs'cō.

(2) With the aid of an unabridged English dictionary study carefully the form and meaning of words like the following and compare with Latin originals:

Urbane, actor, trivial, tabernacle, vespers, reporter, sinister, dexterity, salute, lunatic, bonus, miser, alumnus, virtue, superb, doctor, circus, pagan, umbrella, suburb.

Many of these words have interesting histories. These may well be entered in the pupil's notebook.

Latin Readings. — Not less than ten pages of very easy, connected and well-graded text should be read in addition to the material incorporated in the usual lesson. Reading the Latin aloud before translation is highly desirable.

In reading Latin, attention should be given to the phrases or word groups, as in English. In translating Latin the first step is to observe the word groups and attack them in order. After a passage has been studied and translated, it is well for the pupil to return to the word groups and practice reading the Latin with proper emphasis and expression.

Sentences. — Sentences should be easy and the usual exercises from Latin into English and from English into Latin

should be well-graded, connected, interesting and of value in themselves. There should also be practice in writing easy Latin sentences involving the material of the lesson.

There should be oral sentence work from English into Latin and from Latin into English, exercises with books closed, writing Latin from dictation and practice in translating easy sentences at hearing.

Study of Roman Background. — Even a brief study of Roman life and history will result in increased interest in the Latin language as the Romans become a living people to the pupils. A well-directed study of the life and characteristics of the Romans will also give opportunity for stimulating comparisons with the present day.

The following outline is simply a minimum. The teacher who realizes her obligation to vitalize Latin will find a wealth of stories and anecdotes which add greatly to the interest of the class. The work of the first year, however, should be extremely simple. Details can well be added in connection with the authors read during the later years of the course.

First Half Year

1. Roman daily life.
   a. The Roman family.
   b. The education of children.
   c. Roman manner of living: houses, slaves, meals, dress.

2. Hero stories illustrating the following characteristic Roman qualities: patriotism, courage, honor in keeping one's word.

Collateral Reading. — Beginning in the first half year and continuing throughout the Latin course, pupils should be encouraged to read as widely as possible in books which will give them the classical background so vital to a pleasurable and successful study of Latin. Interest should be the keynote of this work and the task of selecting suitable reading,

sometimes a whole book and sometimes certain selected parts, will fall upon the teacher, who should prepare a book list (to be posted on the bulletin board) for the use of her pupils during each year of the course. In addition to the satisfaction and enjoyment that pupils will gain from the reading itself, they should be afforded an opportunity to make reports occasionally. Reports from different pupils and from different sources will add both to the information and to the interest of the class.

First Half Year

During the first half year the reading should concern itself largely with the topics previously suggested as a background for the work of this half year. Books that are easy to read may be read in their entirety, but from books of nonfiction appropriate selections should be made. Myths and legends will also be found interesting. At least 250 pages, of which not more than half should be fiction, should be read during this half year.

SECOND HALF YEAR

Vocabulary. — The following list is to be memorized thoroughly. Time-limited tests are to be continued and emphasized.

VERBS

First Conjugation

appropin'quō *approach*
clā'mō *shout, cry*
commū'nicō *share, communicate*
dēmōns'trō *point out*
dō (in compounds) *put, give*
circum'dō *put round, surround*
3d conjugation compounds
ab'dō *put away, hide*
red'dō *give back, return*
trā'dō *hand over, entrust, surrender*
du'bitō *hesitate, doubt*
ēnūn'tiō *disclose, announce*
exīs'timō *think, believe*
prōnūn'tiō *declare*
pu'tō *think*
renūn'tiō *announce, proclaim*
ignō'rō *be unacquainted with*

lau'dō	*praise*
occul'tō	*hide, conceal*
recu'perō	*regain, get back*
temp'tō	*try, attempt*
vī'tō	*avoid*
vul'nerō	*wound*

Second Conjugation

au'deō	*dare*
dē'beō	*owe, ought*
do'ceō	*teach, inform*
iu'beō	*order, command*
li'cet	*it is permitted* or *allowed*
ma'neō	*stay, remain*
perma'neō	*stay through, abide*
no'ceō	*harm*
obsi'deō	*sit against, besiege*
opor'tet	*it behooves, ought*
perter'reō	*frighten thoroughly*
possi'deō	*possess, acquire*
prohi'beō	*keep away*
stu'deō	*be eager, desire eagerly*

Third Conjugation

antecē'dō	*go before, surpass*
succē'dō	*approach, come next*
clau'dō	*close, shut*
coe'pī	*have begun, have commenced*
cognōs'cō	*learn;* (perfect: *know*)
cōnfī'dō	*trust*
cōnsis'tō	*take position, halt, stop*
dēsis'tō	*desist, cease*
resis'tō	*take a stand against, resist*
conten'dō	*struggle, hasten*
osten'dō	*hold out, show*
dī'cō	*say, speak*
ex'struō	*pile up, build*
īn'struō	*arrange, marshal*
le'gō	*pick, choose, read*
dē'ligō	*pick out, choose*
pel'lō	*strike, beat, drive*
compel'lō	*drive together, collect, force*
impel'lō	*drive on, urge on*
pō'nō	*put, place*
dēpō'nō	*put down, put aside*
expō'nō	*put forth, set forth*
impō'nō	*put on*
prōpō'nō	*set forth, propose*
pre'mō	*press*
submit'tō	*send under, send to assist, yield*
tra'hō	*drag, draw*
ca'piō	*take, seize*
acci'piō	*take to, receive, accept*
exci'piō	*take out, succeed to*
√inci'piō	*begin*
cu'piō	*desire, wish*
fa'ciō	*do, make*
cōnfi'ciō	*accomplish, complete*
dēfi'ciō	*fail, revolt from*
interfi'ciō	*kill*
perfi'ciō	*accomplish*
praefi'ciō	*put at the head of*
satisfa'ciō	*do enough, do one's duty, apologize*
ia'ciō	*hurl, throw*
adi'ciō	*add to*
coni'ciō	*hurl, throw*
obi'ciō	*throw against*
prōi'ciō	*hurl (forward)*

Fourth Conjugation

au'diō	*hear*
fī'niō	*limit, bound, end*

mū'niō	*do a task, build, fortify*
sci'ō	*know*
sen'tiō	*feel, think, judge*
cōnsen'tiō	*think together, agree*
ve'niō	*come*
circumve'niō	*come around, surround, cut off*
conve'niō	*come together, assemble*
inve'niō	*come upon, find*
perve'niō	*come through, arrive*

Irregular

dē'sum	*be lacking*
pos'sum	*be able, can*
prae'sum	*be ahead, be in charge of*
super'sum	*be over, remain, survive*

Nouns

First Declension

cō'pia	*supply, abundance* (plu., *forces*)
hō'ra	*hour*
ino'pia	*want, lack*
rī'pa	*bank, shore*
sagit'ta	*arrow*
to'ga	*toga*
tu'ba	*trumpet*
vīl'la	*farm house*

Second Declension

benefi'cium	*kind deed, service*
[illegible]'duum	*two days*
[illegible]	*plain, field*
di'gitus	*finger, toe*
imperā'tum	*command*
impe'rium	*command, power*
malefi'cium	*evil deed*
mo'dus	*measure, manner*
spa'tium	*space*
trī'duum	*three days*

Third Declension

ae'tās	*age, time of life*
cī'vitās	*citizenship, community, state*
condi'ciō	*agreement, terms, condition*
cōnsuētū'dō	*custom, habit*
cupi'ditās	*desire, longing*
difficul'tās	*difficulty*
dig'nitās	*worth, rank*
facul'tās	*power of doing, ability, chance*
ge'nus	*origin, kind, race*
iūs	*right, law*
laus	*praise, glory*
ōrā'tiō	*speech*
ōr'dō	*order, rank*
potes'tās	*power*
ra'tiō	*reckoning, plan, reason*
ti'mor	*fear*
vul'nus	*wound*
i'ter	*road, march*
cī'vis	*citizen*
dēns	*tooth*
fī'nis	*end, boundary;* (plu., *territory*)
hos'tis	*enemy*
ma're	*sea*
mēns	*mind*
mēn'sis	*month*
mōns	*mountain*
mors	*death*
nā'vis	*ship*
nox	*night*

pars	*part*
pōns	*bridge*
urbs	*city*
vīs	*violence, force*

Fourth Declension

adven'tus	*approach, arrival*
cor'nū	*horn, wing* (of an army)
do'mus	*home, house*
equitā'tus	*body of horsemen, cavalry*
exer'citus	*trained body, army*
ex'itus	*outcome, end*
ma'nus	*hand, band, troop*
pas'sus	*pace, (double) step*
senā'tus	*body of elders, senate*

Fifth Declension

a'ciēs	*edge, line of battle*
di'ēs	*day*
fi'dēs	*trust, pledge, reliability*
merī'diēs	*midday*
rēs	*thing*
rēs pū'blica	*commonwealth*
spēs	*hope*

ADJECTIVES, PRONOUNS

cu'pidus	*desirous*
dex'ter	*right* (of direction)
idō'neus	*suitable*
marī'timus	*of the sea, maritime*
necessā'rius	*necessary*
occul'tus	*hidden, secret*
perī'tus	*experienced, skilled*
propin'quus	*nearby, kinsman*
sinis'ter	*left* (of direction)
su'us	*his, her, its, their (own)*
vīcī'nus	*neighboring*
ā'cer	*sharp, keen, eager*
a'lacer	*eager, cheerful*
ce'ler	*swift*
commū'nis	*common, general*
diffi'cilis	*difficult*
dī'ligēns	*careful*
fa'cilis	*easy*
fidē'lis	*faithful*
for'tis	*brave*
gra'vis	*heavy, serious*
hu'milis	*low, lowly*
le'vis	*light, fickle*
mīl'le	*thousand*
nō'bilis	*well-known*
om'nis	*all, whole* (sing., *every*)
pār	*equal*
po'tēns	*able, powerful*
prae'sēns	*present, in person*
prū'dēns	*foreseeing, discreet, wise*
re'cēns	*fresh, new*
si'milis	*like, resembling*
singulā'ris	*one by one, extraordinary*
e'go	*I*
hic	*this*
ī'dem	*the same*
il'le	*that*
ip'se	*self, very*
quis	*who, any*
su'ī	*(of) himself, herself, itself, themselves*
tū	*thou, you*

Prepositions, Adverbs, Conjunctions

a'pud	*near, in the presence of, among*	hūc	*hither*
in'ter	*between, among*	iam prī'dem	*long ago*
ob	*against, on account of*	i'bi	*there*
prop'ter	*near, on account of*	in'de	*thence*
ae'grē	*with difficulty*	in'terim	*meanwhile*
am'plius	*more*	ma'gis	*more greatly, more*
be'ne	*well*	magno'pere	*greatly*
bis	*twice*	nē . . . qui'dem	*not even*
eō	*thither, to that place*	pa'rum	*(too) little*
eō'dem	*to the same place*	qui'dem	*certainly, at least*
fa'cile	*easily*	quō	*whither*
un'de	*whence*	sa'tis	*enough*
vehemen'ter	*strongly*	au'tem	*moreover, but*
vē'rō	*in truth, but*	e'nim	*for, indeed*
hīc (adv.)	*here, at this point*	nam	*for*
		sī	*if*

Inflections. — Frequent time-limited tests on inflections will insure accuracy and speed.

a. Inflections of the first half year are to be thoroughly reviewed according to a complete and classified list of typical words.

b. Nouns: 3d declension, *i* stems and apparent consonant stems.
4th declension.
5th declension.

c. Pronouns: interrogative, demonstrative (*hic, ille*), intensive, personal and reflexive.

d. Adjectives: 3d declension. Comparison of regular adjectives of all declensions. Declension of the comparative. Comparison of *bo'nus, mag'nus, ma'lus, par'vus* and *mul'tus.* Adjectives with superlative ending in *-rimus* and *-limus.*

e. Adverbs: formation of adverbs from adjectives of the 3d declension. Comparison of all adverbs.

f. Verbs: 4th conjugation, and 3d, *iō* verbs, indicative, active and passive; *pos'sum,* indicative; all infinitives and participles of the four conjugations (also of *sum* and *pos'sum*).

Principles of Syntax. — The twelve topics of syntax of the first half year are to be thoroughly reviewed and the following additional principles taken up:

a. Ablative of cause.
b. Ablative of specification.
c. Dative of indirect object with special and compound verbs (as met in vocabulary and reading).
d. Dative with certain adjectives (as met in vocabulary and reading).
e. Ablative of time when or within which.
f. Accusative of duration of time or extent of space.
g. Ablative of description.
h. Ablative of separation (as met in vocabulary and reading).
i. Uses of participle (except ablative absolute).
j. The infinitive:
(1) as subject and object.
(2) as complement.
(3) with subject accusative.
(4) with subject accusative in indirect statement (only as met).

Word Formation. — In the second half year, both prefixes and simple verbs already studied are to be reviewed, the new prefixes are to be compounded with the old verbs, and the old prefixes with the new verbs.

a. Prefixes

Cir'cum, *in* (negative use), *in'ter*, *per*, *prae*, *prō*, *sub*. For suggestions regarding the proper procedure in the study of this list, see the outline of work for the first half year.

b. Suffixes

The meanings of the following suffixes and their effect upon the stems with which they are combined should be carefully studied:

Nouns from verbs:

-OR, -TIŌ, -TUS (*-SUS*) (4th declension). These form nouns denoting action, the result of an action or state. The most common equivalent English suffixes include: -or, -(t)ion, -ing, -cy.

c. English derivatives

Note. — The same procedure should be followed as suggested under this heading in the work of the first half year. Use the following verbs as a basis.

(1) *pō'nō, ve'niō, pel'lō, mū'niō, tra'hō, dī'cō, sū'mō, fa'ciō, ca'piō, au'diō, dō, do'ceō, pre'mō, le'gō, clau'dō, vin'cō, nā'vigō, sen'tiō, au'deō, lau'dō.*

(2) With the aid of an unabridged English dictionary, study carefully the form and meaning of words like the following and compare with Latin originals: fraternity, capital, regalia, infinitive, gentle, fort, omnibus, ambition, faction, science, insulation, temperance, governor, integer, sinecure, jovial, profound, doubt, manual, gladiolus.

These may well be entered in the pupil's notebook.

Latin Readings. — Not less than 15 to 20 pages of easy Latin narrative adapted to the ability of the class should be read in addition to the material incorporated in the usual lesson.

Composition. — Practice at regular intervals in writing or giving orally easy Latin sentences involving the material of the lesson.

Roman Background. — This should include an adequate treatment of the following topics:

a. Roman daily life.
  (1) Games and amusements.
  (2) Water supply, public baths, appearance of streets, police and fire protection.

b. Hero stories illustrating the following characteristic Roman qualities: public integrity, sternness of discipline, frugality and simplicity.

c. A brief survey of Roman history to show the greatness of Rome. The extent of the Roman empire should be traced on a map.

Collateral Reading. — The same general procedure suggested for the first half year should be followed and the same amount of reading should be done. The reading will naturally concern itself largely with the background material suggested for the second half year.

APPENDIX III

INFLECTIONS

NOUNS

586. FIRST DECLENSION

Tuba, f., *trumpet.*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	tuba	tubae
Gen.	tubae	tubārum
Dat.	tubae	tubīs
Acc.	tubam	tubās
Abl.	tubā	tubīs

587. SECOND DECLENSION

	Amīcus, m., *friend.*	**Puer**, m., *boy.*	**Ager**, m., *field.*	**Vir**, m., *man.*	**Bellum**, n. *war.*
			SINGULAR		
Nom.	amīcus	puer	ager	vir	bellum
Gen.	amīcī	puerī	agrī	virī	bellī
Dat.	amīcō	puerō	agrō	virō	bellō
Acc.	amīcum	puerum	agrum	virum	bellum
Abl.	amīcō	puerō	agrō	virō	bellō
			PLURAL		
Nom.	amīcī	puerī	agrī	virī	bella
Gen.	amīcōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	bellōrum
Dat.	amīcīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	bellīs
Acc.	amīcōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	bella
Abl.	amīcīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	bellīs

588. THIRD DECLENSION

	Cōnsul, m., *consul.*	**Mīles**, m., *soldier.*	**Frāter**, m., *brother.*	**Flūmen**, n., *river.*
		SINGULAR		
Nom.	cōnsul	mīles	frāter	flūmen
Gen.	cōnsulis	mīlitis	frātris	flūminis
Dat.	cōnsulī	mīlitī	frātrī	flūminī
Acc.	cōnsulem	mīlitem	frātrem	flūmen
Abl.	cōnsule	mīlite	frātre	flūmine

		PLURAL		
Nom.	cōnsulēs	mīlitēs	frātrēs	flūmina
Gen.	cōnsulum	mīlitum	frātrum	flūminum
Dat.	cōnsulibus	mīlitibus	frātribus	flūminibus
Acc.	cōnsulēs	mīlitēs	frātrēs	flūmina
Abl.	cōnsulibus	mīlitibus	frātribus	flūminibus

	Ignis, m., *fire.*	**Mare**, n., *sea.*	**Hostis**, m., f., *enemy.*	**Urbs**, f., *city.*
		SINGULAR		
Nom.	ignis	mare	hostis	urbs
Gen.	ignis	maris	hostis	urbis
Dat.	ignī	marī	hostī	urbī
Acc.	ignem	mare	hostem	urbem
Abl.	igne, -ī	marī	hoste	urbe
		PLURAL		
Nom.	ignēs	maria	hostēs	urbēs
Gen.	ignium	marium	hostium	urbium
Dat.	ignibus	maribus	hostibus	urbibus
Acc.	ignēs	maria	hostēs	urbēs
Abl.	ignibus	maribus	hostibus	urbibus

589. FOURTH DECLENSION

	Exercitus, m., *army.*		**Cornū**, n., *horn.*	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	exercitus	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
Gen.	exercitūs	exercituum	cornūs	cornuum
Dat.	exercituī	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus
Acc.	exercitum	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
Abl.	exercitū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus

590 FIFTH DECLENSION

	Diēs, m. and f., *day.*		**Rēs**, f., *thing.*	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
Gen.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
Dat.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
Acc.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Abl.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

591. Irregular Declensions

	Deus, m., *god.*	**Dea**, f., *goddess.*	**Domus**, f., *house.*	**Vīs**, f., *force, strength.*
		Singular		
Nom.	deus	dea	domus	vīs
Gen.	deī	deae	domūs, -ī	vīs
Dat.	deō	deae	domuī, -ō	vī
Acc.	deum	deam	domum	vim
Abl.	deō	deā	domō, -ū	vī
		Plural		
Nom.	deī	deae	domūs	vīrēs
Gen.	deōrum	deārum	domuum, -ōrum	vīrium
Dat.	deīs	deābus	domibus	vīribus
Acc.	deōs	deās	domōs, -ūs	vīrēs
Abl.	deīs	deābus	domibus	vīribus

ADJECTIVES

592. First and Second Declensions

Bonus, *good.*

Singular

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	bonus	bona	bonum
Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī
Dat.	bonō	bonae	bonō
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum
Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō

Plural

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	bonī	bonae	bona
Gen.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dat.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Acc.	bonōs	bonās	bona
Abl.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

593. Third Declension — Three Endings

Ācer, *sharp.*

	Singular			Plural		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

594. Third Declension — Two Endings

Fortis, *brave.*

	Singular		Plural	
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
Nom.	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia
Gen.	fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium
Dat.	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus
Acc.	fortem	forte	fortēs	fortia
Abl.	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus

595. Third Declension — One Ending

Potēns, *powerful.* (*a*) *Adjective.* (*b*) *Present Participle Active.*

	Singular		Plural	
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
Nom.	potēns	potēns	potentēs	potentia
Gen.	potentis	potentis	potentium	potentium
Dat.	potentī	potentī	potentibus	potentibus
Acc.	potentem	potēns	potentēs	potentia
Abl.	potentī [1]	potentī [1]	potentibus	potentibus

Plūs, *more*

	Singular		Plural	
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
Nom.	——	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
Gen.	——	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
Dat.	——	——	plūribus	plūribus
Acc.	——	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
Abl.	——	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

[1] The present participle active ends in -e.

596. Declension of Comparatives

Melior, *better.*

	Singular		Plural	
	M. and F.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
Nom.	melior	melius	meliōrēs	meliōra
Gen.	meliōris	meliōris	meliōrum	meliōrum
Dat.	meliōrī	meliōrī	meliōribus	meliōribus
Acc.	meliōrem	melius	meliōrēs	meliōra
Abl.	meliōre	meliōre	meliōribus	meliōribus

597. Irregular Adjectives

	Alius, *another.*			**Ūnus**, *one.*		
	Singular					
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	alius	alia	aliud	ūnus	ūna	ūnum
Gen.	alīus	alīus	alīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus
Dat.	aliī	aliī	aliī	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī
Acc.	alium	aliam	aliud	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum
Abl.	aliō	aliā	aliō	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō

The plural of **alius** is regular, of the First and Second Declensions.

598.

	Duo, *two.*			**Trēs**, *three.*		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	trēs	tria
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium	trium
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	tribus
Acc.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs	trēs	tria
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	tribus

599. Comparison of Adjectives

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
fortis	fortior	fortissimus
vēlōx	vēlōcior	vēlōcissimus
miser	miserior	miserrimus
ācer	ācrior	ācerrimus

600. Irregular Adjectives

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, *good*	melior	optimus
malus, *bad*	peior	pessimus
magnus, *great*	maior	maximus
parvus, *small*	minor	minimus
multus, *much*		plūrimus
multum, *much*	plūs	plūrimum
multī, *many*	plūrēs	plūrimī
senex, *old*	senior (maior nātū)	maximus nātū
iuvenis, *young*	iūnior (minor nātū)	minimus nātū
idōneus, *suitable*	magis idōneus	maximē idōneus
exterus, *outer*	exterior	extrēmus *or* extimus
inferus, *below*	īnferior	īnfimus *or* īmus
posterus, *following*	posterior	postrēmus *or* postumus
superus, *above*	superior	suprēmus *or* summus
(cis, citrā)	citerior, *hither*	citimus
(in, intrā)	interior, *inner*	intimus
(prae, prō)	prior, *former*	prīmus
(prope)	propior, *nearer*	proximus
(ultrā)	ulterior, *farther*	ultimus
facilis, *easy*	facilior	facillimus
difficilis, *difficult*	difficilior	difficillimus
similis, *like*	similior	simillimus
dissimilis, *unlike*	dissimilior	dissimillimus
humilis, *low*	humilior	humillimus

601. Comparison of Adverbs

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
lātē (lātus)	lātius	lātissimē
pulchrē (pulcher)	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
miserē (miser)	miserius	miserrimē
fortiter (fortis)	fortius	fortissimē
ācriter (ācer)	ācrius	ācerrimē
facile (facilis)	facilius	facillimē
bene (bonus)	melius	optimē

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
male (malus)	peius	pessimē
magnopere (magnus)	magis	maximē
parum (parvus)	minus	minimē
diū	diūtius	diūtissimē

602. NUMERALS

	CARDINALS	ORDINALS
1.	ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um
2.	duo, duae, duo	secundus
3.	trēs, tria	tertius
4.	quattuor	quārtus
5.	quīnque	quīntus
6.	sex	sextus
7.	septem	septimus
8.	octō	octāvus
9.	novem	nōnus
10.	decem	decimus
11.	ūndecim	ūndecimus
12.	duodecim	duodecimus
13.	tredecim	tertius decimus
14.	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
15.	quīndecim	quīntus decimus
16.	sēdecim	sextus decimus
17.	septendecim	septimus decimus
18.	duodēvīgintī	duōdēvīcēsimus
19.	ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēsimus
20.	vīgintī	vīcēsimus
21.	vīgintī ūnus (ūnus et vīgintī)	vīcēsimus prīmus
29.	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētrīcēsimus
30.	trīgintā	trīcēsimus
40.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus
50.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus
60.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus
70.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus
80.	octōgintā	octōgēsimus
90.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus
100.	centum	centēsimus

CARDINALS	ORDINALS
200. ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus
300. trecentī	trecentēsimus
400. quadringentī	quadringentēsimus
500. quīngentī	quīngentēsimus
600. sescentī	sescentēsimus
700. septingentī	septingentēsimus
800. octingentī	octingentēsimus
900. nōngentī	nōngentēsimus
1000. mille	mīllēsimus
2000. duo mīlia	bis mīllēsimus

PRONOUNS

603. Personal

FIRST PERSON

Ego, *I.*

SECOND PERSON

Tū, *you (thou).*

THIRD PERSON

Is, *he;* **ea**, *she;* **id**, *it.*

For declension see § 605, *e.*

	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs
Gen.	meī	nostrum, nostrī	tuī	vestrum, vestrī
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs

604. Reflexive

FIRST PERSON

Meī, *of myself.*

SECOND PERSON

Tuī, *of yourself (thyself).*

These are declined like the personal pronoun of the same person, except that they have no nominative.

THIRD PERSON

Suī, *of himself, herself, itself.*

	Singular	Plural
Gen.	suī	suī
Dat.	sibi	sibi
Acc.	sē *or* sēsē	sē *or* sēsē
Abl.	sē *or* sēsē	sē *or* sēsē

605. DEMONSTRATIVE

(*a*) **Hic**, *this.*

	Singular			Plural		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

(*b*) **Ille**, *that.*

	Singular			Plural		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

(*c*) **Iste**, *that, that of yours.* (*d*) **Ipse**, *self.*

	Singular					
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	iste	ista	istud	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
Gen.	istīus	istīus	istīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus
Dat.	istī	istī	istī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
Acc.	istum	istam	istud	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
Abl.	istō	istā	istō	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō

The plural is regular.

(*e*) **Is**, *that, he.*

	Singular			Plural		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	is	ea	id	eī	eae	ea
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīs	eīs	eīs
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs	eīs	eīs

(*f*) **Īdem**, *same.*

	Singular			Plural		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	īdem	eadem	idem	eīdem	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

606. RELATIVE

Quī, *who, which, that.*

	Singular			Plural		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

607. INTERROGATIVE

Quis, *who? what?*

	Singular		Plural		
	M. AND F	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

The adjective **quī**, *what*, is declined like the relative **quī**.

608. INDEFINITE

Aliquis, *some one.*

	Singular		Plural		
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	aliquis	aliquid	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
Gen.	alicuius	alicuius	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
Dat.	alicui	alicui	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Acc.	aliquem	aliquid	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Abl.	aliquō	aliquō	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

The adjective is **aliquī, aliqua, aliquod.**

VERBS

609. First Conjugation

Principal Parts: **portō, portāre, portāvī, portātus.**
Stems: **portā-, portāv-, portāt-.**

Active Voice		Passive Voice	
Indicative			
Present			
I carry, am carrying, etc.		*I am carried*, etc.	
portō	portāmus	portor	portāmur
portās	portātis	portāris	portāminī
portat	portant	portātur	portantur
Imperfect			
I carried, was carrying, etc.		*I was carried*, etc.	
portābam	portābāmus	portābar	portābāmur
portābās	portābātis	portābāris	portābāminī
portābat	portābant	portābātur	portābantur
Future			
I shall carry, etc.		*I shall be carried*, etc.	
portābō	portābimus	portābor	portābimur
portābis	portābitis	portāberis	portābiminī
portābit	portābunt	portābitur	portābuntur
Perfect			
I have carried, I carried, etc.		*I have been (was) carried*, etc.	
portāvī	portāvimus	portātus (-a, -um) sum / es / est	portātī (-ae, -a) sumus / estis / sunt
portāvistī	portāvistis		
portāvit	portāvērunt		
Pluperfect			
I had carried, etc.		*I had been carried*, etc.	
portāveram	portāverāmus	portātus (-a, -um) eram / erās / erat	portātī (-ae, -a) erāmus / erātis / erant
portāverās	portāverātis		
portāverat	portāverant		

Active Voice		Passive Voice	
FUTURE PERFECT			
I shall have carried, etc.		*I shall have been carried*, etc.	
portāverō	portāverimus	portātus (-a, -um) erō	portātī (-ae, -a) erimus
portāveris	portāveritis	eris	eritis
portāverit	portāverint	erit	erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT			
portem	portēmus	porter	portēmur
portēs	portētis	portēris	portēminī
portet	portent	portētur	portentur
IMPERFECT			
portārem	portārēmus	portārer	portārēmur
portārēs	portārētis	portārēris	portārēminī
portāret	portārent	portārētur	portārentur
PERFECT			
portāverim	portāverimus	portātus (-a, -um) sim	portātī (-ae, -a) sīmus
portāveris	portāveritis	sīs	sītis
portāverit	portāverint	sit	sint
PLUPERFECT			
portāvissem	portāvissēmus	portātus (-a, -um) essem	portātī (-ae, -a) essēmus
portāvissēs	portāvissētis	essēs	essētis
portāvisset	portāvissent	esset	essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT			
Carry thou, etc.		*Be thou carried*, etc.	
2d portā	portāte	2d portāre	portāminī
FUTURE			
Thou shalt carry.		*Thou shalt be carried.*	
2d portātō	portātōte	2d portātor	
3d portātō	portantō	3d portātor	portantor

INFINITIVE

PRES.	portāre, *to carry.*	portārī, *to be carried.*
PERF.	portāvisse, *to have carried.*	portātus esse, *to have been carried.*
FUT.	portātūrus esse, *to be about to carry.*	portātum īrī, *to be about to be carried.*

Active Voice	Passive Voice
PARTICIPLES	
PRES. portāns, -antis, *carrying.*	PERF. portātus, -a, -um, *having been carried.*
FUT. portātūrus, -a, -um, *about to carry.*	FUT. portandus, -a, -um, *to be carried*, etc.
GERUND	**GERUNDIVE**
Gen. portandī, *of carrying.*	(See Fut. Pass. Part. above.)
Dat. portandō, *for carrying.*	**SUPINE**
Acc. portandum, *carrying.*	*Acc.* portātum, *to carry.*
Abl. portandō, *by carrying.*	*Abl.* portātū, *to carry.*

610. SECOND CONJUGATION

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus.**

STEMS: **monē-, monū-, monit-.**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I advise, warn, etc.		*I am advised, warned*, etc.	
moneō	monēmus	moneor	monēmur
monēs	monētis	monēris	monēminī
monet	monent	monētur	monentur

IMPERFECT

I advised, was advising, etc.		*I was advised*, etc.	
monēbam	monēbāmus	monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbās	monēbātis	monēbāris	monēbāminī
monēbat	monēbant	monēbātur	monēbantur

FUTURE

I shall advise, etc.		*I shall be advised*, etc.	
monēbō	monēbimus	monēbor	monēbimur
monēbis	monēbitis	monēberis	monēbiminī
monēbit	monēbunt	monēbitur	monēbuntur

PERFECT

I have advised, etc.		*I have been advised*, etc.	
monuī	monuimus	monitus (-a, -um) { sum, es, est	monitī (-ae, -a) { sumus, estis, sunt
monuistī	monuistis		
monuit	monuērunt		

Active Voice		Passive Voice	
PLUPERFECT			
I had advised, etc.		*I had been advised*, etc.	
monueram	monuerāmus	monitus (-a, -um) eram	monitī (-ae, -a) erāmus
monuerās	monuerātis	erās	erātis
monuerat	monuerant	erat	erant
FUTURE PERFECT			
I shall have advised, etc.		*I shall have been advised*, etc.	
monuerō	monuerimus	monitus (-a, -um) erō	monitī (-ae, -a) erimus
monueris	monueritis	eris	eritis
monuerit	monuerint	erit	erunt
SUBJUNCTIVE			
PRESENT			
moneam	moneāmus	monear	moneāmur
moneās	moneātis	moneāris	moneāminī
moneat	moneant	moneātur	moneantur
IMPERFECT			
monērem	monērēmus	monērer	monērēmur
monērēs	monērētis	monērēris	monērēminī
monēret	monērent	monērētur	monērentur
PERFECT			
monuerim	monuerimus	monitus (-a, -um) sim	monitī (-ae, -a) sīmus
monueris	monueritis	sīs	sītis
monuerit	monuerint	sit	sint
PLUPERFECT			
monuissem	monuissēmus	monitus (-a, -um) essem	monitī (-ae, -a) essēmus
monuissēs	monuissētis	essēs	essētis
monuisset	monuissent	esset	essent
IMPERATIVE			
PRESENT			
Advise thou, etc.		*Be thou advised*, etc.	
2d monē	monēte	2d monēre	monēminī
FUTURE			
Thou shalt advise, etc.		*Thou shalt be advised*, etc.	
2d monētō	monētōte	2d monētor	
3d monētō	monentō	3d monētor	monentor

	Active Voice	Passive Voice
	Infinitive	
PRES.	**monēre**, *to advise*, etc.	**monērī**, *to be advised*, etc.
PERF.	**monuisse**, *to have advised*, etc.	**monitus esse**, *to have been advised*.
FUT.	**monitūrus esse**, *to be about to advise*, etc.	**monitum īrī**, *to be about to be advised*, etc.
	Participles	
PRES.	**monēns, -entis**, *advising*, etc.	PERF. **monitus, -a, -um**, *having been advised*, etc.
FUT.	**monitūrus, -a, -um**, *about to advise*, etc.	FUT. **monendus, -a, -um**, *to be advised*, etc.
	Gerund	**Gerundive**
Gen.	**monendī**, *of advising*, etc.	(See Fut. Pass. Part. above.)
Dat.	**monendō**, *for advising*, etc.	**Supine**
Acc.	**monendum**, *advising*, etc.	*Acc.* **monitum**, *to advise*, etc.
Abl.	**monendō**, *by advising*, etc.	*Abl.* **monitū**, *to advise*, etc.

611. Third Conjugation

Principal Parts: **dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus.**
Stems: **dūce-, dūx-, duct-.**

Indicative

Present

I lead, am leading, etc.		*I am led*, etc.	
dūcō	**dūcimus**	**dūcor**	**dūcimur**
dūcis	**dūcitis**	**dūceris**	**dūciminī**
dūcit	**dūcunt**	**dūcitur**	**dūcuntur**

Imperfect

I led, was leading, etc.		*I was led, was being led*, etc.	
dūcēbam	**dūcēbāmus**	**dūcēbar**	**dūcēbāmur**
dūcēbās	**dūcēbātis**	**dūcēbāris**	**dūcēbāminī**
dūcēbat	**dūcēbant**	**dūcēbātur**	**dūcēbantur**

Active Voice		Passive Voice	
FUTURE			
I shall lead, etc.		*I shall be led*, etc.	
dūcam	dūcēmus	dūcar	dūcēmur
dūcēs	dūcētis	dūcēris	dūcēminī
dūcet	dūcent	dūcētur	dūcentur
PERFECT			
I led, have led, etc.		*I was led, have been led*, etc.	
dūxī	dūximus	ductus (-a, -um) sum, es, est	ductī (-ae, -a) sumus, estis, sunt
dūxistī	dūxistis		
dūxit	dūxērunt		
PLUPERFECT			
I had led, etc.		*I had been led*, etc.	
dūxeram	dūxerāmus	ductus (-a, -um) eram, erās, erat	ductī (-ae, -a) erāmus, erātis, erant
dūxerās	dūxerātis		
dūxerat	dūxerant		
FUTURE PERFECT			
I shall have led, etc.		*I shall have been led*, etc.	
dūxerō	dūxerimus	ductus (-a, -um) erō, eris, erit	ductī (-ae, -a) erimus, eritis, erunt
dūxeris	dūxeritis		
dūxerit	dūxerint		
SUBJUNCTIVE			
PRESENT			
dūcam	dūcāmus	dūcar	dūcāmur
dūcās	dūcātis	dūcāris	dūcāminī
dūcat	dūcant	dūcātur	dūcantur
IMPERFECT			
dūcerem	dūcerēmus	dūcerer	dūcerēmur
dūcerēs	dūcerētis	dūcerēris	dūcerēminī
dūceret	dūcerent	dūcerētur	dūcerentur
PERFECT			
dūxerim	dūxerimus	ductus (-a, -um) sim, sīs, sit	ductī (-ae, -a) sīmus, sītis, sint
dūxeris	dūxeritis		
dūxerit	dūxerint		

Active Voice		Passive Voice			
		PLUPERFECT			
dūxissem	dūxissēmus	ductus (-a, -um)	essem	ductī (-ae, -a)	essēmus
dūxissēs	dūxissētis		essēs		essētis
dūxisset	dūxissent		esset		essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

Lead thou, etc.		*Be thou led*, etc.	
2d dūc[1]	dūcite	2d dūcere	dūciminī

FUTURE

Thou shalt lead, etc.		*Thou shalt be led*, etc.	
2d dūcitō	dūcitōte	2d dūcitor	
3d dūcitō	dūcuntō	3d dūcitor	dūcuntor

INFINITIVE

PRES.	dūcere, *to lead.*	dūcī, *to be led.*
PERF.	dūxisse, *to have led.*	ductus esse, *to have been led.*
FUT.	ductūrus esse, *to be about to lead.*	ductum īrī, *to be about to be led.*

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	dūcēns, -entis, *leading.*	PERF.	ductus, -a, -um, *having been led.*
FUT.	ductūrus, -a, -um, *about to lead.*	FUT.	dūcendus, -a, -um, *to be led.*

GERUND

Gen.	dūcendī, *of leading.*
Dat.	dūcendō, *for leading.*
Acc.	dūcendum, *leading.*
Abl.	dūcendō, *by leading.*

GERUNDIVE

(See Fut. Pass. Part. above.)

SUPINE

Acc.	ductum, *to lead.*
Abl.	ductū, *to lead.*

612. FOURTH CONJUGATION

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus.**
STEM: **audī-, audīv-, audīt-.**

[1] Irregular for **dūce.**

Active Voice		Passive Voice	
INDICATIVE			
PRESENT			
I hear, am hearing, do hear, etc.		*I am heard*, etc.	
audiō	**audīmus**	**audior**	**audīmur**
audīs	**audītis**	**audīris**	**audīminī**
audit	**audiunt**	**audītur**	**audiuntur**
IMPERFECT			
I heard, was hearing, etc.		*I was heard*, etc.	
audiēbam	**audiēbāmus**	**audiēbar**	**audiēbāmur**
audiēbās	**audiēbātis**	**audiēbāris**	**audiēbāminī**
audiēbat	**audiēbant**	**audiēbātur**	**audiēbantur**
FUTURE			
I shall hear, etc.		*I shall be heard*, etc.	
audiam	**audiēmus**	**audiar**	**audiēmur**
audiēs	**audiētis**	**audiēris**	**audiēminī**
audiet	**audient**	**audiētur**	**audientur**
PERFECT			
I have heard, I heard, etc.		*I have been (was) heard*, etc.	
audīvī	**audīvimus**	**audītus (-a, -um) sum / es / est**	**audītī (-ae, -a) sumus / estis / sunt**
audīvistī	**audīvistis**		
audīvit	**audīvērunt**		
PLUPERFECT			
I had heard, etc.		*I had been heard*, etc.	
audīveram	**audīverāmus**	**audītus (-a, -um) eram / erās / erat**	**audītī (-ae, -a) erāmus / erātis / erant**
audīverās	**audīverātis**		
audīverat	**audīverant**		
FUTURE PERFECT			
I shall have heard, etc.		*I shall have been heard*, etc.	
audīverō	**audīverimus**	**audītus (-a, -um) erō / eris / erit**	**audītī (-ae, -a) erimus / eritis / erunt**
audīveris	**audīveritis**		
audīverit	**audīverint**		

Active Voice		Passive Voice	
SUBJUNCTIVE			
PRESENT			
audiam	audiāmus	audiar	audiāmur
audiās	audiātis	audiāris	audiāminī
audiat	audiant	audiātur	audiantur
IMPERFECT			
audīrem	audīrēmus	audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēs	audīrētis	audīrēris	audīrēminī
audīret	audīrent	audīrētur	audīrentur
PERFECT			
audīverim	audīverimus	audītus (-a, -um) sim / sīs / sit	audītī (-ae, -a) sīmus / sītis / sint
audīveris	audīveritis		
audīverit	audīverint		
PLUPERFECT			
audīvissem	audīvissēmus	audītus (-ā, -um) essem / essēs / esset	audītī (-ae, -a) essēmus / essētis / essent
audīvissēs	audīvissētis		
audīvisset	audīvissent		

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

Hear thou, etc.		*Be thou heard*, etc.	
2d audī	audīte	2d audīre	audīminī

FUTURE

Thou shalt hear, etc.		*Thou shalt be heard*, etc.	
2d audītō	audītōte	2d audītor	
3d audītō	audiuntō	3d audītor	audiuntor

INFINITIVE

PRES. audīre, *to hear.* audīrī, *to be heard.*
PERF. audīvisse, *to have heard.* audītus esse, *to have been heard.*
FUT. audītūrus esse, *to be about to hear.* audītum īrī, *to be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES

PRES. audiēns, -entis, *hearing.*
FUT. audītūrus, -a, -um, *about to hear.*
PERF. audītus, -a, -um, *heard, having been heard.*
FUT. audiendus, -a, -um, *to be heard.*

Active Voice

GERUND

Gen. **audiendī**, *of hearing.*
Dat. **audiendō**, *for hearing.*
Acc. **audiendum**, *hearing.*
Abl. **audiendō**, *by hearing.*

Passive Voice

GERUNDIVE

(See Fut. Pass. Part.)

SUPINE

Acc. **audītum**, *to hear*
Abl. **audītū**, *to hear.*

613. THIRD CONJUGATION — VERBS IN *IŌ*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **capiō, capere, cēpī, captus.**
STEMS: **cape-, cēp-, capt-.**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I take, am taking, do take, etc.

capiō	capimus
capis	capitis
capit	capiunt

I am taken, etc.

capior	capimur
caperis	capiminī
capitur	capiuntur

IMPERFECT

I took, was taking, etc.
capiēbam, etc.

I was taken, etc.
capiēbar, etc.

FUTURE

I shall take, etc.

capiam	capiēmus
capiēs	capiētis
capiet	capient

I shall be taken, etc.

capiar	capiēmur
capiēris	capiēminī
capiētur	capientur

PERFECT

I have taken, took, etc.
cēpī, etc.

I have been (was) taken, etc.
captus sum, etc.

PLUPERFECT

I had taken, etc.
cēperam, etc.

I had been taken, etc.
captus eram, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have taken, etc.
cēperō, etc.

I shall have been taken, etc.
captus erō, etc.

Active Voice		Passive Voice	
SUBJUNCTIVE			
PRESENT			
capiam	capiāmus	capiar	capiāmur
capiās	capiātis	capiāris	capiāminī
capiat	capiant	capiātur	capiantur
IMPERFECT			
caperem, etc.		caperer, etc.	
PERFECT			
cēperim, etc.		captus sim, etc.	
PLUPERFECT			
cēpissem, etc.		captus essem, etc.	
IMPERATIVE			
PRESENT			
Take (thou), etc.		*Be (thou) taken*, etc.	
2d cape	capite	2d capere	capiminī
FUTURE			
Thou shalt take, etc.		*Thou shalt be taken*, etc.	
2d capitō	capitōte	2d capitor	
3d capitō	capiuntō	3d capitor	capiuntor

INFINITIVE

PRES. capere, *to take.* — capī, *to be taken.*
PERF. cēpisse, *to have taken.* — captus esse, *to have been taken.*
FUT. captūrus esse, *to be about to take.* — captum īrī, *to be about to be taken.*

PARTICIPLES

PRES. capiēns, -ientis, *taking.*
FUT. captūrus, -a, -um, *about to take.*
PERF. captus, -a, -um, *taken, having been taken.*
FUT. capiendus, -a, -um, *to be taken.*

GERUND

Gen. capiendī, *of taking.*
Dat. capiendō, *for taking.*
Acc. capiendum, *taking.*
Abl. capiendō, *by taking.*

GERUNDIVE

(See Fut. Pass. Part. above.)

SUPINE

Acc. captum, *to take.*
Abl. captū, *to take.*

614. Irregular Verbs

Principal Parts: sum, esse, fuī.		Principal Parts: possum, posse, potuī.	
Indicative			
Present			
I am, etc.		*I am able, I can*, etc.	
sum	sumus	possum	possumus
es	estis	potes	potestis
est	sunt	potest	possunt
Imperfect			
I was, etc.		*I was able, I could*, etc.	
eram	erāmus	poteram	poterāmus
erās	erātis	poterās	poterātis
erat	erant	poterat	poterant
Future			
I shall be, etc.		*I shall be able*, etc.	
erō	erimus	poterō	poterimus
eris	eritis	poteris	poteritis
erit	erunt	poterit	poterunt
Perfect			
I was, have been, etc.		*I have been able, I could*, etc.	
fuī	fuimus	potuī	potuimus
fuistī	fuistis	potuistī	potuistis
fuit	fuērunt	potuit	potuērunt
Pluperfect			
I had been, etc.		*I had been able*, etc.	
fueram	fuerāmus	potueram	potuerāmus
fuerās	fuerātis	potuerās	potuerātis
fuerat	fuerant	potuerat	potuerant
Future Perfect			
I shall have been, etc.		*I shall have been able*, etc.	
fuerō	fuerimus	potuerō	potuerimus
fueris	fueritis	potueris	potueritis
fuerit	fuerint	potuerit	potuerint

Sum		Possum	
SUBJUNCTIVE			
PRESENT			
sim	sīmus	possim	possīmus
sīs	sītis	possīs	possītis
sit	sint	possit	possint
IMPERFECT			
essem	essēmus	possem	possēmus
essēs	essētis	possēs	possētis
esset	essent	posset	possent
PERFECT			
fuerim	fuerimus	potuerim	potuerimus
fueris	fueritis	potueris	potueritis
fuerit	fuerint	potuerit	potuerint
PLUPERFECT			
fuissem	fuissēmus	potuissem	potuissēmus
fuissēs	fuissētis	potuissēs	potuissētis
fuisset	fuissent	potuisset	potuissent
IMPERATIVE			
PRESENT		**PRESENT**	
Be thou, etc.		(lacking)	
2d es	este		
FUTURE		**FUTURE**	
Thou shalt be, etc.		(lacking)	
2d estō	estōte		
3d estō	suntō		
INFINITIVE			
PRES. esse, *to be.*		posse, *to be able.*	
PERF. fuisse, *to have been.*		potuisse, *to have been able.*	
FUT. futūrus esse, or fore	*to be about to be.*	(lacking)	

PARTICIPLES

PRESENT	PRESENT
(lacking)	**potēns, -entis** (used as an adjective), *powerful.*
FUTURE	FUTURE
futūrus, -a, -um, *about to be.*	(lacking)

615. PRINCIPAL PARTS: **volō, velle, voluī,** *be willing, wish.*
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *be unwilling.*
mālō, mālle, māluī, *be more willing, prefer.*

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

volō	**volumus**	**nōlō**	**nōlumus**	**mālō**	**mālumus**
vīs	**vultis**	**nōn vīs**	**nōn vultis**	**māvīs**	**māvultis**
vult	**volunt**	**nōn vult**	**nōlunt**	**māvult**	**mālunt**

IMPERFECT

volēbam	**nōlēbam**	**mālēbam**

FUTURE

volam	**nōlam**	**mālam**

PERFECT

voluī	**nōluī**	**māluī**

PLUPERFECT

volueram	**nōlueram**	**mālueram**

FUTURE PERFECT

voluerō	**nōluerō**	**māluerō**

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

velim	**velīmus**	**nōlim**	**nōlīmus**	**mālim**	**mālīmus**
velīs	**velītis**	**nōlīs**	**nōlītis**	**mālīs**	**mālītis**
velit	**velint**	**nōlit**	**nōlint**	**mālit**	**mālint**

IMPERFECT

vellem	**nōllem**	**māllem**

PERFECT

voluerim	**nōluerim**	**māluerim**

PLUPERFECT

voluissem	**nōluissem**	**māluissem**

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

(lacking)	2d **nōlī nōlīte**	(lacking)

FUTURE

(lacking)	2d **nōlītō nōlītōte**	(lacking)
(lacking)	3d **nōlītō nōluntō**	(lacking)

INFINITIVE

PRES.	**velle**	**nōlle**	**mālle**
PERF.	**voluisse**	**nōluisse**	**māluisse**

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	**volēns**	**nōlēns**	(lacking)

616. PRINCIPAL PARTS: **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus,** *bear, carry.*

PRESENT INDICATIVE

Active		Passive	
ferō	**ferimus**	**feror**	**ferimur**
fers	**fertis**	**ferris**	**feriminī**
fert	**ferunt**	**fertur**	**feruntur**

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Active	**Passive**	**Active**	**Passive**
IMPERFECT		PRESENT	
ferēbam	**ferēbar**	**feram**	**ferar**
FUTURE		IMPERFECT	
feram	**ferar**	**ferrem**	**ferrer**
PERFECT		PERFECT	
tulī	**lātus sum**	**tulerim**	**lātus sim**

PLUPERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
tuleram	**lātus eram**	**tulissem**	**lātus essem**

FUTURE PERFECT	
tulerō	**lātus erō**

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

2d **fer**	**ferte**	2d **ferre**	**feriminī**

FUTURE

2d **fertō**	**fertōte**	2d **fertor**	
3d **fertō**	**feruntō**	3d **fertor**	**feruntor**

INFINITIVE			PARTICIPLES		
PRES.	**ferre**	**ferrī**	PRES.	**ferēns**	——
PERF.	**tulisse**	**lātus esse**	PERF.	——	**latus**
FUT.	**lātūrus esse**	**lātum īrī**	FUT.	**lātūrus**	**ferendus**

GERUND	GERUNDIVE	SUPINE
Gen. **ferendī**	(See Fut. Pass. Part. above.)	*Acc.* **lātum**
Dat. **ferendō**		*Abl.* **lātū**
Acc. **ferendum**		
Abl. **ferendō**		

617. PRINCIPAL PARTS: **eō, īre, iī (īvī), itūrus,** *go.*

INDICATIVE		IMPERATIVE	INFINITIVE
PRESENT			
eō	**īmus**	PRES. 2d **ī, īte**	PRES. **īre**
īs	**ītis**	FUT. 2d **ītō, ītōte**	PERF. **īsse (iisse)**
it	**eunt**	3d **ītō, euntō**	FUT. **itūrus esse**

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	PARTICIPLES
IMPERFECT	PRESENT	
ībam	**eam**	PRES. **iēns, euntis**
FUTURE	IMPERFECT	FUT. **itūrus**
ībō	**īrem**	

PERFECT	PERFECT	GERUND
iī (īvī)	**ierim**	*Gen.* **eundī**
		Dat. **eundō**
PLUPERFECT	PLUPERFECT	*Acc.* **eundum**
ieram	**īssem**	*Abl.* **eundō**
FUTURE PERFECT		SUPINE
ierō		*Acc.* **itum**
		Abl. **itū**

618. PRINCIPAL PARTS: **fīō, fierī, factus sum,** *be made, become.*

INDICATIVE		IMPERATIVE	INFINITIVE
PRESENT		PRESENT	
fīō	**fīmus**	**fī**	PRES. **fierī**
fīs	**fītis**	**fīte**	PERF. **factus esse**
fit	**fīunt**		FUT. **factum īrī, fore**

	SUBJUNCTIVE	PARTICIPLES
IMPERFECT	PRESENT	
fīēbam	**fīam**	PRES. ——
FUTURE	IMPERFECT	PERF. **factus**
fīam	**fierem**	FUT. **faciendus**
PERFECT	PERFECT	GERUNDIVE
factus sum	**factus sim**	(See Fut. Part. above.)
PLUPERFECT	PLUPERFECT	
factus eram	**factus essem**	
FUTURE PERFECT		
factus erō		

ENGLISH GRAMMAR

As an Aid to the Study of Latin

NOUNS

619. A *Noun* is the name of some person or thing.

620. A *Common Noun* is the name of one of a class of objects: *picture, story.*

621. A *Proper Noun* is the name of a particular person or object: *Caesar, Rome.*

622. A *Collective Noun* is one which, singular in form, may apply to a group of objects: *family, army.*

623. A *Verbal Noun* is the name of an action. *Walking* is good exercise.

624. An *Abstract Noun* is the name of a quality or condition: *goodness, wealth.*

Pronouns

625. A *Pronoun* (Latin **prō**, *for*, and **nōmen**, *name*) is a word used for a noun. I saw James as *he* was coming.

626. A *Personal Pronoun* shows by its form whether it refers to the speaker (first person, *I*); the one spoken to (second person, *you*); or the one spoken of (third person, *he*).

627. A *Relative Pronoun* refers to a word in a preceding clause called the antecedent.

(*a*) The relative connects the two clauses. The man *whom* I saw was blind.

(*b*) The relative pronouns are *who, which, what* and *that.*

628. An *Interrogative Pronoun* asks a question. *Who* are you? The interrogative pronouns are *who, which, what.*

629. A *Demonstrative Pronoun* points out a particular person or thing: *this, these; that, those.*

630. An *Indefinite Pronoun* does not refer to any definite person or thing: *some, any one.*

631. A *Reflexive Pronoun* refers back to the subject. The man praises *himself.*

632 Nouns and Pronouns have *gender, person, number,* and *case.*

633. *Gender* distinguishes sex.

(*a*) Names of males are *masculine;* names of females *feminine;* names of things are *neuter.*

(In Latin the gender is often determined by the ending of the noun.)

634. *Number* shows how many persons or things are referred to. *Singular* number denotes but one; *plural* number denotes more than one.

635. *Case* shows the relation of the noun or pronoun to the other words of the sentence.

(*a*) There are three cases in English: *Nominative*, *Possessive*, *Objective*.

636. The *Nominative* Case is used as the subject of a sentence or in the predicate after an intransitive or passive verb, to refer to the subject. The *boy* ran home. You are a wise *man*. The man was called *general*.

637. The *Possessive* Case denotes possession. *Caesar's* soldiers were brave.

638. The *Objective* Case is used as the object of a verb or preposition. Caesar sent the *army* to the *city*.

639. *Inflection* is the change in the form of a word to show its relation to the other words of a sentence. The inflection of a noun or pronoun is called *Declension:* Nom. *who*, Poss. *whose*, Obj. *whom*. The inflection of a verb is called *Conjugation*.

Adjectives

640. An *Adjective* is used to limit or describe a noun or its equivalent. *Five* boys came. The soldiers were *brave*. To err is *human*.

641. *A*, *an*, and *the* are called *Articles*. *The* is the definite article; *a* (*an*) is the indefinite article.

642. Adjectives denoting number are called *Numeral Adjectives*. They are either *Cardinals*, denoting how many: *three*, *ten;* or *Ordinals*, denoting which one in order: *third*, *tenth*.

643. *Comparison* of Adjectives is a change in form by which degree of quality is expressed.

(*a*) The degrees of comparison are called *positive*, *comparative* and *superlative*.

(*b*) The *Positive* denotes the quality in the simple state: *large*, *good*.

(*c*) The *Comparative* denotes the quality in a greater or less degree: *larger*, *better*, *less beautiful*.

(*d*) The *Superlative* denotes the quality in greatest or least degree: *largest*, *best*, *least beautiful*.

644. Adjectives are compared (1) *regularly* by adding to the positive *-r* or *-er* for the comparative, and *-st* or *-est* for the superlative; (2) *irregularly;* and (3) by adding *more* and *most*, *less* and *least* to the positive. Most adjectives of more than one syllable are compared in this last way. (1) *Large, larger, largest;* (2) *good, better, best;* (3) *beautiful, more beautiful, most beautiful.*

Verbs

645. A *Verb* is a word used to assert action or state of being: *to sing, to be.*

646. A *Transitive* Verb is one which commonly requires an object to complete its meaning. He *killed* his enemy.

(Transitive is from the Latin **trāns**, *across*, and **eō**, *go*, because the action goes over from the subject to the object of the verb.)

647. An *Intransitive* Verb is one which does not require an object to complete its meaning. They *dwell* in Gaul.

648. An *Impersonal* Verb is one which does not take a personal subject and is used only in the third person singular. *It rains.*

649. An *Auxiliary* Verb (Latin **auxilium**, *aid*) is one which aids in the conjugation of other verbs. I *was* reading. *Does* he read?

650. Verbs have *voice*, *mood*, *tense*, *person*, and *number*.

651. The inflection of a verb is called *Conjugation*. The *Conjugation* gives the forms of a verb in all voices, moods, tenses, persons, and numbers.

652. The *Synopsis* of a verb gives its forms in any required person and number through all tenses of different moods.

VOICE

653. A verb is in the *Active Voice* when the subject performs the action. Caesar *has fought.*

654. A verb is in the *Passive Voice* when the subject is acted upon. The boys *were punished.*

Note. — Intransitive verbs are used only in the active voice.

MOOD

655. By *Mood* (Latin **modus**, *manner*) we mean the manner of making a statement.

656. A verb is in the *Indicative Mood* when it states a fact or asks whether something is a fact. Rome *was* a great city. *Did* Caesar *conquer* the Gauls?

657. The *Subjunctive Mood* states something as *demanded, wished for, possible, contingent,* or *contrary to fact.*

He *shall pay* me. Heaven *help* us! If it *should rain*, they *would not go*. If we *were* better, we *should be* happier.

658. The *Imperative Mood* expresses a command. Soldiers, *draw* your swords.

(*a*) With the imperative the subject is usually not expressed. The person addressed is put in the Nominative Independent. (Vocative in Latin.)

659. The *Infinitive* is a form of the verb not limited by person and number. *To forgive* is divine.

(*a*) It may be used as a noun, an adjective, or an adverb.
(*b*) It has the *present* and *perfect* tenses only.
(*c*) The *Present Infinitive* represents an action as taking place *at the time* of the principal verb. He wishes (wished, will wish) *to fight.*
(*d*) The *Perfect Infinitive* represents an action as *completed* at the time of the principal verb. The man is said (was said, will be said) *to have fought.*

660. The *Infinitive* with subject in the objective (Latin Accusative) case is used after verbs meaning wish, prefer, and the like when its subject is not the same as that of the governing verb. I wish *you to go.*

(*a*) When the subject of both verbs is the same, the subject of the infinitive is not expressed. I wish *to go.*

TENSE (INDICATIVE)

661. The *Present Tense* represents an action as taking place at the present time. (Latin Present.) The soldiers *fight.*

662. The *Past Tense* represents something as having occurred in the past. (Latin Imperfect and Perfect.) The soldiers *were fighting, fought.*

663. The *Future Tense* represents something that will occur in the future. (Latin Future.) The soldiers *will fight.*

664. The *Present Perfect* represents an action as completed at the present time. (Latin Perfect.) The soldiers *have fought.*

665. The *Past Perfect* represents an action as having been completed before some past time. (Latin Pluperfect.) The soldiers *had fought.*

666. The *Future Perfect* represents an action as having taken place before some definite time in the future. (Latin Future Perfect.) The soldiers *will have fought* long before they conquer.

PERSON AND NUMBER

667. A Verb agrees with its *subject* in *person* and *number.*

(*a*) A verb having two or more subjects connected by *and* must be in the plural. The boy and the girl *are* my friends.

(*b*) A verb having two or more singular subjects separated by *or* or *nor* must be in the singular. Neither the boy nor the girl *is* happy.

PARTICIPLES

668. A *Participle* is a *Verbal Adjective.* Like a verb it may take an object and have adverbial modifiers. We saw the man *beating* the horse *severely.*

Like an adjective, it may modify a noun. A *babbling* brook flows through the meadow.

Adverbs

669. *Adverbs* modify *verbs, adjectives,* and *other adverbs.* He ran *swiftly.* He is *nearly* blind. They fought *very* bravely.

670. An *Adverb* may express: *Time,* recently; *Manner,* swiftly; *Place,* here; *Degree,* very; *Affirmation,* yes; *Negation,* no, not.

671. An *Interrogative Adverb* asks a question with reference to *time, place, manner,* or *reason.* *When* shall we go? *Where* shall we go? *How* shall we go? *Why* shall we go?

672. A *Conjunctive Adverb* is used to introduce an adverbial clause. *While* there is life, there is hope.

Prepositions

673. A *Preposition* (Latin **prae**, *before,* and **pōnō**, *place*) is a word placed before a noun or pronoun to show its relation to the rest of the sentence. He lived *in* Italy. He went *to* Rome.

Conjunctions

674. A *Conjunction* (Latin **con**, *together,* and **iungō**, *join*) is a word used to connect words, phrases, or clauses.

(*a*) A *Coördinate* Conjunction connects elements of equal rank or importance: *and, but, nor.*

(*b*) A *Subordinate* Conjunction connects elements of unequal rank or importance: *because, if.*

Interjections

675. An *Interjection* (Latin **inter**, *between*, and **iaciō**, *throw*) is a word thrown into a sentence to express surprise or emotion and used independently of the rest of the sentence: *ah, oh, halloo.*

Rules of Syntax

676. The *Subject* of a verb is in the *Nominative* case. *Rome* was a large city.

677. The *Direct Object* of a verb is in the *Objective* (Latin Accusative) case. Vergil wrote *poetry.*

678. A noun or adjective, used in the predicate after an intransitive or passive verb and referring to the same person or thing as the subject, agrees with the subject in case and is called the *Predicate Noun* or *Predicate Adjective.* They were *children.* They were *good.* He was chosen *king.* He was called *wise.*

(*a*) It may be stated thus: An Intransitive or Passive verb takes the same case after it as before it.

679. *Possession* is denoted by the *Possessive* (Genitive) case or *of* with an object. We read *Horace's* poems. We read the poems *of Horace.*

680. Some transitive verbs having the general meaning of giving, telling, etc., take two objects, a *direct* and an *indirect.*

(*a*) The *Direct Object* receives the full effect of the action; the *Indirect Object* is that *to* or *for* which something is done or happens. We gave (to) *Caesar* the *letter.* We told *him the reason.*

681. The Objective (Latin Accusative) case is used as the subject of an infinitive. Caesar ordered *him to fight.*

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

The future active participle is usually given as the fourth principal part of verbs that are wholly, or mainly, intransitive, in prose.

A

ā, ab, prep., with abl., *from, by;* **ā tergō,** *in the rear.*

ab, adv., *away, off.*

abdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *put away, hide;* **sē abdere,** *hide (oneself).*

abdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead away.*

abeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itūrus, *go away, depart.*

abiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *cast away, throw away.*

abscīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus, *cut off.*

absum, -esse, āfuī, *be away, be distant, be absent, be lacking; be exempt.*

ac, conj. (same as **atque**), *and, and also, and even;* **simul ac,** *as soon as.*

Acca, -ae, f., *Acca.*

accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *go near, approach.*

accendō, -ere, -dī, -cēnsus, *set fire to, kindle.*

accidō, -ere, accidī, —, *happen.*

accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *take (to one's self), receive, accept, welcome, entertain.*

accumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitūrus, *lay one's self* (at table), *recline* (at table).

accurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursūrus, *run to, come up.*

ācer, ācris, ācre, adj., *sharp, keen, active.*

aciēs, -ēī, f., *line of battle.*

ācriter, adv., *sharply, spiritedly, fiercely.*

ad, prep., with acc., *to, near, toward, for, about* (with words of number), *according to;* **ad diem,** *at (on) the appointed day.*

addō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *put near (beside), add.*

addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead to, lead; influence;* **hāc ōrātiōne adductī,** *influenced by this speech.*

adeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itus, *go to, approach, attack, visit* (followed by acc.).

adgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *step up to, approach, attack.*

adhaereō, -haerēre, -haesī, -haesūrus, *cling to.*

adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *hold to, apply, employ.*

adhūc, adv., *up to this time, still.*

adiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *throw to, hurl; add.*

adigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus, *drive to, drive.*

adligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bind to, bind.*

administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *carry on, administer.*

admīror, -mīrārī, -mīrātus sum, *marvel at, wonder at, admire.*

admoneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *remind, warn, advise, admonish.*
adorior, -īrī, -ortus sum, *rise up against, attack.*
adsum, -esse, -fuī, *be near, be at hand, be present.*
Aduatucī, -ōrum, m., *Aduatuci,* a people of Gaul.
adulēscēns, -centis, m., *a young man.*
adventus, -ūs, m., *coming, arrival, approach.*
adversus, -a, -um, adj., *turned toward, facing, face to face, against.*
advocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call to* (oneself), *summon.*
advolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *fly to.*
aedēs, -is, f., *temple;* pl., *house.*
aedificium, -ī, n., *building.*
aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *build.*
Aeduus, -ī, m., *Aeduan.*
aegrē, adv., *with difficulty.*
Aenēās, -ae, m., *Aeneas.*
Aeolia, -ae, f., *Aeolia.*
Aeolus, -ī, m., *Aeolus,* god of the winds.
aequitās, -tātis, f., *equality, fairness, justice.*
aequus, -a, -um, *level, equal, fair, just, right, serene.*
āër, āëris, m., *air.*
aes, aeris, n., *copper, bronze.*
aestās, -tātis, f., *summer;* **prīmā aestāte, aestāte initā,** *in the early part of the summer.*
aetās, -tātis, f., *age.*
aeternus, -a, -um, *everlasting;* **in aeternum,** *forever.*
Aethiopēs, -um, m., *Ethiopians.*
Aetna, -ae, f., *Etna,* a volcanic mountain in Sicily.
afferō, -ferre, attulī, allātus, *bring to, carry to, bring.*
afficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *affect, afflict.*
Āfrica, -ae, f., *Africa.*
ager, agrī, m., *field.*
agger, aggeris, m., *rampart.*
aggredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *step up to* (*against*), *approach, attack.* (See **adgredior.**)
agmen, -minis, n., *army* (on the march), *marching column;* **novissimum agmen,** *rear;* **prīmum agmen,** *van.*
agnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus, *recognize.*
agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, *drive, ply; do, act; drive, treat, move forward;* passive, *be driven on, go on;* **causam agere,** *plead a case;* **grātiās agere,** *give thanks* (in words); **ita agere,** *conduct one's self in such a way, act in such a way;* **vīneās agere,** *bring the vineae into action.*
agricola, -ae, m., *farmer.*
āla, -ae, f., *wing.*
alacer, -cris, -cre, adj., *eager, keen, spirited, cheerful.*
Alba, -ae, f., *Alba,* a city, usually called *Alba Longa.*
Albānī, -ōrum, m., *Albans.*
albus, -a, -um, adj., *white.*
ālea, -ae, f., *a die.*
aliās, adv., *at another time.*
alibī, adv., *at another place.*
aliēnus, -a, -um, *belonging to another, another's; foreign, strange.*
aliī . . . aliī, *some . . . others.*
aliquandō, adv., *at some time or other* (past or future), *formerly, once; finally.*

aliquī, aliqua, aliquod, adj., *some, any.*
aliquis, aliquid, pron., *some one, something.*
aliter, adv., *otherwise.*
alius, -a, -ud, gen. properly **alīus,** but usually **alterīus,** adj., *another, other.*
alius . . . alius, *one . . . another.*
Alleluia, interj., *Praise the Lord! Halleluia!*
Allobrogēs, -um, m., *Allobroges,* a people of Gaul.
almus, -a, -um, adj., *nourishing.*
alter, altera, alterum, *the other* (of two), *one* (of two).
alter . . . alter, *the one . . . the other* (of two).
altitūdō, -inis, f., *height, depth.*
altum, -ī, n., *the deep, the sea.*
altus, -a, -um, adj., *high, tall, deep.*
alveus, -ī, m., *bed* (of a river).
Ambiānī, -ōrum, m., *Ambiani,* a people of Gaul.
ambiguus, -a, -um, *not plain, doubtful.*
ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *stroll, walk.*
America, -ae, f., *America.*
amīcitia, -ae, f., *friendliness, friendship.*
amīcus, -a, -um, adj., *friendly; friendly to* (with dat.).
amīcus, -ī, m., *friend.*
āmittō, -ere, āmīsī, āmissus, *let go, send away, lose.*
amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *love.*
amoenus, -a, -um, *lovely, pleasant, delightful.*
amor, -ōris, m., *love, longing, passion.*
āmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move away, remove.*
amplē, adv., *fully, amply, abundantly.*
amplius, adv., *more, further.*
amplus, -a, -um, *large, ample, distinguished, splendid.*
Amūlius, -ī, m., *Amulius.*
an, conj., *or.*
ancora, -ae, f., *anchor.*
Ancus, -ī, m., *Ancus.*
Andecumborius, -ī, m., *Andecumborius,* a prominent man among the Remi.
Androclus, -ī, m., *Androclus.*
Andromeda, -ae, f., *Andromeda.*
anguis, -is, m. and f., *snake, serpent.*
angustus, -a, -um, *close, narrow.*
angustē, adv., *closely, narrowly.*
anima, -ae, f., *soul, breath of life.*
animadvertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, *turn one's mind to, notice.*
animal, -ālis, n., *living creature, animal.*
animus, -ī, m., *mind, heart, soul, spirit;* **animōs dēmittere,** *lose heart, lose courage;* **esse in animō** (with dat.), *have in one's mind, intend;* **in animō habēre,** *purpose, intend.*
an nōn, *or not.*
annus, -ī, m., *year.*
ānser, -eris, m., *goose.*
ante, adv., *before, ago.*
ante, prep., with acc., *before.*
anteā, adv., *before, formerly.*
antecēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *go ahead of, go before, precede, surpass* (used with dat.).

anteferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *put* (one thing) *before* (another), *prefer.*

antepōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *place before, prefer* (used with acc. and dat.).

antīquitus, adv., *in ancient times.*

antīquus, -a, -um, *old-time, bygone, ancient, former.*

ānulus, -ī, m., *finger-ring.*

anus, -ūs, f., *old woman.*

anxius, -a, -um, adj., *troubled, distressed, anxious.*

aperiō, -īre, -uī, -tus, *uncover, open.*

apertus, -a, -um, *uncovered, exposed, open.*

Apollō, -inis, m., *Apollo,* god of music, of medicine, and of prophecy.

appāreō, -pārēre, -pāruī, —, *come into sight, appear, be visible.*

appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *address, call, name.*

Appia Via, f., *Appian Way,* a famous road, running from Rome to Southern Italy.

Appius, -a, -um, adj., *Appian.*

Appius, -ī, m., *Appius.*

appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *approach* (with **ad** and acc., or with dat.).

apud, prep., used with accusative, *among, in the presence of;* with name of a person, *at the house of.*

aqua, -ae, f., *water.*

aquaeductus, -ūs, m., *aqueduct.*

aquila, -ae, f., *eagle; military standard.*

Aquītānia, -ae, f., *Aquitania.*

Aquītānus, -ī, m., *an Aquitanian.*

āra, -ae, f., *altar.*

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *think.*

arbor, -oris, f., *tree.*

arca, -ae, f., *box, chest.*

arceō, -ēre, -uī, *shut off, keep away, shut up.*

Ardea, -ae, f., *Ardea.*

ārdeō, -ēre, ārsī, ārsūrus, *be on fire, burn;* **ārdēns, -entis,** part. as adj., *glowing, burning, blazing.*

arduum, -ī, n., *difficulty.*

arēna, -ae, f., *arena.*

āridum, -ī, n., *dry land.*

āridus, -a, -um, *dry.*

arithmētica, -ae, f., *arithmetic.*

arma, -ōrum, n., *defensive armor, arms, implements of war.*

armātus, -a, -um, *armed.*

armilla, -ae, f., *armlet, bracelet.*

armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *arm, equip.*

arō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *plow.*

ars, artis, f., *art, skill; branch of learning.*

artificium, -ī, n., *trade, kind of work.*

ascendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus, *climb* (up), *ascend, mount.*

Asia, -ae, f., *Asia.*

asinus, -ī, m., *donkey, ass.*

aspera, -ōrum, n., *difficulties.*

astrologus, -ī, m., *astrologer.*

astrum, -ī, n., *star.*

asȳlum, -ī, n., *place of refuge, asylum.*

at, conj., *but.*

Atalanta, -ae, f., *Atalanta.*

atque, conj. (same as **ac**), *and also, and even; as;* **simul atque** (**ac**), *as soon as.*

Atrebās, -ātis, m., *an Atrebatian;* pl., *Atrebatians,* a Gallic people.

ātrium, -ī, n., *atrium,* the principal apartment of a Roman house.

atrōciter, adv., *fiercely, savagely, cruelly.*

attingō, -ere, attigī, attāctus, *touch, border on; reach.*

attonitus, -a, -um, adj., *astonished, bewildered.*

attribuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, *assign.*

auctor, -ōris, m., *author, writer.*

auctōritās, -tātis, f., *authority, influence.*

audācia, -ae, f., *boldness, courage.*

audācter, adv., *boldly.*

audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, *dare.*

audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *hear, hear of.*

auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus, *bear away, carry away, remove.*

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, *increase.*

augur, -uris, m., *augur, diviner, prophet, soothsayer.* The augur relied especially on the movements and the cries of birds.

augurium, -ī, n., *augury, prophecy, soothsaying.*

aureus, -a, -um, *golden.*

aurīga, -ae, m., *driver, charioteer.*

auris, -is, f., *ear.*

aurum, -ī, n., *gold.*

Aurunculeius, -ī, m., *Aurunculeius Cotta,* a lieutenant of Caesar.

auspicium, -ī, n., *divination by the flight of birds, auspices.*

aut, conj., *or;* **aut . . . aut,** *either . . . or (else).*

autem, conj. (always postpositive), *however, but, moreover;* in explanations, *now.*

auxilium, -ī, n., *aid, help;* pl., *auxiliary forces,* or *troops;* **auxilium ferre,** *bring (give) help (aid).*

aveō, -ēre, —, —, *be well, be strong;* in the imperative, **avē,** *hail!*

āvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, *turn aside.*

avus, -ī, m., *grandfather.*

Axona, -ae, f., *the Aisne* (river).

B

baculum, -ī, n., *staff, wand.*

barbarī, -ōrum, m., *foreigners.*

barbarus, -a, -um, *foreign, barbarous.*

Belgae, -ārum, m., *Belgians,* the bravest of the Gauls.

Bellovacī, -ōrum, m., *Bellovaci,* a people of Gaul.

bellum, -ī, n., *war;* **bellum gerere,** *wage war, carry on war* (offensive or defensive); **bellum īnferre,** *wage (offensive) war on, make an attack on* (with dat.).

bene, adv., *well, fully.*

beneficium, -ī, n., *good deed, kindness, favor, benefit.*

benignē, adv., *kindly.*

bibō, -ere, bibī, bibitus, *drink.*

Bibrax, -actis, f., *Bibrax,* a town of the Remi.

bīduum, -ī, n., *period of two days, two days.*

biennium, -ī, *period of two years.*

bis, num. adv., *twice.*

bonum, -ī, n., *good thing;* in pl., *goods, possessions.*

bonus, -a, -um (comp., **melior;** sup., **optimus**), adj., *good, kind, gracious.*

Brātuspantium, -ī, n., *Bratuspantium,* a stronghold of the Bellovaci.

brevis, -e, adj., *short, brief;* **brevī tempore** (or **brevī**), *in a short time, soon.*

brevitās, -ātis, f., *shortness, brevity.*

breviter, adv., *briefly.*

Britannī, -ōrum, m., *Britons.*

Britannia, -ae, f., *Britain.*

Brūtus, -ī, m., *Brutus.*

C

C., abbreviation for **Gāïus, -ī,** m., (Eng.) *Caius.*

cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *fall.*

caecus, -a, -um, *blind.*

caedēs, -is, f., *slaughter, carnage.*

caelestēs, -ium, m., *dwellers in the sky, gods.*

caelum, -ī, n., *sky, heavens.*

Caemanī, -ōrum, m., *Caemani,* a people in Belgic Gaul.

Caerōsī, -ōrum, m., *Caerosi,* a people in Belgic Gaul.

Caesar, -aris, m., *Caesar.*

calamitās, -tātis, f., *calamity.*

calathus, -ī, m., *wicker basket, basket.*

calceus, -ī, m., *shoe.*

calefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, *make hot, warm.*

Caletī, -ōrum, m., *Caleti,* a tribe living near the mouth of the Seine.

Campānus, -a, -um, *of Campania,* a district in Italy.

campus, -ī, m., *plain, level field.*

candidātus, -a, -um, *clothed in white;* as noun, m., *candidate* (for office).

candor, candōris, m., *gleaming white color; sincerity.*

canis, -is, m. and f., *dog.*

canō, -ere, cecinī, —, *sing; prophesy.*

cantilēna, -ae, f., *old song, song.*

capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus, *take, seize, capture;* **cōnsilium capere,** (*choose* =) *form a plan.*

Capitōlīnus, -a, -um, adj., *of (on) the Capitoline Hill, Capitoline.*

Capitōlium, -ī, n., *Capitoline Hill.*

captīva, -ae, f., *captive* (female).

captīvus, -ī, m., *captive.*

captīvus, -a, -um, adj., *captive.*

captō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *catch.*

Capua, -ae, f., *Capua,* a city in Campania.

caput, -itis, n., *head.*

cāritās, -ātis, f., *affection, esteem.*

carmen, -minis, n., *song, poem.*

carō, carnis, f., *flesh.*

Carolus, -ī, m., *Charles.*

carpentum, -ī, n., (covered) *carriage.*

carpō, -ere, -psī, -ptus, *pluck, grasp.*

carrus, -ī, m., *cart, wagon.*

Carthāginiēnsēs, -ium, m., *Carthaginians.*

Carthāgō, -inis, f., *Carthage,* a city in Africa.

cārus, -a, -um, adj., *dear.*

casa, -ae, f., *hut, cottage.*

Cassius, -ī, m., *Cassius.*

castellum, -ī, n., *fort, redoubt, stronghold.*

castīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *rebuke, punish.*

castra, -ōrum, n., *camp.*

cāsus, -ūs, m., *fall, chance; misfortune, calamity.*
Catilīna, -ae, m., *Catiline.*
Catō, -ōnis, m., *Cato.*
cauda, -ae, f., *tail.*
causa, -ae, f., *cause, reason;* **multīs dē causīs,** *for many reasons.*
causā (with gen.), *with view to, for the sake* (*of*) (used only in expressions of purpose).
caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautūrus, *take precautions against, beware.*
cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessūrus, *move back* or *away, go away, yield, withdraw.*
celebrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *throng, crowd; engage in, practice, celebrate.*
celer, celeris, celere, adj., *quick, swift, speedy.*
celeritās, -tātis, f., *swiftness, speed.*
celeriter, adv., *quickly, speedily;* **quam celerrimē,** *as quickly as possible.*
cella, -ae, f., *room, storehouse.*
cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *conceal, hide.*
Celtae, -ārum, m., *Celts.*
cēna, -ae, f., *dinner, supper, feast.*
cēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *dine, sup.*
cēnsus, -ūs, m., *registration, census;* **cēnsum habēre,** (*hold* =) *take a census.*
centum, num. adj., indecl., *one hundred.*
centuriō, -ōnis, m., *centurion.*
Cēpheus, -ī, m., *Cepheus.*
cernō, -ere, crēvī, —, *see, discern.*
certāmen, -inis, n., *contest, match;* **certāmen pedum,** *footrace.*
certē, adv., *at least, at any rate; certainly.*
certus, -a, -um, adj., *definite, fixed, assured, certain;* **certiōrem facere,** *make more certain, inform;* **certior fierī,** *be informed.*
cēterī, -ae, -a, adj., *the other, the rest* (*of*), *the remaining, all the other.*
Christus, -ī, m., *Christ.*
cibus, -ī, m., *food.*
Cicerō, -ōnis, m., *Cicero.*
Cincinnātus, -ī, m., *Cincinnatus.*
Cineās, -ae, m., *Cineas.*
cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīnctus, *girdle, surround.*
circā, adv., *about;* as prep., with acc., *about, around.*
Circē, -ēs, abl. **-ē,** f., *Circe.*
circiter, adv., *about.*
circum, prep., with acc., *around, about.*
circum, adv., *about, around.*
circumclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, *surround.*
circumdō, -are, -dedī, -datus, *surround, enclose* (a person or a place, expressed by acc., with something, expressed by abl.).
circumdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead around.*
circumiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *throw around, place around.*
circummittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send around.*
circumnāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *sail around.*
circumscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, *draw a circle around, circumscribe.*
circumsistō, -ere, -stetī, —, *set one's self around, stand around.*

circumspiciō, -ere, -exī, -ectus, *look around.*

circumstō, -stāre, -steti, —, *stand around, surround.*

circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come around, surround.*

cis, prep., with acc., *on this side of.*

citerior, -ius, adj., *hither, nearer;* **in citeriōre Galliā,** *in hither (nearer) Gaul.*

cito, adv., *quickly.*

cīvīlis, -e, adj., *having to do with citizens* (or *the State*), *civil, civic.*

cīvis, -is, m. and f., *citizen.*

cīvitās, -tātis, f., *citizenship;* (group of citizens) *state.*

clam, adv., *secretly, stealthily.*

clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *call out, cry out.*

clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *call, cry out, shout.*

clāmor, -ōris, m., *shouting, noise.*

clārus, -a, -um, *bright, clear; honorable.*

classis, -is, f., *a fleet.*

Claudius, -ī, m., *Claudius.*

claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus, *shut, close.*

clāvus, -ī, m., *stripe.*

clēmentia, -ae, f., *clemency.*

Cloelia, -ae, f., *Cloelia.*

Clūsium, -ī, n., *Clusium,* a town in Etruria, Italy.

Cocles, -itis, m., *Cocles* ("*One-eyed*").

coëmō, -ëmere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, *buy* (together, up), *buy.*

coepī, -isse, *began* (def., found mainly in perfect stem tenses. For present system see **incipiō**).

cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *think, consider, ponder.*

cognōmen, -inis, n., *surname; new (added) name.*

cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus, *begin to know, find out, become acquainted with, learn;* (in perf., *know*).

cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus, *drive together, gather; compel, force* (with inf.).

cohors, cohortis, f., *cohort* (the tenth part of a legion).

cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *urge strongly, encourage.*

Collātīnus, -ī, m., *Collatinus.*

colligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus, *gather together, collect.*

collis, -is, m., *hill;* **ab summō colle,** *from the top of the hill;* **(in) mediō colle,** *halfway up the hill.*

collocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *place together, arrange; put, place, set.*

colloquium, -ī, n., *conversation.*

collum, -ī, n., *neck.*

colō, colere, coluī, cultus, *till, cultivate; worship.*

columna, -ae, f., *column, pillar.*

combūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ustus, *burn.*

comedō, -ere, -ēdī, -ēsus, *eat up.*

comes, -itis, m. or f., *companion, associate.*

commeātus, -ūs, m., *supplies, provisions.*

commīlitō, -ōnis, m., *fellow soldier, comrade.*

committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send together, join; send to, entrust* (*to*); **proelium committere,** *join battle, begin an engagement.*

Commius, -ī, m., *Commius.*

commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move thoroughly, disturb, alarm.*

commūnicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make common property, share, communicate.*

commūnis, -e, adj., *common, general.*

comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *get (put) together, make ready; prepare; buy; (put side by side =) compare.*

compellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, *drive together, compel, force.*

comperiō, -īre, -perī, -pertus, *find out, discover, ascertain, learn.*

competītor, -ōris, m., *rival, competitor.*

compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *fill, cover, complete.*

complicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fold together.*

complūrēs, -a, adj., *very many, several.*

compos, -otis, adj., *having control over* (used with gen.).

comprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsus, *lay hold on, seize, grasp.*

cōnātus, -ūs, m., *attempt, effort.*

concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *go along with, yield (to).*

concidō, -ere, -cidī, —, *fall, be slain.*

concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *stir up, arouse, excite.*

concordia, -ae, f., *concord.*

Concordia, -ae, f., *Concord, Harmony,* a goddess.

conculcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trample upon, tread under foot.*

concurrō, -ere, -cucurrī, -cursūrus, *run together, run.*

concursus, -ūs, m., *running together, running against, onset.*

condiciō, -ōnis, f., *condition, terms.*

conditor, -ōris, m., *founder.*

condō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *put together, form; found, establish.*

Condrūsī, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe.

condūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *bring together.*

cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, collātus, *bear together, bring together, collect;* (with **sē**), *take (carry) oneself, go, proceed.*

cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *do thoroughly, finish, accomplish; furnish; exhaust; kill.*

cōnfīdō, -ere, -fīsus sum, *trust* (used with dat. of person, abl. of thing).

cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make firm, strengthen; declare, assert;* **pācem cōnfirmāre,** *arrange (establish) peace.*

cōnflīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flictus, *dash down; fight, contend.*

congregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *gather, collect.*

coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *throw together, hurl together; hurl, fling;* **in vincula conicere,** *put in bonds, put in prison.*

coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, *join together, unite.*

coniūnx, -iugis, m. and f., *husband, wife.*

coniūrātī, -ōrum, m. pl., *conspirators.*

coniūrātiō, -ōnis, f., *conspiracy.*

coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *swear* (an oath) *together, conspire.*

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *try, attempt* (used with infin.).

cōnscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus, *climb, mount; go on board.*

cōnscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, *write together, write; enroll, enlist; levy.*

cōnsēnsus, -ūs, m., *agreement.*

cōnsentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsūrus, *think with, agree with; conspire.*

cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *preserve, save, spare.*

cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *overtake.*

cōnsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *look closely at, consider, examine.*

cōnsīdō, -ere, -sēdī, —, *seat oneself, encamp, settle.*

cōnsilium, -ī, n., *thinking, wisdom, sagacity, plan, advice, counsel;* **cōnsilium capere,** (*choose* =) *form a plan.*

cōnsimilis, -e, adj., *very like.*

cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, *take one's stand, get a footing; stand, make a stand, stop, halt.*

cōnspectus, -ūs, m., *sight, view, presence.*

cōnspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, *catch sight of, see, observe.*

cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *catch sight of, see.*

cōnstanter, adv., *uniformly.*

cōnstat (impers.), *it is evident.*

cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus, *set in place, determine, decide; found; station, draw up in line, erect, settle;* of ships, *moor;* **diem cōnstituere,** *appoint a day.*

cōnstitūtiō, -ōnis, f., *constitution.*

cōnsuēscō, -ere, -ēvī, —, *become accustomed;* in the perfect tenses, *be accustomed, be wont* (*used*).

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, f., *habit, custom.*

cōnsul, -ulis, m., *consul.*

cōnsulō, -ere, -suluī, -sultus, with acc., *consult;* with dat., *take thought for.*

cōnsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus, *use up, spend, consume, destroy.*

contego, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctus, *cover.*

contendō, -ere, -dī, -tentūrus, *hasten, contend.*

contentiō, -ōnis, f., *quarrel, dispute.*

conterō, -ere, -trīvī, -trītus, *rub thoroughly, rub together, grind.*

continenter, adv., *constantly, ceaselessly.*

contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, *hold together, hold back, detain; hem in, keep in;* in geographical expressions, *bound.*

continuus, -a, -um, adj., *continuous, ceaseless.*

contrā, adv., *opposite, against.*

contrā, prep., with acc., *against, opposite.*

contrōversia, -ae, f., *dispute.*

contumēlia, -ae, f., *insult; disgrace.*

conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, *come together, assemble.*

conventus, -ūs, m., *a coming together; assembly, meeting.*

convertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, *turn, change, transform.*

convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call together, summon.*
cōpia, -ae, f., *abundance, plenty, supply;* pl., *troops, forces.*
cor, cordis, n., *heart.*
Coriolānus, -ī, m., *Coriolanus.*
Cornēlia, -ae, f., *Cornelia.*
cornū, -ūs, n., *horn; wing* (of an army); **ā sinistrō cornū,** *on the left wing;* **ā dextrō cornū,** *on the right wing.*
corōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *crown.*
corpus, -oris, n., *body.*
corripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptus, *grasp quickly* or *violently, seize, snatch.*
cotīdiānus, -a, -um, adj., *daily.*
cotīdiē, adv., *daily, every day.*
Cotta, -ae: see **Aurunculeius.**
crās, adv., *to-morrow.*
Crassus, -ī, m., *Crassus.*
crātēra, -ae, f., *mixing-bowl.*
crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., *close together, thick; frequent, numerous, repeated.*
crēbrē, adv., *repeatedly, frequently, often.*
crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditūrus, *trust, believe* (used with dat.).
creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *choose, appoint, elect.*
crēscō, -ere, crēvī, —, *grow, increase.*
cruciātus, -ūs, m., *torture.*
crūdēlis, -e, *cruel, unmerciful.*
crūdēlitās, -tātis, f., *cruelty, harshness.*
culpa, -ae, f., *guilt, blame, fault.*
culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *blame, censure.*
cultus, -ūs, m., *refinement, culture, civilization.*
cum, prep., with abl., *along with, with.*
cum, conj., *when, since* (with subjunctive), *although* (with subjunctive).
cum prīmum, *as soon as* (used with indic.).
cūnctāns, -antis, adj., *hesitating, delaying.*
cupiditās, -tātis, f., *eagerness* (*for*), *desire* (*for*), *greed* (*for*) (used with genitive).
cupidus, -a, -um, *eager; eager* (*for*), *desirous* (*of*) (used with genitive).
cupiō, -ere, cupīvī, cupītus, *be eager, desire, wish, long for.*
cūr, adv., *why?, wherefore?*
cūria, -ae, f., *curia,* the name of a division of the Roman people; *senate-house.*
cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *take care of, treat.*
currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursūrus, *run.*
cursus, -ūs, m., *running, course; voyaging, voyage; speed.*
Curtius, -ī, m., *Curtius.*
custōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *guard, watch.*
custōs, -ōdis, m., *guard, keeper, watch.*
Cyclōps, -ōpis, m., *Cyclops;* pl., *Cyclopes,* or *Cyclops.*

D

Danaē, -ēs, f., *Danaë.*
dē, prep., with abl., *down from, from; about, concerning; on account of;* **multīs dē causīs,** *for many reasons;* **quā dē causā,** *for which* (*this*) *reason, on this*

account; **dē faciē,** *on the basis of (one's) appearance.*

dea, -ae, f., *goddess.*

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *owe; ought, must* (followed by infin.).

dēcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *go away, withdraw; pass away, die.*

decem, num. adj., indecl., *ten.*

dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus, *decide, determine.*

dēcertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *fight to a finish, fight.*

decimus, -a, -um, num. adj., *tenth.*

dēcipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *take in, deceive.*

Decius, -ī, m., *Decius.*

decōrus, -a, -um, *fitting, seemly.*

dēcrētum, -ī, n., *decree, decision.*

dēditiō, -ōnis, f., *surrender.*

dēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *give up, give over, surrender.*

dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead down; lead, guide, conduct, escort; launch* (a ship).

dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus, *strike off, ward off; defend, guard, protect.*

dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, f., *defense.*

dēfēnsor, -ōris, m., *defender.*

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *carry down, carry away; carry* (news), *report.*

dēfessus, -a, -um, adj., *tired, weary, exhausted, worn out.*

dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectūrus, (make oneself away from =) *rebel, revolt, desert* (used with **ā, ab** and abl.); *fail.*

dēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, *throw down; dash down, destroy; dash down* (hopes), *disappoint.*

deinde, adv., *thereupon, then, next.*

dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *destroy.*

dēlīberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *consider, deliberate, consult.*

dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus, *pick out, choose (from), select, gather.*

dēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send down, let go down, lower, let fall; lose.*

dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *point out, show, explain.*

dēns, dentis, m., *tooth.*

dēnsus, -a, -um, *crowded close together, compact, dense.*

dēpellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, *drive away, ward off.*

dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *put down, put aside, give up, resign.*

dēpopulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *lay waste, plunder.*

dēprecor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *pray* (something) *away from oneself; beg to escape, ask for quarter.*

dērīdeō, -ēre, -rīsī, -rīsus, *laugh at, deride, scorn.*

dēscendō, -ere, -dī, -sūrus, *climb down, go down, descend.*

dēsertus, -a, -um, adj., *deserted;* with **loca,** *desert.*

dēsiliō, -īre, -uī, —, *leap down.*

dēsinō, -ere, -siī, -sitūrus, *leave off, cease.*

dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitūrus, *leave off, cease.*

dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *lose hope, be without hope, despair.*

dēsum, dēesse, dēfuī, —, *be lacking, fail.*

dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *frighten off, deter.*

dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractus, *draw* (down) *from, tear away.*

Deucaliōn, -ōnis, m., *Deucalion.*

Deus, -ī, m., *God.*

deus, -ī, m., *god.*

dēvorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *eat, devour.*

dēvoveō, -ēre, -vōvī, -vōtus, *vow, consecrate, devote.*

dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., *right, right hand.*

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus, *say, speak;* **diem dīcere,** *appoint a day.*

dictātor, -ōris, m., *dictator.*

dictitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *say repeatedly.*

diēs, -ēī, m. and f., *day;* **ad diem,** *according to the day, at (on) the appointed day;* **multō diē,** *late in the day;* **posterō** or **proximō diē,** *the following day.*

differō, -ferre, distulī, dīlātus, *bear apart, scatter; differ.*

difficilis, -e, adj. (superl., **difficillimus**), *not easy, difficult.*

difficultās, -tātis, f., *difficulty.*

digitus, -ī, m., *finger, toe.*

dignitās, -tātis, f., *worth, high position, grandeur.*

dīligēns, -gentis, adj., *careful, diligent.*

dīligenter, adv., *carefully, diligently.*

dīligentia, -ae, f., *diligence, care.*

dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *fight.*

dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send (let go) in different directions, dispatch, send away, send off, dismiss; lose.*

dīrē, adv., *horribly, awfully.*

discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *go away* or *apart, scatter, depart, leave.*

disciplīna, -ae, f., *instruction, discipline.*

discipulus, -ī, m., *learner, pupil.*

discrīmen, -inis, n., *danger, crisis.*

discus, -ī, m., *discus.*

disiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *throw* or *fling apart, drive apart, scatter.*

dispōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *put apart, distribute.*

disputō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *argue, discuss.*

dissimilis, -e, adj. (superl., **dissimillimus**), *unlike, unlike to* (with dat.).

dissitus, -a, -um, adj., *remote.*

distineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, *hold apart, keep apart, separate.*

distribuō, -uere, -tribuī, -tribūtus, *divide, apportion, distribute, assign.*

dītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *enrich.*

diū, diūtius, diūtissimē, adv., *for a long time, long;* **quam diū,** *how long?*

diūturnus, -a, -um, adj., *long continued, long, lasting.*

dīvellō, -ere, -vellī, -vulsus, *tear apart, rend (apart).*

dīversus, -a, -um, *turned apart, different.*

dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus, *divide.*

dīvīnus, -a, -um, *divine, sacred.*

Dīviciācus, -ī, m., *Divicia'cus,* an Aeduan of great influence.

dō, dare, dedī, datus, *give, grant;* **in fugam dare,** *to put to flight;* **inter sē dare,** *to exchange;* **poenam dare,** *to pay the penalty;* in compounds, *put, place.*

doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctus, *teach, show* (used with two accusatives).
dolor, -ōris, m., *pain, grief.*
domesticus, -a, -um, *domestic.*
domī, adv. (loc. case), *at home.*
domina, -ae, f., *mistress* (of slaves), *matron.*
Dominus, -ī, m., *the Lord.*
dominus, -ī, m., *master* (of slaves), *lord.*
domum, adv. (acc. case), *homeward, home.*
domus, -ūs, f. (locative, **domī**), *house, home;* **domī,** *at home;* **domum** (acc.), *homeward, home.*
dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *give, present.*
dōnum, -ī, n., *gift, present.*
dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītūrus, *sleep.*
drāma, -atis, n., *drama, play.*
Druidēs, -um, m., *Druids.*
dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *be in doubt, doubt; hesitate* (used with infin.).
dubius, -a, -um, *doubtful.*
ducentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., *two hundred.*
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead, guide, conduct; think, consider;* **in mātrimōnium dūcere,** *marry;* **sortēs dūcere,** *draw lots.*
dulcis, -e, adj., *pleasant, sweet.*
dum, conj., *while, as long as; until.*
duo, duae, duo, num. adj., *two.*
duodecim, num. adj., indecl., *twelve.*
duodecimus, -a, -um, num. adj., *twelfth.*
duodēvīcēsimus, -a, -um, num. adj., *eighteenth.*
duodēvīgintī, num. adj., indecl., *eighteen.*
dūrus, -a, -um, *hard, harsh.*
dux, ducis, m., *leader, guide.*

E

ē or **ex,** prep., with abl., *out of, from; on account of.*
ebrius, -a, -um, *drunk.*
Eburōnēs, -um, m., a Belgic tribe.
ecce, adv., *behold.*
edō, ēsse, ēdī, ēsus, *eat.*
ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *give forth, put forth; produce, give birth to.*
ēdoceō, -ēre, -cuī, -doctus, *teach thoroughly, instruct, inform.*
ēducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bring up, train, educate.*
ēdūcō, -ere, ēdūxī, ēductus, *lead out, lead forth, draw out.*
Eduardus, -ī, m., *Edward.*
efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātus, *bring out, carry forth, carry away, produce.*
efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *accomplish, bring about; do successfully, make.*
effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, *flee out* (of danger), *escape.*
effundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus, *pour out, pour forth.*
ego, meī, pers. pron., *I;* **ego ipse,** *I myself.*
ēgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *step forth, go out, disembark.*
ēgregius, -a, -um, *eminent, unusual, peerless.*
ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectus, *throw out, cast out, expel.*
ēlātus, -a, -um, adj., *uplifted, elated, gladdened.*

ēlēctus, -a, -um, *chosen, picked.*
elephantus, -ī, m., *elephant.*
ēlīdō, -ere, -līsī, -līsus, *crush out, knock out, shatter.*
ēloquēns, -entis, adj., *eloquent.*
ēmicō, -āre, -micuī, —, *flash forth.*
ēmineō, -ēre, -uī, —, *stand out, become visible.*
ēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send out, let out.*
emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus, *take; buy.*
ēmptor, -ōris, m., *buyer.*
enim, conj., postpositive, *indeed, you see; for, because.*
Ennius, -ī, m., *Ennius.*
ēnsis, -is, m., *sword.*
ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *report, announce, declare.*
eō, īre, iī (īvī), itūrus, *go.*
eō, adv., *there, thither, to that place.*
eōdem, adv., *to the same place.*
Ēpīrus, -ī, f., *Epirus,* a district in Northwestern Greece.
epistula, -ae, f., *a letter, an epistle.*
epulae, -ārum, f., *feast, banquet.*
eques, -itis, m., *horseman, knight;* pl., *cavalrymen, cavalry.*
equester, -tris, -tre, adj., *(of) cavalry, of horse, horse.*
equitātus, -ūs, m., *cavalry.*
equitō, -āre, -āvī, —, *ride a horse, ride.*
equus, -ī, m., *horse.*
ēripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptus, *hurry away, snatch away, seize;* **sē ēripere,** *wrench oneself away, escape.*
errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *wander, go astray; make a mistake, err.*
error, -ōris, m., *a going astray, wandering; error, mistake.*
et, conj., *and, also;* **et . . . et,** *both . . . and.*
etiam, adv., *also, even* (generally used with verbs; see **quoque**).
Etrūscī, -ōrum, m., *Etruscans.*
etsī, conj., *even if, although.*
Eurōpa, -ae, f., *Europe.*
Eurylochus, -ī, m., *Eurylochus.*
ēvādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsūrus, *step forth, go forth, escape.*
ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call out.*
exaudiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *overhear, hear.*
excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *go out, go away.*
excelsus, -a, -um, adj., *high, lofty.*
excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *take out, take, capture; accept, catch; entertain, welcome.*
excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *arouse, rouse thoroughly.*
exclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *shout out, cry out, exclaim.*
exclūdō, -ere, -sī, -sus, *shut out, bar out, exclude.*
exemplum, -ī, n., *example.*
exeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itūrus, *go forth, go out, withdraw.*
exercitus, -ūs, m., *army.*
eximius, -a, -um, *distinguished, excellent, peerless.*
exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *think, reckon.*
exitium, -ī, n., *destruction, ruin, death.*
exitus, -ūs, m., *going forth, departure; outcome, end.*
exōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fit out fully, adorn.*

expedītus, -a, -um, *unencumbered.*

expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, *drive out, expel.*

experientia, -ae, f., *experience.*

expleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus, *fill out, fill completely.*

explōrātor, -ōris, m., *scout, spy.*

explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *investigate, examine, explore.*

expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *put out, set out,* (put out from a ship =) *disembark; set forth, point out, explain; arrange, array.*

expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *take by storm, capture by assault.*

exsilium, -ī, n., *exile.*

exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *look out for, await, expect; wait.*

exstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, *pile up, erect, build.*

exterus, -a, -um, adj., *outward;* superl., **extrēmus,** *last, uttermost;* **ad extrēmum,** *at the end, finally.*

extrā, prep., with acc., *outside, beyond.*

extrēmus, -a, -um, sup. of **exterus,** *outermost, furthest, last; last part of, end of.*

exūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ustus, *burn completely, destroy by fire.*

F

faber, fabrī, m., *worker in hard materials, smith.*

fābula, -ae, f., *story.*

Fabricius, -ī, m., *Fabricius.*

fac: imperative of **faciō.**

faciēs, -ēī, f., "*makeup,*" *appearance, look;* **dē faciē nōscere,** *know by sight.*

facile, adv., *easily;* **minus facile,** *less easily.*

facilis, -e, adj., *easy.*

faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, *make, do, accomplish;* **certiōrem facere,** *inform;* **iter facere,** *make a march, march;* **vim facere,** *employ (use) violence.*

factum, -ī, n., *deed.*

facultās, -tātis, f., *opportunity, chance; ability, power.*

fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsus, *disappoint, deceive.*

falx, falcis, f., *sickle; curved sword.*

fāma, -ae, f., *talk, report, rumor; story, tradition; reputation.*

fāmēs, -is, abl. **-ē,** f., *hunger, famine.*

familia, -ae, *f., household.*

familiāris, -e, *belonging to the household, of the family, intimate;* **rēs familiāris, reī familiāris,** f., *household affairs, private property.*

fās, indecl. n., *right* (in the sight of heaven), *justice.*

Faustulus, -ī, m., *Faustulus.*

favor, -ōris, m., *good will, favor.*

fax, facis, f., *torch, firebrand.*

fēlīcitās, -tātis, f., *happiness, prosperity, good luck.*

fēlīciter, adv., *happily, successfully, fortunately.*

fēmina, -ae, f., *woman.*

fenestra, -ae, f., *window.*

ferāx, -ācis, adj., *bearing* (of land), *fertile, productive.*

ferē, adv., *almost, quite* (used chiefly with numbers).

fēriālis, -e, adj., *festival, holiday.*

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *bear, carry, bring; report, say.*
ferōx, ferōcis, *bold, spirited, fierce, headstrong.*
ferrum, -ī, n., *iron, sword.*
fertilitās, -ātis, f., *fertility.*
festīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *make haste, hurry.*
fēstus, -a, -um, adj., *festive, joyous, (of a) holiday.*
fidēlis, -e, adj., *faithful, loyal.*
fidēs, -eī, f., *faith, good faith, honor; pledge; protection; confidence.*
fīdō, -ere, fīsus sum, *trust* (used with dat. of person, abl. of thing).
fīdus, -a, -um, *faithful, reliable, loyal.*
figūra, -ae, f., *shape, figure.*
fīlia, -ae, f., *daughter.*
fīlius, -ī, m., *son.*
fīniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *put an end to, bound, limit, stop; end, check.*
fīnis, -is, m., *end;* pl., *territory.*
fīnitimī, -ōrum, m., *neighbors.*
fīnitimus, -a, -um, adj., *neighboring.*
fīō, fierī, factus sum, *be made; become; happen.*
firmus, -a, -um, adj., *firm, solid.*
flamma, -ae, f., *flame.*
fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētūrus, *weep, lament.*
flōreō, -ēre, -uī, —, *flower, bloom; flourish, prosper.*
flōs, flōris, m., *flower.*
flūctus, -ūs, m., *wave, billow.*
fluitāns, -tis, *flowing, waving.*
flūmen, -inis, n., *river.*
fluō, -ere, flūxī, —, *flow.*
focus, -ī, m., *hearth.*
fōns, fontis, m., *fountain, spring.*
forīs, adv., *out of doors, outside.*
fōrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *form.*
fortasse, adv., *perhaps.*
forte, adv., *by chance, by accident; as it happened.*
fortis, -e, adj., *brave; strong.*
fortiter, adv., *bravely;* **quam fortissimē,** *as bravely as possible.*
fortitūdō, -inis, f., *bravery, fortitude.*
fortūna, -ae, f., *fortune, chance.*
forum, forī, n., *forum.*
Forum, -ī, n., *the Forum* (in Rome).
Forum Rōmānum, Forī Rōmānī, n., *the Forum Romanum,* the oldest and most important Forum in Rome.
fossa, -ae, f., *ditch, trench.*
frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus, *break, shatter, wreck.*
frāter, -tris, m., *brother.*
fraus, fraudis, f., *fraud, trick, stratagem.*
Frederīcus, -ī, m., *Frederick.*
frōns, frontis, f., *forehead.*
frūctus, -ūs, m., *fruit; reward.*
frūmentārius, -a, -um, *pertaining to grain, of grain;* **rēs frūmentāria, reī frūmentāriae,** f., *grain supply.*
frūmentum, -ī, n., *grain;* in pl., *grain growing in the fields, standing grain.*
fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, *enjoy* (used with abl.).
frūstrā, adv., *in vain.*
fuga, -ae, f., *flight.*
fugiō, -ere, fūgī, —, *flee.*
fulgēns, -entis, adj., *flashing.*
fulgidus, -a, -um, adj., *flashing, shining.*

fulgur, -uris, n., *lightning.*
fūmus, -ī, m., *smoke.*
funditor, -ōris, m., *slinger.*
fungor, fungī, fūnctus sum, *go through with, perform, discharge* (used with abl.)
fūnis, -is, m., *rope.*
fūr, fūris, m. and f., *thief.*
furor, -ōris, m., *madness, lunacy; rage, frenzy.*

G

Gāïus, -ī, m., *Caius.*
Galba, -ae, m., *Galba.*
galea, -ae, f., *helmet.*
Gallī, -ōrum, m., *Gauls.*
Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul.*
Gallicus, -a, -um, adj., *Gallic, of Gaul.*
Garumna, -ae, f., *the Garonne* (river).
gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum, *rejoice.*
gaudium, -ī, n., *delight, gladness.*
geminī, -ōrum, m., *twins.*
Genava, -ae, f., *Geneva.*
generālis, -e, adj., *general.*
gēns, gentis, f., *nation, family, class.*
genus, -eris, n., *kind, class, sort.*
Germānia, -ae, f., *Germany.*
Germānicus, -a, -um, *pertaining to Germany, German, Germanic.*
Germānus, -a, -um, adj., *German.*
Germānus, -ī, m., *a German.*
gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus, *bear, carry, wear; carry on;* **bellum gerere,** *wage war;* **rēs gerere,** *do (accomplish) exploits;* **hīs rēbus gestīs,** *when these things had been accomplished;* **sē gerere,** *conduct oneself, act, behave.*
gigās, -antis, m., *giant.*
gladiātor, -tōris, m., *swordsman, gladiator.*
gladius, -ī, m., *sword.*
globus, -ī, m., *sphere; bomb.*
glōria, -ae, f., *glory.*
glōriōsē, adv., *gloriously.*
Gorgō, -onis, f., *a Gorgon.*
Gracchus, -ī, m., *Gracchus;* pl., *the Gracchi.*
gradus, -ūs, m., *step, stair.*
Graecia, -ae, f., *Greece.*
Graecus, -ī, m., *a Greek.*
Graecus, -a, -um, adj., *Greek.*
grammatica, -ae, f., *grammar, elementary study of literature.*
grānum, -ī, n., *a grain.*
grātia, -ae, f., *influence, favor;* **grātiās agere,** *give thanks* (by words only); **grātiās referre,** *give thanks* (by a substantial return).
grātus, -a, -um, adj., *pleasing.*
gravis, -e, adj., *heavy; severe.*
graviter, adv., *weightily, heavily; vigorously; seriously, grievously.*
gubernō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *govern.*
gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *taste.*

H

habeō, -ēre, habuī, -itus, *have, hold, keep; deem, consider;* **cēnsum habēre,** (*hold* =) *take a census;* **ōrātiōnem habēre,** *deliver a speech.*
habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *keep oneself, dwell, live.*
Hamilcar, -aris, m., *Hamilcar.*
Hannibal, -balis, m., *Hannibal.*
Hasdrubal, -balis, m., *Hasdrubal.*
hauriō, -īre, hausī, haustus, *draw* (a liquid), *drain.*

Helena, -ae, f., *Helen.*
Helvētiī, -ōrum, m., *Helvetians.*
Helvētius, -a, -um, adj., *Helvetian.*
herba, -ae, f., *herb, plant, grass.*
hesternus, -a, -um, adj., *of yesterday;* **hesternō diē,** *yesterday.*
hīberna, -ōrum (sc. *castra*), n., *winter quarters.*
hīc, adv., *here; there.*
hic, haec, hoc, gen. **huius,** dem. pron. and adj., *this; that.*
hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *pass the winter, winter.*
hiems, hiemis, f., *winter, stormy weather.*
hinc, adv., *from this place, here, there.*
Hippomenēs, -is, m., *Hippomenes.*
historia, -ae, f., *story, history.*
hodiē, adv., *to-day.*
Homērus, -ī, m., *Homer.*
homō, -inis, m. and f., *human being, man.*
honor, -ōris, m., *honor, esteem, glory.*
hōra, -ae, f., *hour;* **tertiā hōrā,** *at nine o'clock.*
Horātius, -ī, m., *Horatius.*
horreum, -ī, n., *granary, barn.*
horribilis, -e, adj., *dreadful, horrible, shuddering.*
horror, -ōris, m., *a shuddering, horror.*
hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *exhort, harangue; encourage, urge.*
hortus, -ī, m., *garden.*
hospitium, -ī, n., *hospitality, entertainment.*
Hostīlius, -ī, m., *Hostilius.*
hostis, -is, m., *enemy* (of the State); pl., *the enemy.*
hūc, adv., *here, hither, to this place; to this person.*
hūmānitās, -ātis, f., *refinement, culture, humanity.*
hūmānus, -a, -um, adj., *human.*
humilis, -e, adj., *low, lowly, humble.*
humus, -ī, f., *earth, soil; grave.*

I

iaceō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *lie.*
iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus, *throw, fling, throw up; throw out, banish.*
iactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *throw, cast, hurl.*
iaculum, -ī, n., *javelin.*
iam, adv., *by this (that) time, at last;* **nōn iam,** *no longer;* **iam dūdum,** *now for a long time;* **iam prīdem,** *long ago, long before; already.*
iānitor, -ōris, m., *doorkeeper, porter.*
iānua, -ae, f., *front door.*
ibi, adv., *there, in that place.*
Iccius, -ī, m., *Iccius,* a leader of the Remi.
ictus, -ūs, m., *stroke, blow.*
īdem, eadem, idem, dem. pron. and adj., *the same.*
idōneus, -a, -um (comp., **magis idōneus;** sup., **maximē idōneus**), adj., *fit, suited, suitable.*
ientāculum, -ī, n., *breakfast.*
Iēsus, -ū, m., *Jesus.*
igitur, conj., postpositive, *therefore.*
ignis, -is, m., *fire.*
ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *be unacquainted with, be ignorant of.*

ignōtus, -a, -um, adj., *unknown, strange.*

Īlias, -adis, f., *the Iliad.*

ille, illa, illud, gen., **illīus,** dem. pron. and adj., *that; the former.*

illō, adv., *there, thither, to that place.*

imber, -bris, m., *rain, shower.*

immittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send in, let in.*

immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *sacrifice.*

immortālis, -e, adj., *undying, immortal.*

immōtus, -a, -um, *unmoved, motionless.*

impār, -paris, adj., *unequal.*

impedīmentum, -ī, n., *hindrance;* pl., *heavy baggage.*

impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *hinder.*

impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, *drive on, urge on, incite.*

impendeō, -ēre, —, —, *hang over, overhang.*

imperātor, -ōris, m., *commander-in-chief, general, emperor.*

imperātum, -ī, n., *command, order.*

imperītus, -a, -um, adj., *unskilled; unskilled in* (with genitive).

imperium, -ī, n., *command, control, sovereignty, military authority, empire.*

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *levy* (soldiers); *order, command* (governs dat., followed by **ut** with the subjunctive).

impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *obtain by request, gain one's request.*

impetus, -ūs, m., *attack, charge.*

impius, -a, -um, adj., *godless, impious.*

impluvium, -ī, n., *impluvium* (the rectangular basin in the *ātrium* in which the rain water was received).

impōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *put upon, lay upon, place upon.*

imprūdēns, -entis, *unwise, imprudent.*

impudēns, -entis, adj., *shameless, impudent.*

impūne, adv., *without punishment.*

īmus, -a, -um, *lowest; lowest part of, bottom of* (see **īnferus**).

in, prep., with abl., *in, on, upon, across, over;* with acc., *into, against, upon.*

incautus, -a, -um, adj., *taking no precautions, off guard; unaware.*

incēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *go into, go, step.*

incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus, *set on fire, burn.*

incertus, -a, -um, *uncertain.*

incidō, -ere, -cidī, —, *fall down* (on).

incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptūrus, *take on oneself, begin, undertake* (used only in pres. system: see **coepī**).

incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *rouse thoroughly, arouse; spur on.*

inclūdō, -ere, -sī, -sus, *shut in* or *up, enclose; keep in, surround.*

incognitus, -a, -um, *unrecognized, unknown.*

incola, -ae, m. or f., *inhabitant.*

incolō, -ere, -uī, — (intrans.), *live, dwell;* (trans.), *inhabit, dwell in.*

incolumis, -e, adj., *unharmed, safe.*

incrēdibilis, -e, adj., *unbelievable, incredible.*
incurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursūrus, *run upon, run against.*
incursiō, -ōnis, f., *invasion, raid.*
incūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *find fault with, blame, accuse.*
inde, adv., *from that place, thence.*
indūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead into, lead; influence, induce.*
induō, -ere, -duī, -dūtus, *put on.*
ineō, -īre, -iī (**-īvī**), **-itus,** *enter, begin.*
īnfāns, -antis, m. and f., *infant.*
īnfāns, -antis, adj., *not talking.*
īnferī, -ōrum, m., *inhabitants of the lower world.*
īnferō, -ferre, intulī, illātus, *bring in, upon,* or *against;* **bellum īnferre,** *wage* (*offensive*) *war on, attack* (with dat.); **signa īnferre,** *advance* (to the attack).
īnferus, -a, -um (comp., **īnferior;** sup., **īnfimus** or **īmus**), adj., *below.*
īnfestō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trouble, plunder.*
īnfīnītum, -ī, n., *that which is boundless, infinity.*
īnfluō, -ere, -flūxī, —, *flow into.*
ingēns, ingentis, adj., *vast, huge, giant.*
iniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *throw on; place on, lay on.*
inimīcus, -a, -um, adj., *unfriendly, hostile; unfriendly to* (used with dat.).
inimīcus, -ī, m., *a personal enemy.*
inīquus, -a, -um, adj., *uneven, unfavorable; unfair, unjust.*
initium, -ī, n., *beginning.*
iniūria, -ae, f., *injury, wrong.*
iniussus, -a, -um, adj., *unbidden, without orders.*
innocēns, -entis, adj., *harmless, guiltless, innocent.*
innumerus, -a, -um, adj., *unnumbered, countless.*
inopia, -ae, f., *want, scarcity, lack.*
inquam, inquis, inquit, *say.*
inrīdeō, -ēre, -rīsī, -rīsus, *laugh at, mock, ridicule.*
inruō, -ere, -ruī, —, *rush upon.*
īnsidiae, -ārum, f., *strategy; ambush.*
īnsidior, -ārī, -ātus sum, *lie in wait.*
īnspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, *look into, look at.*
īnstitūtum, -ī, n., *arrangement, institution, custom.*
īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, *pile up, arrange, draw up, furnish, equip; construct, build.*
īnsula, -ae, f., *island.*
integer, -gra, -grum, adj., *untouched, unimpaired; whole, sound.*
intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, *understand, realize, feel.*
inter, prep. with acc., *between, among;* **inter sē,** *among* (*between, with*) *one another,* or, simply, *one another.*
intercēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *come between, intervene.*
intercipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *intercept, cut off; usurp, steal.*
interclūdō, -ere, -sī, -sus, *shut off, cut off, stop.*
interdum, adv., *now and again, sometimes.*
intereā, adv., *in the meantime, meanwhile; presently, by and by.*

interest, impers., *it concerns, it is of importance.*

interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *kill.*

intericiō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *throw between;* **interiectus, -a, -um,** *flung between, interposed;* of time, *having elapsed.*

interim, adv., *in the meantime; presently.*

interior, -ius (sup., **intimus**), adj., *inner.*

intermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send between, interpose, interject; interrupt, discontinue, stop;* **intermissus, -a, -um,** *interposed;* of time, *having elapsed.*

interpellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *push between, interrupt, hinder.*

interpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *place between, interpose.*

interrēgnum, -ī, n., *interregnum,* an interval between two reigns.

interritus, -a, -um, adj., *not frightened, undismayed.*

interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask, question.*

interscindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissus, *cut down, destroy.*

intersum, -esse, -fuī, —, *be in the midst of, take part in.*

interveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, *come between, intervene.*

intrepidus, -a, -um, adj., *unafraid, not frightened, fearless.*

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *enter.*

introdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead into.*

introitus, -ūs, m., *entrance.*

intueor, -tuērī, -tuitus sum, *gaze intently on, view.*

inundō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *flow in waves over, overflow.*

inūtilis, -e, adj., *useless.*

inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come upon, find, discover.*

inventor, -ōris, m., *finder, discoverer, inventor.*

invictus, -a, -um, adj., *unconquered, invincible.*

invideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsūrus, *envy* (used with dative).

invidia, -ae, f., *envy, hatred.*

invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *invite.*

invītus, -a, -um, adj., *unwilling.*

invocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call upon, invoke.*

iocus, -ī, m., *joke.*

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, gen., **ipsīus,** dem. pron. and adj., *self, himself,* etc.; **ego ipse,** *I myself;* **nōs ipsī,** *we ourselves;* **tū ipse,** *you yourself;* **vōs ipsī,** *you yourselves.*

īra, -ae, f., *anger, wrath.*

īrāscor, -ī, īrātus sum, *grow angry, be angry.*

īrātus, -a, -um, *angry, enraged.*

is, ea, id, gen., **eius,** dem. pron. and adj., *this, that; he, she, it, they.*

iste, ista, istud, gen., **istīus,** dem. pron. and adj., *that, that of yours.*

ita, adv., *so* (manner), *in this way, thus.*

Ītalia, -ae, f., *Italy.*

Italus, -a, -um, *of Italy, Italian.*

itaque, adv., *and so, and as a result.*

item, adv., *in like manner, likewise.*

iter, itineris, n., *a going; road, route; journey, march;* **magnum iter,** *a forced* (unusually long) *march;* **ex itinere,** (*from*) *on the march.*

iterum, adv., *a second time, again.*
Ithaca, -ae, f., *Ithaca.*
iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus, *order, command, bid* (used with acc. and inf.).
iūcundus, -a, -um, adj., *joyful.*
Iūdaeī, -ōrum, m., *Jews.*
iūdex, -icis, m., *juryman; judge.*
iūdicium, -ī, n., *trial* (in court); *judgment, decision.*
iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *judge.*
iugum, -ī, n., *yoke;* **sub iugum**, *under the yoke;* (of mountains) *ridge, summit.*
Iūlia, -ae, f., *Julia.*
iūmentum, -ī, n., *beast of burden.*
iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctus, *join.*
iūnior, -ius, comp. of **iuvenis**, adj., *younger.*
Iuppiter, Iovis, m., *Jupiter.*
Iūra, -ae, m., *the Jura* (a range of mountains).
iūs, iūris, n., *right, law.*
iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, n., *oath.*
iūstitia, -ae, f., *justice.*
iūstus, -a, -um, adj., *just.*
iuvenis, -e (comp., **iūnior**; sup., **minimus nātū**), adj., *young* (between 30 and 45 years of age).
iuvenis, -is, m., *young man.*
iuventūs, -ūtis, f., *youth.*
iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, *help, aid, assist.*

L

L. = **Lūcius.**
Labiēnus, -ī, m., *Titus Labienus,* Caesar's lieutenant.
labor, -ōris, m., *toil, labor.*
labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *labor, toil, work.*
lac, lactis, n., *milk.*
Lacedaemoniī, -ōrum, m., *Lacedaemonians, Spartans.*
lacessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, *arouse, provoke, harm.*
lacrima, -ae, f., *tear.*
lacus, -ūs, m., *lake.*
laetitia, -ae, f., *merriment, joy.*
laetus, -a, -um, adj., *joyful;* = adv., *joyously.*
lambō, -ere, —, —, *lick, wash.*
lampas, -adis, f., *torch.*
lapis, -idis, m., *stone.*
lapsus, -ūs, m., *a slip, error.*
Lārentia, -ae, f., *Larentia.*
lātē, adv., *widely.*
latebra, -ae, f., *hiding-place.*
Latīnī, -ōrum, m., *the Latins, Latin people.*
lātitūdō, -inis, f., *width.*
lātrātus, -ūs, m., *barking.*
latrō, -ōnis, m., *highwayman, robber.*
latus, -eris, n., *side.*
lātus, -a, -um, adj., *broad, wide.*
laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *praise.*
laus, laudis, f., *praise.*
lectus, -ī, m., *couch, bed.*
lēgātiō, -ōnis, f., *position as lēgātus; embassy.*
lēgātus, -ī, m., *lieutenant* (second in command to a general); *ambassador.*
legiō, -ōnis, f., *legion.*
legiōnārius, -a, -um, adj., *pertaining to the legion, legionary.*
legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, *pick out, choose; read.*
Lemannus, -ī, m., (*Lake*) *Geneva.*
lentē, adv., *slowly.*
Lentulus, -ī, m., *Lentulus.*
leō, leōnis, m., *lion.*

lepus, -oris, m., *hare.*
levis, -e, adj., *light* (in weight), *slight.*
leviter, adv., *lightly, slightly.*
lēx, lēgis, f., *law.*
libenter, adv., *gladly.*
liber, librī, m., *book.*
līber, -era, -erum, adj., *free.*
līberālis, -e, adj., *befitting a freeman, gentlemanly, noble, liberal.*
līberālitās, -ātis, f., *generosity, liberality.*
līberī, -ōrum, m., *children.*
līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *set free, free.*
lībertās, -ātis, f., *freedom, liberty.*
Libya, -ae, f., *Libya, Africa.*
licet, -ēre, -uit, impers. (with dat.), *it is permitted, it is possible.*
ligneus, -a, -um, adj., *of wood, wooden.*
lignum, -ī, n., *wood;* in pl., *pieces of wood, lumber.*
līlium, līlī, n., *lily.*
līmen, -inis, n., *threshold.*
lingua, -ae, f., *tongue, language.*
littera, -ae, f., *letter of the alphabet;* pl., *letter, an epistle, literature, letters.*
lītus, -oris, n., *shore* (of the sea).
locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *place, put.*
locus, -ī, m., pl., **loca,** n., *place, location, situation.*
longē, adv., *by far, far;* **quam longē?** *how far?*
longinquus, -a, -um, adj., *far off, distant, remote.*
longitūdō, -inis, f., *length.*
longus, -a, -um, adj., *long* (usually of space), *tall.*
loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, *speak, say, talk.*
lōtus, -ī, f., *lotus.*
Lūcius, -ī, m., *Lucius.*
Lūcrētia, -ae, f., *Lucretia.*
lūdicer, -cra, -crum, *sportive.*
lūdō, lūdere, lūsī, lūsūrus, *play, frolic.*
Ludovīcus, -ī, m., *Louis.*
lūdus, -ī, m., *game, play; school.*
lūmen, -inis, n., *light.*
lūna, -ae, f., *moon.*
lupa, -ae, f., *she-wolf.*
lupus, -ī, m., *wolf.*
lūridus, -a, -um, adj., *pale, dim.*
lūstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *purify.*
lūx, lūcis, f., *light, daylight, day;* **prīmā lūce,** *at daybreak.*

M

maculō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *spot, spoil.*
Maecēnās, -ātis, m., *Maecenas,* a famous Roman patron of letters; hence any *patron of letters.*
maestus, -a, -um, adj., *sad, sorrowful, gloomy.*
magicus, -a, -um, *magic.*
magis, adv., comp. of **magnopere,** *more greatly, more vigorously, more.*
magister, -trī, m., *teacher.*
magnitūdō, -inis, f., *greatness, great size.*
magnopere (comp., **magis;** sup., **maximē**), adv., *greatly, vigorously, earnestly.*
magnus, -a, -um (comp., **maior;** sup., **maximus**), adj., *large, great; much* (of money).
maior, -ius, comp. of **magnus,** adj., *greater, larger;* **maior nātū:** see **nātū.**

maiōrēs, -um, m. pl., *forefathers, ancestors;* see **nātū.**
male, adv., *badly, insufficiently.*
maleficium, -ī, n., *evil doing, evil, harm.*
mālō, mālle, māluī (**magis** and **volō,** *wish more*), *prefer.*
malum, -ī, n., *evil.*
malus, -a, -um (comp., **peior;** sup., **pessimus**), adj., *bad.*
mandātum, -ī, n., *commission, order, instruction(s).*
mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *put into the hands of, intrust to; command, instruct.*
maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *remain.*
Mānlius, -ī, m., *Manlius.*
mānsuētūdō, -inis, f., *compassion.*
manus, -ūs, f., *hand, arm; band, company* (of soldiers).
Mārcellus, -ī, m., *Marcellus.*
Mārcius, -ī, m., *Marcius.*
Mārcus, -ī, m., *Marcus.*
mare, -is, n., *sea.*
Marīa, -ae, f., *Mary.*
maritimus, -a, -um, adj., *having to do with the sea, on* or *near the sea, maritime, sea* (as adj.).
marmoreus, -a, -um, adj., *made of marble; marble.*
Mārs, Mārtis, m., *Mars.*
māter, -tris, f., *mother.*
mātrimōnium, -ī, n., *marriage;* **in mātrimōnium dare,** *give in marriage;* **in mātrimōnium dūcere,** *marry.*
Matrona, -ae, f., *the Marne* (river).
mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *make haste, hasten.*
maximē: see **magnopere.**
maximus, -a, -um, adj., sup. of **magnus; maximus nātū:** see **nātū.**
medicāmentum, -ī, n., *drug.*
medicus, -ī, m., *doctor, physician.*
medius, -a, -um, adj., *middle, middle part of;* **mediā nocte,** *midnight;* (**in**) **mediō colle, monte,** *halfway up the hill, mountain.*
Medūsa, -ae, f., *Medusa, a Gorgon.*
meī (gen.), reflex. pron., *of myself.*
melior, -ōris, comp. of **bonus,** adj., *better.*
membrum, -ī, n., *limb* (of the body).
memoria, -ae, f., *memory;* **memoriā tenēre,** *hold by* (in) *the memory, recollect, recall.*
Menapiī, -ōrum, m., a Belgic people.
mēns, mentis, f., *mind, purpose.*
mēnsa, -ae, f., *table.*
mēnsis, -is, m., *month.*
mercātor, -ōris, m., *merchant.*
mercātūra, -ae, f., *trade.*
Mercurius, -ī, m., *Mercury.*
mereō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *deserve.*
mergō, -ere, mersī, mersus, *thrust under water, sink.*
merīdiātiō, -ōnis, f., *siesta, midday rest.*
merīdiēs, -ēī, m., *midday, noon; the south.*
mēta, -ae, f., *turning-post* (in circus); *goal.*
Mettus, -ī, m., *Mettus.*
metus, -ūs, m., *fear, dread, terror.*
meus, -a, -um, poss. adj., *my, mine.*

mīles, -itis, m., *soldier;* **novus mīles,** *recruit.*

mīlia, -ium, n., *thousands.*

mīlitāris, -e, *of soldiers, military;* **rēs mīlitāris, reī mīlitāris,** f., *military affairs, art of war, warfare.*

mille, adj., indecl., *a thousand;* in pl., **mīlia,** neuter noun, *thousands* (used with gen.).

minae, -ārum, f., *threats.*

Minerva, -ae, f., *Minerva.*

minimē, adv., *least of all, not at all, no;* see **parum.**

minimus, adj., *smallest, least;* **minimus nātu,** *youngest:* see **parvus** and **nātū.**

ministerium, -ī, *n., office, service.*

ministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *attend.*

minor, adj., *less;* see **parvus.**

minus, adv., *less; not;* see **parum.**

mīrābilis, -e, adj., *wonderful.*

mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *marvel (at), wonder.*

mīrus, -a, -um, adj., *wonderful, marvelous, strange.*

misceō, -ēre, miscuī, mixtus, *mix.*

miser, -era, -erum, adj., *unhappy, wretched.*

miseria, -ae, f., *wretchedness, sadness, sorrow.*

misericordia, -ae, f., *mercy, pity, compassion.*

mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus, *send.*

modestus, -a, -um, adj., *keeping within limits, self-controlled, modest.*

modus, -ī, m., *measure, limit; way, manner.*

moenia, -ium, n., *fortifications, walls of a city.*

molestus, -a, -um, adj., *troublesome, irksome.*

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *warn, advise.*

monīle, -is, n., *necklace.*

mōns, montis, m., *mountain;* **(in) mediō monte,** *halfway up the mountain;* **sub monte,** *at the foot of the mountain.*

mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *point out, show.*

mōnstrum, -ī, n., *portent; monster.*

montānus, -ī, m., *mountaineer.*

montānus, -a, -um, *pertaining to mountains, mountainous, mountain.*

monumentum, -ī, n., *monument, memorial.*

mora, -ae, f., *delay.*

morbus, -ī, m., *disease, sickness.*

mordeō, -ēre, momordī, morsus, *bite.*

Morinī, -ōrum, m., *the Morini,* a Belgic people.

morior, morī, mortuus sum, *die.*

moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *delay.*

mors, mortis, f., *death.*

mortālis, -e, adj., *deadly; mortal.*

mortuus, -a, -um, adj., *having died, dead.*

mōs, mōris, m., *custom;* pl., *manners, habits, character.*

mōtus, -ūs, m., *movement, revolt.*

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move;* with **castra,** *break up.*

mox, adv., *soon, presently.*

Mūcius, -ī, m., *Mucius.*

mulier, -eris, f., *woman.*

multitūdō, -inis, f., *great (large) number, multitude.*
multō, adv., *much, greatly.*
multum, adv., *much.*
multus, -a, -um, adj., *much;* pl., *many.*
mundus, -ī, m., *world.*
mūnīmentum, -ī, n., *rampart.*
mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *fortify.*
mūnītiō, -ōnis, f., *fortification.*
mūrus, -ī, m., *wall.*
mūs, mūris, m., *mouse.*
mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *change.*

N

nam, conj., *for, because.*
nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *report, relate, tell.*
nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, *be born;* **nātus** with adj. and **annōs,** *aged.*
Nāsīca, -ae, m., *Nasica.*
Nāsō, -ōnis, m., P. Ovidius Naso, the Roman poet, *Ovid.*
nātiō, -ōnis, f., *nation.*
nātū, m., abl., *by birth;* **maior nātū,** *older;* **maiōrēs (nātū),** *forebears, ancestors;* **maximus nātū,** *eldest;* **minimus (nātū),** *youngest.*
nātūra, -ae, f., *nature, character; nature* (*i.e.*, the world in general).
nauta, -ae, m., *sailor.*
nauticus, -a, -um, adj., *pertaining to sailor* or *sea, nautical.*
nāvālis, -e, adj., *of ships, naval.*
nāvigium, -ī, n., *boat.*
nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *drive a ship, sail.*
nāvis, -is, f., *ship;* **nāvēs dēdūcere,** *launch ships;* **nāvis longa,** *war-ship;* **nāvēs solvere,** *cast off ships, set sail.*
Nazarēnus, -a, -um, *of Nazareth.*
nē, conj., *in order that not, that not, lest.*
nē, adv., *not;* **nē . . . quidem,** *not . . . even* (the emphatic word stands between **nē** and **quidem**).
-ne, interrog. particle (enclitic).
nec, conj. (same as **neque**), *and not.*
necessārius, -a, -um, adj., *necessary, urgent.*
necesse, indecl. adj., *necessary.*
necessitās, -tātis, f., *need, necessity.*
necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *put to death, kill, slay.*
negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *deny, say that . . . not.*
negōtium, -ī, n., *business, task; trouble;* **negōtium dare** (with dat.) **ut,** *instruct* (bid) *one to* (do, etc.), *order . . . to.*
nēmō, —, dat., **nēminī,** abl., **nūllō,** m., *no one.*
Nēmō, —, m., *Nobody,* supposed by Polyphemus to be the name of the man (Ulysses) who had blinded him.
nepōs, -ōtis, m., *grandson.*
Neptūnus, -ī, m., *Neptune,* god of the sea.
neque, conj., *and . . . not, nor, neither;* **neque . . . neque,** *neither . . . nor.*
nē . . . quidem: see **nē.**
Nerviī, -ōrum, m., *the Nervii,* a warlike Belgic people.
neuter, -tra, -trum, pron. and adj., gen. **neutrīus,** *neither* (of two).

niger, -gra, -grum, adj., *black.*
nihil, also **nīl,** indecl. noun., n., *nothing;* as adv., *not at all.*
nisi, conj., *if not, unless.*
nōbilis, -e, adj., *well-known, famous, of high rank, noble;* **nōbilis, -is,** m., *noble.*
noceō, -ēre, -uī, —, *do harm, injure* (used with dat.).
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī (**nōn** and **volō**), *be unwilling.*
nōmen, -inis, n., *name.*
nōn, adv., *not;* **nōn modo** or **sōlum . . . sed etiam,** *not only . . . but also.*
nōnagintā, num. adj., indecl., *ninety.*
nōndum, adv., *not yet.*
nōn modo . . . sed etiam, *not only . . . but also.*
nōnne, interrog. particle, in questions expecting the answer "*yes.*"
nōnnūllus, -a, -um, adj., *some.*
nōnnumquam, adv., *sometimes.*
nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam, adv., *not only, . . . but also.*
nōnus, -a, -um, num. adj., *ninth.*
nōs, nostrum, pron., pl. of **ego,** *we.*
nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus (used only as adj.), *begin to know, learn;* in perf., *know.*
noster, -tra, -trum, poss. pron. and adj., *our, ours.* See the next article.
nostrī, -ōrum, pl. m., *our men, our troops.*
notō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *mark, note; brand.*
nōtus, -a, -um, adj., *well known, familiar, famous.*
novem, num. adj., indecl., *nine.*
Noviodūnum, -ī, n., a town of the Suessiones.
novissimī, -ōrum, m., *those in the rear;* **novissimum agmen,** *rearguard.*
novus, -a, -um, adj., *new, strange;* **novus mīles,** [illegible]
nox, noctis, f., [illegible] **mediā nocte,** *at midnight;* **proximā nocte,** *on the following night.*
nūbēs, -is, f., *cloud.*
nubila, -ōrum, n., *clouds.*
nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make bare, bare, strip; leave unprotected.*
nūdus, -a, -um, adj., *bare, naked, unprotected.*
nūllus, -a, -um, adj., gen. **nūllīus,** *not any, not one, none at all, no, none.*
num, interrog. particle, in questions expecting the answer "*no*"; *whether.*
Numa, -ae, m., *Numa.*
nūmen, -inis, n., *divine power, divinity.*
numerus, -ī, m., *number, account.*
Numitor, -ōris, m., *Numitor.*
numquam, adv., *never.*
nunc, adv., *at this present moment, now.*
nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *announce, report, declare.*
nūntius, -ī, m., *messenger, message.*

O

Ō, interj., *O!, Oh!*
ob, prep., with acc., *against; on account of.*
obdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead against, draw against; extend.*

obiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *throw against, set before, oppose.*

oblītus, -a, -um, adj., *forgetful (of), forgetting.*

oblīviscor, -līviscī, -lītus sum, *forget* (used with gen.).

oboedientia, -ae, f., *obedience.*

obscūrus, -a, -um, adj., *darkened, dark.*

obses, -idis, m. and f., *hostage, pledge, security.*

obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus, *besiege.*

obstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, *block up, obstruct.*

obtemperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *obey* (used with dat.).

obtineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, *keep hold on, hold, have; get a hold on, obtain; prevail.*

occāsiō, -ōnis, f., *fine chance, opportunity.*

occāsus, -ūs, m., *setting.*

occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus, *cut at, kill, slay.*

occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hide.*

occultus, -a, -um, adj., *hidden.*

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *seize, take possession of.*

occurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursūrus, *run against, meet* (used with dat.).

octāvus, -a, -um, num. adj., *eighth.*

octō, num. adj., indecl., *eight.*

octōgintā, num. adj., indecl., *eighty.*

oculus, -ī, m., *eye.*

ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus, *hate;* note that the perfect has the force of the present.

offero, -ferre, obtulī, oblātus, *carry to, offer.*

officīna, -ae, f., *workshop.*

officium, -ī, n., *friendly service, duty; office, official employment.*

ōlim, adv., *once on a time, on one occasion; formerly.*

olus, -eris, n., *vegetables, greens.*

ōmen, -inis, n., *omen.*

omittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send away, let go, neglect, lose.*

omnīnō, adv., *in all.*

omnis, -e, adj., *every;* in pl., *all.*

onus, -eris, n., *burden, weight.*

opera, -ae, f., *work.*

operor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *work.*

opīniō, -ōnis, f., *opinion, conception* (of); *belief, expectation; reputation.*

oportet, -ēre, -uit, impers., *it is fitting, it is necessary* (used with acc. of person and inf.).

oppidānus, -a, -um, *pertaining to (a) town;* **oppidānī, -ōrum,** m., *townspeople.*

oppidum, -ī, n., *town.*

oppōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *put against, oppose.*

opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus, *press against, weigh down, crush, overwhelm.*

oppugnātiō, -ōnis, f., *assault, attack, siege.*

oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *attack, assault, besiege.*

optimus, adj., *best, very good, excellent;* see **bonus.**

opus, operis, n., *work, labor; thing done;* **magnopere,** *greatly, vigorously.*

ōra, -ae, f., *coast;* **ōra maritima,** *sea coast.*

ōrāculum, -ī, n., *oracle, prophecy.*

ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., *speech, oration;* **ōrātiōnem habēre,** *deliver a speech.*

ōrātor, -ōris, m., *speaker, orator.*

orbis, -is, m., *ring, circle;* **orbis terrārum,** *the compass of the lands, the wide, wide world.*

ōrdinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *set in order, arrange, settle; appoint.*

ōrdō, -inis, m., *arrangement; order, row, rank.*

Orgetorīx, -īgis, m., *Orgetorix,* a Helvetian lord.

orior, orīrī, ortus sum, *spring from, arise, rise up, rise.*

ōrnāmentum, -ī, n., *ornament, jewel.*

ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *adorn, ornament.*

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *speak; beg, pray; beg for, ask for.*

os, ossis, n., *bone.*

ōsculum, -ī, n., *kiss.*

ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, *point out, show.*

ōstium, -ī, n., *door, entrance.*

ovis, -is, f., *sheep.*

P

pābulum, -ī, n., *fodder* (for animals).

pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *pacify, subdue.*

paeān, -ānis, m., *hymn, paean.*

paedagōgus, -ī, m., *attendant,* a slave who accompanied children to and from school.

paene, adv., *almost, nearly.*

pāgina, -ae, f., *page.*

Palātium, -ī, n., *Palatine Hill.*

palla, -ae, f., *palla,* a kind of shawl or wrap.

pallor, -ōris, m., *paleness, pallor.*

palma, -ae, f., *palm, reward.*

palūs, -ūdis, f., *swamp, marsh.*

pālus, -ī, m., *stick, stake.*

pandō, -ere, pandī, passus, *spread out, stretch out;* **manibus passīs,** *with outspread (outstretched) hands.*

pānis, -is, m., *bread.*

pār, paris, adj., *equal; equal to* (used with dat.).

parātus, -a, -um, adj., *prepared.*

parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsūrus, *spare* (used with dat.).

parēns, -entis, m. and f., *parent, father, mother.*

pāreō, -ēre, -uī, —, *obey* (used with dat.).

pariēs, -etis, m., (outside) *wall* (of a house).

Paris, Paridis, m., *Paris,* son of the Trojan king, Priam.

Parnāsus, -ī, m., *Parnassus,* a mountain in Greece.

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *get ready, make ready, prepare for, prepare.*

pars, partis, f., *part, side, direction;* **ab superiōre parte,** *from a higher position;* **ex omnibus partibus,** *from all sides, on all sides.*

parum (comp., **minus;** sup., **minimē**), adv., *little, too little.*

parvulus, -a, -um, adj., *tiny.*

parvus, -a, -um (comp., **minor;** sup., **minimus**), adj., *small, little, tiny.*

passus, -ūs, m., *pace;* **mille passūs,** *a mile;* **mīlia passuum,** *miles.*

pāstor, -ōris, m., *shepherd.*

patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, *open.*

pateō, -ēre, -uī, —, *lie open, extend.*

pater, -tris, m., *father;* in pl., *forefathers, ancestors, senators.*

patior, patī, passus sum, *suffer, permit, allow* (used with acc. and inf.).

patria, -ae, f., *native land.*

patrius, -a, -um, *pertaining to (a) father, fatherly, paternal.*

paucī, -ae, -a, adj., *few.*

paulisper, adv., *for a short time.*

paulō, adv., *by a little, a little;* **paulō ante,** *a little while before, a short time ago;* **paulō ante mediam noctem,** *a little before midnight;* **paulō posteā,** *a little while afterward (later).*

paulum, -ī, n., *a little.*

paulum, adv., *a little, somewhat.*

pauper, -eris, adj., *poor;* as noun, *the poor (people).*

pāx, pācis, f., *peace.*

pectus, -oris, n., *breast.*

pecūnia, -ae, f., *riches, wealth; money.*

pecus, -oris, n., *cattle, herd, flock* (of sheep or goats).

pedes, -itis, m., *foot soldier;* pl., *infantrymen, infantry.*

pedester, -tris, -tre, adj., *of infantry, infantry* (adj.).

Pedius, -ī, m., *Quintus Pedius.*

peior, peius, adj., *worse:* see **malus.**

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, *drive, rout, put to flight, defeat; strike.*

pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsus, *pay.*

Pēnelopē, -ēs, acc., **-ēn,** f., *Penelope.*

pēnīnsula, -ae, f., *peninsula.*

per, prep., with acc., *through, across; by, by means of; on account of.*

percipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *take* (in) *fully, feel, perceive.*

perdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead through, conduct; construct, extend* (a wall, or a ditch).

perfectus, -a, -um, adj., *fully made, perfect.*

perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *carry through; bear, endure; report.*

perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *do fully, finish.*

perfidus, -a, -um, adj., *disloyal, faithless, treacherous.*

perfugium, -ī, n., *place of refuge, shelter.*

perīclitor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *try, test; prove, make trial of.*

perīculum, -ī, n., *danger, peril.*

peristȳlium, -ī, n., *peristyle,* the more private part of the Roman house.

perītus, -a, -um, adj., *skilled, experienced;* with gen., *skilled in.*

perlūstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *wander through, survey.*

permaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsūrus, *remain through, continue; hold out.*

permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *intrust, commit; permit, allow* (used with dat., and **ut** with subjunctive).

permoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move deeply, alarm, influence, rouse.*

perpaucī, -ae, -a, adj., *very few.*

perrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *break through.*

perscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, *write through, write in full.*

persōna, -ae, f., *character.*

personō, -āre, -uī, —, *sound.*

perspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, *look through, see through, observe.*

persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsūrus, *urge strongly, persuade* (used with the dat., followed by **ut** with the subjunctive).

perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *frighten thoroughly, alarm;* **perterritus, -a, -um,** adj., *thoroughly frightened.*

pertineō, -ēre, -uī, —, (hold =) *stretch on* (to), *extend* (to), *reach; belong to, pertain to.*

perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *disturb greatly, confuse.*

perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, *come through* (to), *arrive* (at).

pēs, pedis, m., *foot;* **certāmen pedum,** *footrace.*

pessimus, adj., *worst;* see **malus.**

petō, -ere, -īvī or **-iī, -ītus,** *attack; aim at, seek; ask* (takes acc. of the thing and **ā** or **ab** with abl. of the person).

phalerae, -ārum, pl. f., *decorations* (medals, etc.) *of warrior or war-horse, trappings.*

pharetra, -ae, f., *quiver.*

Phoebus, -ī, m., *Phoebus* (= Apollo).

pictūra, -ae, f., *painting, picture.*

pietās, -ātis, f., *loyalty, devotion.*

pīlum, -ī, n., *javelin.*

placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *please* (with dat.); used impersonally, **placet** (with dat.), *it seems good* (to).

placidus, -a, -um, adj., *calm.*

Plancus, -ī, m., *Plancus.*

plānitiēs, -ēī, f., *level ground, plain.*

plēbs, plēbis, f., *common people, plebeians.*

plēnus, -a, -um, adj., *full.*

plērīque, -ōrumque, m., *most persons, the majority.*

plērumque, adv., *for the most part, generally.*

plūrēs, -ium, pl. adj., comp. of **multus,** *more, several.*

plūrimus, sup. of **multus,** *most.*

plūs, plūris, comp. of **multum,** *more;* **plūs posse,** *to be more powerful;* **plūrimum posse,** *to be most powerful, have very great influence.*

pluvia, -ae, f., *rain.*

pōculum, -ī, n., *cup.*

poena, -ae, f., *fine, penalty, punishment* (thought of as a debt to be paid); **poenās dare,** *pay the penalty, suffer punishment;* **poenam sūmere,** (collect =) *inflict punishment.*

Poenī, -ōrum, m., *Carthaginians.*

poēta, -ae, m., *poet.*

polliceor, -ērī, -itus sum, *promise* (usually with **mē, tē, sē,** and fut. infin.; sometimes with pres. infin., without subject acc.).

Polydectēs, -ae, acc. **-ēn,** m., *Polydectes.*

Polyphēmus, -ī, m., *Polyphemus.*

pompa, -ae, f., *procession.*

Pompeius, -ī, m., *Pompey.*

Pompilius, -ī, m., *Pompilius.*

pōmum, -ī, n., *fruit, apple.*

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, *put, set, place;* (with **castra**), *pitch.*
pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.*
pontifex, -icis, m., *pontifex* (a Roman high priest).
Pontifex Maximus, m., the Pontifex Maximus, the chief religious official of Rome.
populor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *lay waste, devastate.*
populus, -ī, m., *people, nation.*
porcus, -ī, m., *pig, swine.*
Porsena, -ae, m., *Porsena.*
porta, -ae, f., *gate,* of a city or a camp (not of a house).
portendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, *predict, portend, foreshadow.*
portentum, -ī, n., *marvel, portent.*
portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *carry.*
portus, -ūs, m., *harbor, port.*
poscō, -ere, poposcī, —, *demand* (used with acc., and **ā** or **ab** with the abl.).
possessiō, -ōnis, f., *possession, treasure.*
possideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus, *occupy, possess.*
possum, posse, potuī, *can, be able, have power;* **plūs posse,** *to have more (great) influence (power);* **plūrimum posse,** *to have very great influence (power).*
post, adv., *afterwards, after, later.*
post, prep., with acc. (of place), *behind;* (of time), *after, next to.*
posteā, adv., *after that time, afterward, thereafter.*
posteritās, -ātis, f., *after generations, posterity.*
posterus, -a, -um (comp., **posterior;** sup., **postrēmus**), adj., *following, next.*
postquam, conj., *after.*
postrēmus, -a, -um, sup. of **posterus,** adj., *last; next.*
postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *claim, demand* (used with acc., and **ā** or **ab** with abl.).
potēns, potentis, adj., *powerful, mighty, able.*
potestās, -tātis, f., *power, control, opportunity.*
potior, -īrī, -ītus sum, *get possession of* (used with abl.).
prae, prep. with abl., *before.*
praeacūtus, -a, -um, adj., *sharp (at the end).*
praeambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *walk before.*
praecēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *go ahead of, precede, surpass.*
praeceptum, -ī, n., *command, direction.*
praecipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *instruct, advise, direct, order.*
praecipuē, adv., *especially.*
praeclārus, -a, -um, adj., *very famous, illustrious.*
praedīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus, *foretell, preach.*
praedictum, -ī, n., *prediction, prophecy.*
praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *place over* or *in command of, put in charge of* (used with acc. and dat.).
praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send ahead.*
praemium, -ī, n., *reward, prize, premium.*
praenōmen, -inis, n., *given name, first name, praenomen.*
praeparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make ready beforehand, prepare.*

praepōnō, -ere, -posuī, -itus, *place in command of* (used with acc. and dat.).

praesēns, -sentis, adj., *present in person, present; near, immediate.*

praesentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsus, *feel beforehand, have a presentiment.*

praeses, -idis, m., *guardian, protector.*

praesidium, -ī, n., *protection, guard, garrison.*

praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stitus, *stand ahead of, excel, surpass; be at the head of, be responsible for;* impers., **praestat,** *it is better;* **officium praestāre,** *to do one's duty.*

praesum, -esse, -fuī, *be at the head of, be in front of, have command of* (used with dat.).

praeter, prep., with acc., *except, besides.*

praetereā, adv., *besides.*

praetereō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itūrus, *go by, pass, go ahead.*

praeterquam, adv., *besides, otherwise, than.*

praetervehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectus, *carry by;* in pass., with instrumental abl., *be carried by, ride by.*

prandium, -ī, n., *lunch.*

precēs, -um, f., *prayers.*

premō, -ere, pressī, pressus, *press hard, press; crush, overwhelm;* pass., *be weighed down, be hard pressed.*

pretium, -ī, n., *price.*

Priamus, -ī, m., *Priam,* king of Troy.

prīdem, adv., *long ago, long since;* esp. used in the expression **iam prīdem,** *long ago.*

prīmō, adv., *at first* (used in contrasts).

prīmum, adv., *for the first time, first* (used in a series).

prīmus, -a, -um, adj., *first, chief, foremost; first part of, early;* **prīmā lūce,** *at daybreak;* **quam prīmum,** *as soon as possible;* **prīmō,** *at first* (in contrasts); **prīmum,** *for the first time, first* (in a series).

prīnceps, -cipis, m., *chief.*

prior, -ius, adj., *former; first.*

Prīscus, -ī, m., *Priscus.*

prius, adv., *before, previously; first of all.*

prīvātus, -a, -um, adj., *belonging to an individual, private* (opposed to **pūblicus**).

prō, prep., with abl., *in front of; in proportion to; for, = instead of, in place of; in defense of, in behalf of.*

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *test; approve.*

Proca, -ae, m., *Proca.*

prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *go forward, advance.*

procul, adv., *at* or *from a distance.*

procus, -ī, m., *suitor.*

prōdigium, -ī, n., *portent, omen, sign.*

prōdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *surrender; give over, betray.*

prōdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead forward, lead forth; lead (drag) along, protract.*

proelium, -ī, n., *battle.*

profectiō, -ōnis, f., *departure.*

prōficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectūrus, *make (push) oneself forward, go forward; accomplish, gain.*

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, *set out; go away, depart.*
profugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, *flee.*
prōgredior, -ī, -gressus sum, *step (go) forward, advance, proceed.*
prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *hold off, keep off, hinder, prohibit.*
prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, *throw forward, throw away;* **sē prōicere,** *fling oneself, leap down, expose oneself, fall.*
prōmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send (put) forward a promise, promise* (construed as **polliceor** is).
prōmō, -ere, prōmpsī, prōmptus, *take forth, bring forth, produce, render.*
prōmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move forward, promote.*
prōnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *announce, declare.*
prope, adv., *near, nearly, almost;* as prep., with acc., *near.*
prōpellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, *drive forward, propel.*
properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *hurry, hasten.*
propinquus, -a, -um, adj., *near, near by, neighboring; related.*
propinquus, -ī, m., *relative.*
propior, -ius (sup., **proximus**), adj., *nearer;* see **prope.**
prōpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *set forth, put before, propose.*
proprius, -a, -um, adj., *one's own.*
propter, prep., with acc., *near; on account of, because of.*
propterea quod, conj., *because.*
prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *follow, pursue; escort.*
prōsperē, adv., *successfully.*
prōsperus, -a, -um, adj., *prosperous.*
prōtegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctus, *cover, protect.*
protrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -tractus, *draw forward, extend.*
prōvehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectus, *carry forward;* in pass., with instr. abl., *sail.*
prōvideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsus, *provide.*
prōvincia, -ae, f., *province,* esp. *the* province, a part of Southern Gaul, now called Provençe.
proximē, adv., *next, most recently, lately.*
proximus, -a, -um, adj., *nearest, next, last (preceding or following);* see **propior; proximā nocte,** *on the following night.*
prūdēns, -entis, adj., *foreseeing, wise, discreet, prudent.*
prūdenter, adv., *wisely, prudently.*
prūdentia, -ae, f., *foresight, prudence; practical wisdom.*
psallō, -ere, -ī, —, *play the harp; rejoice.*
pūblicus, -a, -um, adj., *belonging to the State, affecting the State, public, official* (opposed to **prīvātus**).
puella, -ae, f., *girl.*
puer, puerī, m., *boy.*
pugna, -ae, f., *fight, battle.*
pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *fight.*
pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj., *beautiful.*
pulchrē, adv., *beautifully.*
pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *punish.*
pūritās, -ātis, f., *purity.*
pūrus, -a, -um, adj., *pure, clear.*

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *think, believe.*

Pyrrha, -ae, f., *Pyrrha.*

Pyrrhus, -ī, m., *Pyrrhus.*

Pȳthia, -ae, f., *the Pythia* (priestess of Apollo at Delphi, in Greece).

Q

Q. = **Quīntus,** *Quintus,* proper name.

quā, adv., *where, by what way.*

quadrāgēsimus, -a, -um, num. adj., *fortieth.*

quadrāgintā, num. adj., indecl., *forty.*

quadringentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., *four hundred.*

quaerō, -ere, -sīvī, -sītus, *ask, seek,* with acc.; also takes the acc. of the thing and the abl. of the person with **ē, ex, ā, ab,** or **dē.**

quaestus, -ūs, m., (seeking and) *getting of money; money gained, gain.*

quālis, -e, adj., *of what sort?, of what kind?*

quam, adv. and conj., *how?; than, as;* with superlatives, *as . . . as possible;* **quam diū,** *how long?;* **quam longē,** *how far?*

quamobrem, adv., *why?*

quamquam, conj., *although, though* (used with indic.).

quandō, conj., *since, because.*

quantō opere, *how much?, how greatly?*

quantus, -a, -um, adj., *how great?, how large?, how much?*

quārtus, -a, -um, num. adj., *fourth;* **quārtus decimus,** *fourteenth.*

quasi, adv., *as if.*

quattuor, num. adj., indecl., *four.*

quattuordecim, num. adj., indecl., *fourteen.*

-que (an enclitic), conj., *and.*

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., *who, which, that, what.*

quī, quae, quod, interrog. adj., *what?, which?; what sort of?*

quia, conj., *because.*

quicquid (**quisquis**), n., *whatever* (used in affirmative expressions).

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. pron. and adj., *whoever, whatever.*

quid: see **quis.**

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam or **quoddam,** indef. pron. and adj., *a certain (one), a certain thing.*

quidem, adv., postpositive, *to be sure, indeed, certainly, at least;* **nē . . . quidem,** *not even* (see under **nē**).

quiēs, -ētis, f., *repose, rest.*

quīn, conj., *that not.*

quīndecim, num. adj., indecl., *fifteen.*

quīngentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., *five hundred.*

quīnquāgintā, num. adj., indecl., *fifty.*

quīnque, num. adj., indecl., *five.*

quīntus, -a, -um, num. adj., *fifth;* **quīntus decimus,** *fifteenth.*

quis, quid, interrog. pron., *who?, what?*

quispiam, —, quidpiam, indef. pron., *any one, anything.*

quisquam, —, quicquam, indef. pron., *any one at all, anything* (used in *negative* expressions).

quisque, quaeque, quidque, pron. and adj., *each one, every one.*

quō, rel. adv., *whither, where, to which place, where, and . . . thither;* interrog. adv., *whither?, where?*

quod, conj., *because; that.*

quōmodo, interrog. adv., *how?*

quoque, postpositive, adv., *also* (**quoque** adds only the one word, *noun or pronoun,* which it follows; see **etiam**).

quot, adj., indecl., *how many?*

R

rapīna, -ae, f., *robbery, plundering, plunder.*

rapiō, -ere, -uī, raptus, *hurry away, seize, carry off.*

ratiō, -ōnis, f., *reckoning, accounting; account, manner; theory;* **ratiō pācis,** *a regard for peace.*

ratis, -is, f., *raft.*

ratus, -a, -um, adj., *reckoned, fixed by calculation.*

raucus, -a, -um, adj., *hoarse, discordant.*

recēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *go back, withdraw.*

recēns, recentis, adj., *fresh, new, recent.*

receptus, -ūs, m., *retreat.*

recidō, -ere, -cidī, —, *fall back.*

recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, receptus, *take back, receive; get back, recover;* **in fidem recipere,** *take under one's protection;* **sē recipere,** *take oneself back, retreat, withdraw.*

rēctor, -ōris, m., *ruler, guide.*

rēctus, -a, -um, adj., *straight, direct.*

recuperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *take back, get back, recover.*

recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *refuse.*

reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *give back, put back, return, restore.*

redeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itūrus, *go back, return.*

redigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus, *drive back, force back; reduce;* **in servitūtem redigere,** *reduce to slavery, enslave.*

redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *renew.*

reditus, -ūs, m., *return.*

redūcō, -ere, redūxī, reductus, *lead back, bring back; withdraw.*

referō, -ferre, rettulī, -lātus, *bring back, bear* or *carry back; bring back news, report; reconsider.*

reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *make over, repair.*

refugiō, -ere, -fūgī, —, *flee back, flee.*

refulgeō, -ēre, -sī, —, *shine brightly.*

rēgia, -ae, f., *king's house, palace* (supply **domus**).

rēgīna, -ae, f., *queen.*

regiō, -ōnis, f., *district, region, boundary.*

rēgius, -a, -um, *royal, regal, kingly.*

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *rule.*

rēgnum, -ī, n., *royal power, kingdom; throne, sovereignty.*

regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus, *guide, direct; rule, manage.*

Rēgulus, -ī, m., *Regulus.*

reiciō, -ere, reiēcī, reiectus, *throw back, fling back, repulse.*

relēgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *banish.*

religiō, -ōnis, f., *sense of duty, religion.*

relinquō, -ere, relīquī, relictus, *leave, abandon.*

reliquus, -a, -um, adj., *remaining, the rest of.*

remaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsūrus, *remain.*

Remus, -ī, m., *Remus.*

Rēmus, -ī, m., *one of the Remi.*

remittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send back.*

removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move away, move back, remove.*

renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bring back a message, report, announce.*

repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsus, *drive back, repulse.*

reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus, *find, discover.*

repertor, -ōris, m., *finder, discoverer.*

repleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *refill, fill up.*

reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *carry back, bring back.*

requiēscō, -ere, requiēvī, requiētūrus, *rest, repose.*

requīrō, -ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus, *search for (again), require.*

rēs, reī, f., *matter, affair, situation, respect, event, fact, task, exploit; thing;* **omnibus rēbus,** *in all respects.*

rēs frūmentāria, reī frūmentāriae, f., *grain supply.*

resistō, -ere, restitī, —, *take one's stand against, resist, oppose.*

respondeō, -ēre, -dī, respōnsus, *answer, reply, make reply, respond.*

respōnsum, -ī, n., *answer.*

rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, f., *the commonwealth, State, republic.*

restituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus, *set back, put back, restore.*

retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, *hold back, restrain, detain, retain.*

revertor, revertī (inf.), **revertī** (perf.), **reversus** (perf. part., deponent), *turn back, return;* the perfect stem tenses (except the part.) are from the active forms, the others from the deponent.

rēx, rēgis, m., *king.*

Rhēa, -ae, f., *Rhea.*

Rhēnus, -ī, m., *the Rhine* (river).

rhētorica, -ae, f., *rhetoric, oratory.*

Rhodanus, -ī, m., *the Rhone* (river).

rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsus, *smile, laugh, laugh at.*

rīma, -ae, f., *chink, crack, crevice.*

rīpa, -ae, f., *bank* (of a river).

Robertus, -ī, m., *Robert.*

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask, ask for* (used with two accusatives, one of the person, one of the thing; also with **ut** and the subj.).

Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome.*

Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj., *Roman.*

Rōmānus, -ī, m., *a Roman.*

Rōmulus, -ī, m., *Romulus.*

rōs, rōris, m., *dew.*

rosa, -ae, f., *rose.*

rōstrum, -ī, n., *beak; rostrum, speaker's platform.*

rubēns, -entis, adj., *red.*

ruīna, -ae, f., *downfall, collapse;* in pl., *ruins.*

rūmor, -ōris, m., *rumor, report.*

rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptus, *burst.*

ruō, -ere, ruī, ruitūrus, *rush.*

rūpēs, -is, f., *cliff, reef, rock.*
rūrsus, adv., *again, anew.*

S

Sabīnī, -ōrum, m., *Sabines.*
Sabīnus, -ī, m., *Sabinus.*
saccus, -ī, m., *bag, sack.*
sacer, sacra, sacrum, adj., *sacred;* **Sacra Via,** *The Sacred Way,* a street in the Forum in Rome.
sacerdōs, -ōtis, m. and f., *priest, priestess.*
Sacra Via: see **sacer.**
sacrificium, -ī, n., *sacrifice.*
sacrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *render sacred.*
saepe, adv., *often.*
saevus, -a, -um, adj., *cruel, savage.*
sagitta, -ae, f., *arrow.*
sagittārius, -ī, m., *archer, bowman.*
sāl, salis, m., *salt.*
saltus, -ūs, m., *leap, bound.*
salūs, -ūtis, f., *health; safety, salvation.*
salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *wish health to, salute, greet.*
salvātor, -ōris, m., *savior.*
salveō, -ēre, —, —, *be well;* **salvē** (imperative), *welcome.*
salvus, -a, -um, adj., *safe;* **salvum** or **salvam fac,** *keep, preserve, save.*
Samnītēs, -um, m. pl., *the Samnites.*
sānitās, -ātis, f., *sound state of mind, sanity.*
sānus, -a, -um, adj., *sound, sane.*
sapiēns, -entis, adj., *wise.*
sapiēns, -entis, m., *a wise person.*
sapienter, adv., *wisely.*
satis (also **sat**), as noun, *enough, sufficient* (used with gen.); adv., *enough, sufficiently, fully, quite.*
satisfaciō, -ere, -fecī, -factūrus, *do enough for, satisfy* (used with dative).
saxum, -ī, n., *stone, rock, boulder.*
Scaevola, -ae, m., *Scaevola,* "Left-Hand," a name given to Mucius.
scelus, -eris, n., *crime.*
Schoeneus, -eī, m., *Schoeneus.*
scientia, -ae, f., *knowledge.*
sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *know.*
Scōtī, -ōrum, m., *Scots.*
scrība, -ae, m., *clerk, secretary.*
scrībo, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *write.*
scūtum, -ī, n., *shield.*
sē: see **suī; inter sē:** see **inter.**
sēcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *go apart, withdraw.*
secundus, -a, -um, adj., *following, favoring; favorable; second.*
sēcūrus, -a, -um, adj., *without anxiety, safe, secure.*
sēclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, *shut apart.*
sed, conj., *but.*
sēdecim, num. adj., indecl., *sixteen.*
sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessūrus, *sit.*
sēdēs, -is, f., *seat, permanent dwelling place, abode.*
sēmentis, -is, f., *sowing.*
sēmita, -ae, f., *footpath, path.*
semper, adv., *always, ever.*
senātor, -ōris, m., *senator.*
senātus, -ūs, m., *senate.*
senectūs, -ūtis, f., *old age.*
senex, -is (comp., **senior;** sup., **maximus nātū**), adj., *old;* as a subst., *old man.*

Senonēs, -um, m., a people of Gaul.
sententia, -ae, f., *feeling, thought, view, opinion, decision.*
sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *feel, perceive, think; realize, judge.*
sēparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *put apart, set apart.*
septem, num. adj., indecl., *seven.*
septendecim, num. adj., indecl., *seventeen.*
septimus, -a, -um, num. adj., *seventh;* **septimus decimus,** *seventeenth.*
Sēquana, -ae, f., *the Seine* (river).
Sēquanus, -ī, m., *a Sequanian.*
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow.*
serpēns, -entis, f., *serpent.*
serva, -ae, f., *slave* (female).
servīlis, -e, adj., *befitting a slave, slave-like, servile.*
serviō, -īre, -īvī, -ītūrus, *be slave to, serve* (used with dat.).
servitūs, -tūtis, f., *slavery;* **in servitūtem redigere,** *to reduce to slavery.*
Servius, -ī, m., *Servius.*
servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *keep safe, protect, maintain, save, keep.*
servus, -ī, m., *slave* (male).
sescentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., *six hundred.*
sex, num. adj., indecl., *six.*
sexāgintā, num. adj., indecl., *sixty.*
sextus, -a, -um, num. adj., *sixth;* **sextus decimus,** *sixteenth.*
sī, conj., *if.*
Sibylla, -ae, f., *the Sibyl* (a prophetess).
Sibyllīnus, -a, -um, adj., *having to do with the Sibyl, Sibylline.*
sīc, adv., *so* (manner), *in this way* (used with verbs).
siccum, -ī, n., *dry land.*
siccus, -a, -um, adj., *dry.*
Sicilia, -ae, f., *Sicily.*
sīdus, -eris, n., *constellation;* pl., *heavenly bodies.*
significō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make signs, show, indicate.*
signum, -ī, n., *signal, military standard;* **signa īnferre,** *wage (offensive) warfare on, attack.*
silenter, adv., *silently.*
silentium, -ī, n., *silence.*
silva, -ae, f., *forest, woods.*
Silvia, -ae, f., *Silvia.*
similis, -e, adj., *like, similar; like to* (used with dat.).
simul, adv., *at once;* **simul atque (ac),** *as soon as.*
simulācrum, -ī, n., *likeness, image, statue.*
simulāns, -antis, adj., *pretending.*
sine, prep., with abl., *without.*
singulāris, -e, adj., *one (only) of its kind, single, unique; one by one.*
singulī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., *one by one.*
sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., *left, left hand.*
sī quis, sī qua, sī quid, *if any one* or *if any thing.*
situs, -ūs, m., *situation.*
socius, -ī, m., *comrade, ally.*
sōl, sōlis, m., *sun;* **sōlis occāsū,** *at sunset.*
solea, -ae, *f., sandal.*
soleō, -ēre, -itus sum, *be wont, be accustomed, be used.*
solum, -ī, n., *ground, floor.*

sōlus, -a, -um, adj., gen. **sōlīus,** *only, alone;* **nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam,** *not only . . . but also.*

solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus, *loosen, unfasten;* **nāvem (nāvēs) solvere,** or **solvere** alone, *cast off, set sail.*

somnus, -ī, m., *sleep.*

sonitus, -ūs, m., *sound, noise.*

soror, -ōris, f., *sister.*

sors, sortis, f., *lot, fate; a lot,* a token of one's fate, used in a "drawing" of lots.

spargō, -ere, sparsī, sparsus, *scatter.*

Sparta, -ae, f., *Sparta.*

Spartacus, -ī, m., *Spartacus.*

Spartānus, -a, -um, adj., *Spartan.*

spatium, -ī, n., *space; space (period) of time, time.*

speciēs, -ēī, f., *appearance.*

spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *look at, watch.*

speculātor, -ōris, m., *scout.*

speculum, -ī, n., *mirror.*

spēlunca, -ae, f., *cave, grotto.*

spernō, -ere, sprēvī, sprētus, *set aside, spurn, despise.*

spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hope;* with acc., *hope for.*

spēs, speī, f., *hope.*

spīna, -ae, f., *thorn; backbone;* central part of Roman race-course.

spīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *breathe.*

spissus, -a, -um, adj., *crowded; close packed.*

stabiliō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *make firm, establish.*

statiō, -ōnis, f., a place where one stands, *picket-post, pickets.*

statim, adv., *immediately, at once.*

statua, -ae, f., *statue.*

statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *place, set, arrange; decide, determine, establish.*

status, -ūs, m., *state, condition.*

stella, -ae, f., *star.*

stellātus, -a, -um, adj., *star-spangled.*

sternō, -ere, strāvī, strātus, *spread out, stretch out, strew.*

stilus, -ī, m., *stilus,* a writing implement, used in writing on wax.

stō, -āre, stetī, stātūrus, *stand.*

stola, -ae, f., *robe, stola* (outer garment of Roman women).

strepitus, -ūs, m., *noise, uproar;* of geese, *cackling.*

strīdor, -ōris, m., *squeaking.*

studeō, -ēre, studuī, —, *be keen (to), be eager (to), desire.*

studiōsus, -a, -um, adj., *full of zeal, eager, zealous.*

studium, -ī, n., *zeal; pursuit.*

stupēscō, -ere, stupuī, —, *become bewildered;* in perf., *be amazed.*

sub, prep., with acc. after verbs of motion, *close under, under, close to;* with words denoting time, *towards, about;* with abl. to denote place at which, *at the foot of, under, close to.*

subdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead under; draw up, beach* (of boats).

subiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *throw under, set* or *place under.*

subitō, adv., *suddenly.*

sublātus: see **tollō.**

submergō, -ere, -mersī, -mersus, *plunge under water, drown, overwhelm.*

submittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send secretly; subject, surrender.*

subruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutus, *undermine.*

subsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *follow close upon.*

subsidium, -ī, n., *aid, support;* in pl., *reinforcements.*

succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *go toward, approach; succeed* (used with dat.).

Suēbī, -ōrum, m., *Swabians.*

Suessiōnēs, -um, m., *Suessiones.*

suī (gen.), reflex. pron., *of himself, herself, itself, themselves.*

suī, pl., *his (their) own friends (followers).* See **suus.**

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be.*

summus (sup. of **superus**), adj., *greatest, great; highest, highest part of, top of;* **summus mōns,** *the top of the mountain.*

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *take, put on, assume.*

super, prep., with acc., *over, above.*

Superbus, -ī, m., *Superbus, "The Proud."*

superī, -ōrum, m., *inhabitants of the upper world.*

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *surpass, conquer, overcome, excel.*

supersedeō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessūrus (sit over above, without heeding), *refrain (from).*

supersum, -esse, -fuī, *be left over, survive* (used with dat.).

superus, -a, -um (comp., **superior**; sup., **suprēmus** or **summus**), adj., *high, above.*

suppetō, -ere, -īvī, -ītūrus, *be at hand.*

supplicium, -ī, n., *punishment* (used with **dare** and **sūmere** as **poena** is).

supportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *carry up, carry.*

suprā, adv., *above.*

suprēmus, -a, -um (sup. of **superus**), adj., *highest.*

suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *take up, undertake, assume.*

suspīciō, -ōnis, f., *suspicion.*

sustentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *uphold, support; withstand an attack.*

sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, *hold up, uphold, sustain; resist, withstand, sustain, check.*

suus, -a, -um, poss. pron. and adj., *his, her, their, its (own:* not used in the nom. case); in pl., **suī, -ōrum,** pl. m., *his (their) own friends (followers).*

Syrācūsae, -ārum, f., *Syracuse.*

T

T. = **Titus,** *Titus,* proper name.

taberna, -ae, f., *shop, booth.*

tabernāculum, -ī, n., *tent.*

tablīnum, -ī, n., *tablinum* (apartment of a Roman house where, perhaps, the family records were kept).

tabula, -ae, f., *tablet, slate; document.*

tacitus, -a, -um, adj., *not speaking, silent.*

tālāria, -ium, n. pl., *winged sandals.*

tālis, -e, adj., *of such a kind, such.*

tam, adv. of degree, *so* (used with adjectives and adverbs).
tamen, conj., *nevertheless, still, however.*
tamquam (**tanquam**), adv., *as, as if, as it were.*
Tanaquil, -quīlis, f., *Tanaquil.*
tandem, adv., *at length, at last.*
tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctus, *touch.*
tantum, adv., *only.*
tantus, -a, -um, adj., *so great, so big, so fine.*
tardē, adv., *slowly.*
tardus, -a, -um, adj., *slow, late.*
Tarpeia, -ae, f., *Tarpeia.*
Tarquinius, -ī, m., *Tarquinius, Tarquin.*
tēctum, -ī, n., *roof.*
tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctus, *cover, protect.*
tēlum, -ī, n., *missile, dart; weapon.*
tempestās, -tātis, f., *storm, bad weather.*
templum, -ī, n., *temple.*
temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *try, test, attempt.*
tempus, -oris, n., *time.*
tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentus, *stretch, strain; stretch out, extend.*
tenebrae, -ārum, f., *darkness.*
teneō, -ēre, -uī, —, *hold, keep, possess; maintain;* **lacrimās tenēre,** *hold back (restrain) one's tears;* **memoriā tenēre,** *hold by (in) memory, recall.*
tentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *attempt.*
tergum, -ī, n., *back;* **ā tergō,** *in the rear, (from) behind.*
terra, -ae, f., *earth, land, country.*
terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *frighten.*
terribilis, -e, adj., *fear-inspiring, terrible, frightful.*
terror, -ōris, m., *fright, terror.*
tertium, adv., *a third time.*
tertius, -a, -um, num. adj., *third;* **tertius decimus,** *thirteenth.*
testūdō, -inis, f., *testudo* (the word, which properly = *tortoise, tortoise-shell,* refers to the interlocking of shields over the heads of soldiers when they were attacking a wall).
theātrum, -ī, n., *theater.*
Tiberis, -is, acc., **-im,** abl., **-ī,** m., *the Tiber* (river).
Tiberius, -ī, m., *Tiberius.*
timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *fear, be afraid of.*
timidē, adv., *fearfully, timidly.*
timidus, -a, -um, adj., *fearful, cowardly.*
timor, -ōris, m., *fear, dread.*
Titurius, -ī, m., *Quintus Titurius Sabinus.*
toga, -ae, f., *toga.*
togātus, -a, -um, adj., *wearing a toga.*
tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus, *lift up, raise, remove, pick up;* **ancorās tollere,** *to weigh anchor.*
tormentum, -ī, n., *engine of war.*
Torquātus, -ī, m., *Torquatus, "The Man with the Necklace."*
tortus, -a, -um, adj., *twisted.*
tot, adj., indecl., *so many.*
totidem, adj., indecl., *just as many.*
tōtus, -a, -um, adj., gen. **tōtīus,** *whole.*
tractō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *draw, drag, handle, touch, feel.*
trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *give up, hand over, surrender; intrust; impart, hand down, teach.*

trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead across.*

trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractus, *draw, drag.*

trāiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *throw across, carry across, transport; pierce;* with acc. of place, *cross.*

trānō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *swim across.*

tranquillitās, -ātis, f., *tranquillity.*

trāns, prep., with acc., *across, over.*

trānseō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itus, *go across, cross.*

trānsferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *bear across, carry across.*

trānsfīgō, -ere, -fīxī, -fīxus, *stab through, pierce.*

trānsfodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossus, *stab through, pierce through.*

trānsmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send across, send over.*

trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *carry across, carry over.*

trānscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, *write across, i.e.* transfer from one written page or list to another, *transcribe.*

trānsversus, -a, -um, adj., *crosswise, oblique.*

trecentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., *three hundred.*

tredecim, num. adj., indecl., *thirteen.*

tremor, -ōris, m., *trembling, tremor.*

trēs, tria, num. adj., *three.*

tribūtum, -ī, n., *tax, tribute.*

tribuō, -uere, -uī, tribūtus, *distribute, assign, grant.*

trīcēsimus, -a, -um, num. adj., *thirtieth;* **trīcēsimus septimus,** *thirty-seventh.*

trīclīnium, -ī, n., *dining couch* (for three persons), *dining room.*

trīduum, -ī, n., *period of three days, three days.*

trīgintā, num. adj., indecl., *thirty.*

triumphō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *triumph.*

triumphus, -ī, m., *triumphal procession, triumph.*

Trōia, -ae, f., *Troy.*

Trōiānus, -a, -um, adj., *of Troy, Trojan.*

tū, tuī, pers. pron., *you;* pl., **vōs.**

tuba, -ae, f., *trumpet.*

tuī (gen.), reflex. pron., *of yourself;* see **tū.**

Tullia, -ae, f., *Tullia.*

Tullius, -ī, m., *Tullius.*

Tullus, -ī, m., *Tullus.*

tum, adv., *then, thereupon.*

tumultus, -ūs, m., *disturbance, tumult.*

tumulus, -ī, m., *heap, mound.*

tunc, adv., *at that time, then.*

turba, -ae, f., *crowd; uproar, commotion.*

turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *disturb.*

turris, -is, f., *tower.*

tūtor, -ōris, m., *guardian.*

tūtus, -a, -um, adj., *safe.*

tuus, -a, -um, poss. adj., *your, yours.*

tyrannus, -ī, m., *tyrant.*

U

ubi, interrog. adv., *where?;* rel. adv., *where, when.*

ubique, adv., *everywhere.*

Ulixēs, -is, m., *Ulysses.*

ūllus, -a, -um, adj., gen. **ūllīus,** *any at all* (used in *negative* expressions).

ulterior, -ius (sup., **ultimus**), adj., *farther, remoter;* **in ulteriōre Galliā,** *in farther Gaul.*

ultimus, -a, -um, adj., *last, remotest; extreme.*

ultrā, prep., with acc., *beyond, on the other side.*

umerus, -ī, m., *shoulder.*

ūnā, adv., *along with.*

unde, adv., *whence?*

ūndecim, num. adj., indecl., *eleven.*

ūndecimus, -a, -um, num. adj., *eleventh.*

ūndēvīcēsimus, -a, -um, num. adj., *nineteenth.*

ūndēvīgintī, num. adj., indecl., *nineteen.*

undique, adv., *from all sides, from every side; on all sides, everywhere.*

ungō, -ere, ūnxī, ūnctus, *anoint.*

unguentum, -ī, n., *ointment.*

ūniō, -īre, -iī, -ītus, *unite.*

ūniversī, -ōrum, m., *all together.*

ūnus, -a, -um, adj., gen. **ūnīus,** *one;* pl., *only, alone;* **ūnus et vīgintī,** *twenty-one.*

urbānus, -a, -um, *pertaining to* (*a*) *city, urban.*

urbs, urbis, f., *city.*

ūsus, -ūs, m., *use; profit.*

ut, utī, conj., *in order that, that* (followed by subjunctive clause of purpose); *so that* (followed by subjunctive clause of result); *just as, as* (followed by indicative).

ūter, ūtris, m., *skin,* used as a bag or bottle.

uter, utra, utrum, pron. and adj., gen. **utrīus,** rel. and interrog., *which* (of two); *either.*

uterque, -traque, -trumque, pron. and adj., *each* (of two).

utī: see **ut.**

ūtilis, -e (comp., **-ior;** sup., **-issimus**), adj., *usable; useful.*

ūtilitās, -ātis, f., *usefulness, utility.*

utinam, adv., *would that! O that!*

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *use* (used with abl.).

utrimque, adv., *on each side.*

utrum, conj., not translated in direct questions; in indirect questions, *whether.*

ūva, -ae, f., *grape.*

uxor, -ōris, f., *wife.*

V

vacuus, -a, -um, adj., *empty;* **vacuus ab,** *empty of, destitute of.*

vadum, -ī, n., *shoal, ford.*

vāgītus, -ūs, m., *crying* (of babies).

vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *wander.*

valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *be powerful, be strong, have power;* **plūrimum valēre,** *have most power, be very powerful;* **valē,** as greeting, *welcome!*

validus, -a, -um, adj., *powerful, strong.*

vallis, -is, m., *valley, vale.*

vāllum, -ī, n., *rampart.*

valor, -ōris, m., *value.*

vānus, -a, -um, *vain, useless.*

vās, vāsis, pl., **vāsa, -ōrum,** n., *dish, vessel.*

vāstātiō, -ōnis, f., *devastation.*

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *lay waste.*

vātēs, -is, m., *seer, prophet, bard.*
vehementer, adv., *violently, extremely, exceedingly, vigorously.*
vehō, -ere, vexī, vectus, *carry;* in pass., usually with an instr. abl., **nāvī, currū,** *sail, ride.*
vel, conj., *if you wish; or;* **vel . . . vel,** *either . . . or.*
Veliocassēs, -ium, m., *the Veliocasses.*
vēlōciter (comp., **vēlōcius**; sup., **vēlōcissimē**), adv., *swiftly.*
vēlōx, adj., gen. **vēlōciş,** *swift, speedy.*
vēlum, -ī, n., *curtain, awning.*
venēnum, -ī, n., *poison.*
venerātiō, -ōnis, f., *worship.*
Venetī, -ōrum, m., *the Veneti,* a maritime people of Gaul.
veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventūrus, *come.*
venter, -tris, m., *belly.*
ventus, -ī, m., *wind.*
Venus, Veneris, f., *Venus,* goddess of love.
verbum, -ī, n., *word;* in pl., *speech.*
vereor, -ērī, -itus sum, *fear, dread.*
vērō, adv., *in truth, indeed; but, however.*
Vēritās, -ātis, f., *Truth.*
vertō, -ere, vertī, versus, *turn.*
vērus, -a, -um, adj., *true.*
vēscor, vēscī, *feed* (*on*), *eat* (used with abl.).
vesper, -erī, m., *evening.*
vespertīnus, -a, -um, adj., (*pertaining to*) *evening.*
Vesta, -ae, f., *Vesta.*
Vestālis, -e, adj., *Vestal.*
vester, -tra, -trum, poss. adj., *your, yours.*
vēstibulum, -ī, n., *vestibule, entrance.*
vēstīgium, -ī, n., *trace, vestige; trail, footprints.*
vestrī, -ōrum, m. pl., *your friends* (*followers*).
Vesuvius, -ī, m., *Vesuvius,* the famous volcano near Naples.
veterānus, -a, -um, *old, veteran.*
vetō, -āre, vetuī, vetitus, *forbid.*
vetus, gen. **veteris,** adj., *old.*
vexillum, -ī, n., *banner.*
via, -ae, f., *road, way, journey;* **Via Appia:** see under **Appia Via;** **Via Sacra:** see under **sacer.**
vice, f. (abl. of **vicis,** *change*), *in turn; in place* (*of*).
vīcēsimus, -a, -um, num. adj., *twentieth.*
vīcīnus, -a, -um, adj., *near to, neighboring* (used with dat.).
victor, -ōris, m., *victor, conqueror.*
victōria, -ae, f., *victory.*
vīcus, -ī, m., *village.*
videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *see.*
videor, -ērī, vīsus sum, *seem, appear.*
vigilia, -ae, f., *watch* (*i.e.*, a quarter of the night).
vigilis, -is, m., *watchman.*
vigilō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *keep awake, watch.*
vīgintī, num. adj., indecl., *twenty.*
vīgintī ūnus, num. adj., *twenty-one.*
vigor, -ōris, m., *force, vigor.*
vīlla, -ae, f., *farmhouse; country-house.*
vīmen, -inis, n., *pliant twig, osier.*
vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus, *conquer, defeat.*

vinculum, -ī, n., *chain;* pl., *chains, prison;* **in vincula conicere,** *to put in bonds, put in prison.*

vīndēmia, -ae, f., *vintage.*

vīnea, -ae, f., *vinea* (shed used to shelter soldiers attacking a town); **vīneās agere,** *to bring the vineae into action.*

vīnum, -ī, n., *wine.*

violō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *dishonor, violate, break.*

vir, -ī, m., *man; hero.*

virgō, -inis, f., *virgin, maiden.*

Virgō Vestālis, Virginis Vestālis, f., *Vestal Virgin.*

Viromanduī, -ōrum, m., *the Viromandui.*

virtūs, -tūtis, f., *manliness, virtue, valor, courage, bravery.*

vīs, vīs, f., *force, violence;* pl., **vīrēs, vīrium,** etc., *strength, might;* **vim facere,** *employ violence (force).*

vīta, -ae, f., *life.*

vitiātus, -a, -um, adj., *spoiled, tainted.*

vitiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *spoil, taint.*

vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *avoid, shun.*

vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctus, *be alive, live.*

vīvus, -a, -um, adj., *alive, living.*

vix, adv., *scarcely, hardly.*

vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call.*

Volcānus, -ī, m., *Vulcan,* the god of fire.

volitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *fly to and fro, flutter; float, flow.*

volō, velle, voluī, —, *be willing, wish, desire.*

volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *fly.*

Volscī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Volscians,* a people in Italy.

voluptās, -tātis, f., *delight, pleasure.*

Volusēnus, -ī, m., *Volusenus.*

vōs: see **tū.**

vōtum, -ī, n., *vow, wish.*

vōx, vōcis, f., *voice;* pl., *words.*

vulgus, -ī, n., *(the) crowd, mob.*

vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *wound.*

vulnus, -eris, n., *wound.*

vultur, -uris, m., *vulture.*

vultus, -ūs, m., *look* on the face, *expression; face, countenance.*

Z

Zephyrus, -ī, m., *Zephyrus, west wind.*

ENGLISH–LATIN VOCABULARY

A

abide, *permaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsūrus.*
ability, *facultās, -tātis,* f.; *virtūs, -tūtis,* f.
able, be able, *possum, posse, potuī,* —.
about, *dē,* with abl.; *ad, circum,* with acc.
about (to begin, etc.): use fut. part.
about, with numbers, *circiter,* adv.
absent, be, *absum, -esse, āfui,* —.
abundance, *cōpia, -ae,* f.
accept, *accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.*
accomplish, *cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus; efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.*
account, on account of, *ob* or *propter,* with acc.
accustomed, become, *cōnsuēscō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētūrus.*
acquire, *potior, potīrī, potītus sum; obtineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus.*
across, *trāns,* with acc.; *in,* with abl. (used of a bridge over a river).
act, *agō, agere, ēgī, āctus.*
active, *ācer, ācris, ācre.*
advance, *prōgredior, -ī, -gressus sum;* **advance to the attack,** *signa īnferre.*
advice, *cōnsilium, -ī,* n.
advise, *moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.*
Aeduan, *Aeduus, -ī,* m.
affair, *rēs, reī,* f.
afraid, *timidus, -a, -um.*
after, adv., *post.*
after, prep., *post,* with acc.
afterwards, *posteā.*
again, *rūrsus.*
against, *in, contrā,* with acc.
age, *aetās, -ātis,* f.
ago, *ante.*
agree, *cōnsentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsūrus.*
aid, *auxilium, auxilī,* n.; *subsidium, subsidī,* n.: **bring (give) aid,** *auxilium ferre* or *mittere;* **with the aid of,** *auxiliō, per auxilium.*
alarm, verb, *commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus; permoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus; perterreō, -ēre, -terruī, -territus.*
alarm, noun, *strepitus, -ūs,* m.
alive, *vīvus, -a, -um.*
all, *omnis, -e* (in pl.).
allow, *patior, patī, passus sum* (used with acc. and inf.); *permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.*
ally, *socius, -ī,* m.
almost, *prope, paene; ferē* (with numbers).
alone, *sōlus, -a, -um.*
already, *iam.*
also, (with verbs), *etiam,* with nouns and pronouns, *quoque* (postpositive).
although, *cum* (with subjunctive), *quamquam* (with indicative).
always, *semper.*
am, *sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.*

ambassador, *lēgātus, -ī,* m.
Ambiani, *Ambiānī, -ōrum,* m.
among, *inter,* with acc.
Amulius, *Amūlius, -ī,* m.
and, *et, ac, atque, -que.*
Androclus, *Androclus, -ī,* m.
anew, *rūrsus.*
animal, *animal, -ālis,* n.
announce, *nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; ēnūntiō; renūntiō.*
another, *alius, alia, aliud.*
answer, *respondeō, -ēre, -dī, respōnsus.*
any, *ūllus, -a, -um* (used in negative expressions).
Appian Way, *Via Appia, Viae Appiae,* f.
apple, *pōmum, -ī,* n.
approach, noun, *adventus, -ūs,* m.
approach, verb, *appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus* (used with dat., or with *ad* and acc.); *adeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itus.*
aqueduct, *aquaeductus, -ūs,* m.
Aquitania, *Aquītānia, -ae,* f.
Ariovistus, *Ariovistus, -ī,* m.
arm, noun, *manus, -ūs,* f.
arm, verb, *armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
arms, *arma, -ōrum,* n.
army, *exercitus, -ūs,* m.
around, *circum,* with acc.
arrange, *ōrdinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus;* **arrange line of battle,** *aciem īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus.*
arrival, *adventus, -ūs,* m.
arrive, *adveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus; perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus.*
arrow, *sagitta, -ae,* f.
as, . . . *ut.*
as possible, *quam,* with superlative adjective or adverb.
as soon as, *cum prīmum* (used with indicative).
ascertain, *cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus; reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus; comperiō, -īre, comperī, compertus.*
Asia, *Asia, -ae,* f.
ask, *petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus; quaerō, -ere, -sīvī, -sītus; ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus* (used with acc. and *ā* or *ab* with abl.).
assemble, *conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus.*
assembly, *conventus, -ūs,* m.
assert, *cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
assign, *tribuō, -ere, tribuī, tribūtus.*
assistance, *auxilium, -ī,* n.; **send to the assistance of,** *submittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus,* or *auxiliō . . . mittere* (used with dat. of person).
associate, *comes, -itis,* m. and f.
assume, *sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus.*
astrologer, *astrologus, -ī,* m.
at, abl. of time or place, locative.
at last, *tandem, ad extrēmum.*
at least, *certē,* adv.
attack, noun, *impetus, -ūs,* m.
attack, verb, *oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; adgredior, -ī, -gressus sum; impetum faciō in,* with acc.; *signa īnferre,* with dat.
attempt, *cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum; temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus.*
authority, *auctōritās, -tātis,* f.
auxiliary forces, auxiliary troops, *auxilia, -ōrum,* n.; *subsidia, -ōrum,* n.
avoid, *vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
await, *exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*

B

bad, *malus, -a, -um.*
baggage, heavy, *impedīmenta, -ōrum,* n. pl.
band, *manus, -ūs,* f.
bank, *rīpa, -ae,* f.
barbarian, *barbarus, -ī,* m.
battle, *proelium, proelī,* n.; *pugna, -ae,* f.; **join battle,** *proelium committō.*
battle, line of, *aciēs, -ēī,* f.
be, *sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.*
be able, *possum, posse, potuī.*
be absent, *absum, -esse, āfuī,* —.
bear, *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.*
beautiful, *pulcher, -chra, -chrum.*
because, *quod, nam.*
because of (= **on account of**), *ob* or *propter* with acc.
become, *fīō, fierī, factus sum.*
before, adv., *anteā.*
before, prep., *ante,* with acc.; *prae,* with abl.; (= **in the presence of**), *apud,* with acc.
begin, *coepī, coepisse; incipiō, -ere* (the perf. system is made from *coepī*); *ineō, -īre, -iī, -itus;* **begin battle,** *proelium committō.*
beginning, *initium, initī,* n.
behalf, on behalf of, *prō,* with abl.
behind, *post,* with acc.
behind, leave, *relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictus.*
behold, *cōnspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus.*
Belgians, *Belgae, -ārum,* m.
believe, *crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditūrus* (used with dat.).
Bellovaci, *Bellovacī, -ōrum,* m.
be near, *adsum, -esse, adfuī,* —.
be present, *praesum, -esse, -fuī,* —.
besides, *praeterquam.*
besiege, *oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus.*
best, *optimus, -a, -um.*
better (**it is**), *praestat.*
better, adj., *melior, -ius.*
better, adv., *melius.*
between, *inter,* with acc.
black, *niger, -gra, -grum.*
blame, *culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
body, *corpus, -oris,* n.
boldly, *audācter.*
book, *liber, librī,* m.
born, be born, *nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum.*
both . . . and, *et . . . et.*
bound (in geographical expressions), *contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus.*
boundary, *regiō, -ōnis,* f.; *fīnis, -is,* m.
boy, *puer, -ī,* m.
brave, *fortis, -e.*
bravely, *fortiter.*
bravery, *virtūs, -tūtis,* f.
break (**camp**), *castra moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus.*
bridge, *pōns, pontis,* m.
brief, *brevis, -e.*
bring, *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus; afferō, -ferre, attulī, allātus;* **bring aid,** *auxilium ferre.*
bring back, *redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus; referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātus.*
bring in or **upon,** *īnferō, -ferre, intulī, illātus.*
bring out, *efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātus.*
bring to, *afferō, -ferre, attulī, allātus.*

bring together, *cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, collātus.*
bring (offensive) war on, *bellum īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, illātus.*
broad, *lātus, -a, -um.*
brother, *frāter, -tris,* m.
Brutus, *Brūtus, -ī,* m.
build, *aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
building, *aedificium, aedificī,* n.
burn, *incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus.*
business, *negōtium, -ī,* n.
but, *sed;* **but in truth,** *vērō.*
buy, *comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus.*
by, *ā, ab,* with abl.

C

Caesar, *Caesar, -aris,* m.
call, *vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
call by name, *appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
call forth or **from,** *ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
call together, *convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
camp, *castra, -ōrum,* n.; **break camp,** *castra moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus;* **pitch camp,** *castra pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus.*
can, *possum, posse, potuī,* —.
can not, *nōn possum, posse, potuī,* —.
captive, *captīvus, -ī,* m.
capture, (a person or a place), *capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus;* (a place), *expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
care, *dīligentia, -ae,* f.
careful, *dīligēns, -entis.*
carefully, *dīligenter.*
carry, *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus; portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus.*
carry away, *auferō, -ferre, abstulī, ablātus; efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātus.*
carry on war, *bellum gerō.*
carry out, *efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātus.*
carry to, *afferō, -ferre, attulī, allātus.*
carry up, *supportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
cart, *carrus, -ī,* m.
Cassius, *Cassius, -ī,* m.
Catiline, *Catilīna, -ae,* m.
Cato, *Catō, -ōnis,* m.
cause, *causa, -ae,* f.
cavalry, pl. of *eques, -itis,* m.; *equitātus, -ūs,* m.
cease, *dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī,* — (used with inf.).
censure, *culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
centurion, *centuriō, -ōnis,* m.
certain, adj., in sense of **definite, fixed,** *certus, -a, -um;* **make more certain** (= **inform**), *certiōrem faciō, facere, fēcī, factus.*
certain, adj., *quīdam, quaedam, quoddam* (used as in " A certain lawyer . . . tempted him ").
certain one, pron., *quīdam, quaedam, quiddam.*
certainly (**at least**), *quidem.*
chance, *facultās, ātis,* f.
character, pl. of *mōs, mōris,* m.
Charles, *Carolus, -ī,* m.
check (**an attack**), *sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus; reprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus; opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus.*
cheerful, *alacer, -cris, -cre.*
chide, *incūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
chief, *prīnceps, -cipis,* m.
children, *līberī, -ōrum,* m.

choose, *dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus.*
Cicero, *Cicerō, -ōnis,* m.
Cincinnatus, *Cincinnātus, -ī,* m.
citizen, *cīvis, -is,* m. and f.
citizenship, *cīvitās, -tātis,* f.
city, *urbs, urbis,* f.
Cloelia, *Cloelia, -ae,* f.
close, *claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus.*
cohort, *cohors, cohortis,* f.
collect, *cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, collātus; cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus; colligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus.*
column, marching, *agmen, agminis,* n.
come, *veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventūrus.*
come together, *conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus.*
command, noun, *imperium, imperī,* n.; (= order), *imperātum, -ī,* n.
command, verb, *imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus* (used with dat. of person, followed by *ut* or *nē* with the subjunctive); *iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus* (used with acc. of person and infin.).
command, be in, *praesum, -esse, -fuī,* —.
command, have, *praesum, -esse, -fuī,* —.
command of (be in), *praesum, -esse, -fuī,* —.
command, place in, *praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus; praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.*
commander-in-chief, *imperātor, -ōris,* m.
commence (battle), *proelium committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.*
common, *commūnis, -e.*
companion, *comes, -itis,* m. and f.; *socius, -ī,* m.
compel, *cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus; compellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus.*
conceal, *cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
concerning, *dē,* with abl.
condition (= terms, *e.g.*, of peace), *condiciō, -ōnis,* f.
confidence, *fidēs, -eī,* f.
conquer, *superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus.*
conquering, *victor, -ōris,* m., translated in appos. as adj., *e.g., victōrēs Rōmānī,* the conquering Romans.
conqueror, *victor, -ōris,* m.
consider, *cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.*
construct, *īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus; aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus;* (**wall, ditch**), *perdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.*
consul, *cōnsul, -ulis,* m.
consult, *cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, cōnsultus* (with acc.).
contend, *contendō, -ere, -dī, -tentūrus.*
contest, *certāmen, -inis,* n.
control, *imperium, imperī,* n.
Coriolanus, *Coriolānus, -ī,* m.
counsel, take counsel for, *cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, cōnsultūrus* (with dat.).
country, *patria, -ae,* f.; *fīnēs, -ium,* m.
courage, *virtūs, -ūtis,* f.; *animus, -ī,* m. (in pl.).
cover, *compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus.*
Crassus, *Crassus, -ī,* m.
cross, *trānseō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itus.*
cry (cry out), *clāmo, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus.*
Curtius, *Curtius, -ī,* m.

custom, *mōs, mōris,* m.; *cōnsuētūdō, -inis,* f.

D

daily, adj., *cotīdiānus, -a, -um.*
daily, adv., *cotīdiē.*
danger, *perīculum, -ī,* n.
dare, *audeō, -ēre, ausus sum.*
daughter, *fīlia, -ae,* f.
day, *diēs, diēī,* m. and f.; **late in the day,** *multō diē;* **on the following day,** *posterō (proximō) diē.*
daybreak, at, *prīmā lūce.*
dear, *cārus, -a, -um.*
death, *mors, mortis,* f.
deceive, *fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsus.*
decide, *dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus; cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus; statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus.*
Decius, *Decius, -ī,* m.
declare, *cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; prōnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
deed, *factum, -ī,* n.
deep, *altus, -a, -um.*
defeat, *superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus.*
defend, *dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus.*
defender, *dēfēnsōr, -ōris,* m.
defense, in defense of, *prō,* with abl.
delay, noun, *mora, -ae,* f.
delay, verb, *moror, -ārī, -ātus sum.*
deliver (a speech), *(ōrātiōnem) habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.*
demand, *postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus* (used with acc. and *ā* or *ab* with abl.).
deny, *negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
depart, *abeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itūrus; discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus; proficīscor, -cī, profectus sum.*
departure, *profectiō, -ōnis,* f.
deprive, *nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
depth, *altitūdō, -inis,* f.
desert, *dēserō, -ere, -uī, -sertus; dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī,* — (used with *ab* and abl.); *relinquō, -ere, relīquī, relictus.*
desire, noun, *amor, -ōris,* m.; *cupiditās, -ātis,* f.
desire, verb, *cupiō, -ere, cupīvī, cupītus; studeō, -ēre, studuī,* —.
desirous, *cupidus, -a, -um.*
despatch, *dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.*
destroy, *dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus.*
detain, *retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.*
determine, *cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus; dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus; statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus.*
devastate, *populor, -ārī, -ātus sum.*
differ, *differō, -ferre, distulī, dīlātus.*
difficult, *difficilis, -e.*
difficulty, *difficultās, -tātis,* f.; **with difficulty,** *aegrē,* adv.
dig (ditch), *(fossam) perdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.*
diligence, *dīligentia, -ae,* f.
diligently, *dīligenter.*
direction, *pars, partis,* f.
disappoint, *fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsus.*
disaster, *calamitās, -tātis,* f.
discipline, *disciplīna, -ae,* f.
discover, *inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus; reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus.*
discreet, *prūdēns, -dentis; sapiēns, -entis.*

dismiss, *dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.*
dispatch, *dīmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus.*
distinguished, *ēgregius, -a, -um; singulāris, -e.*
distribute, *tribuō, -ere, -uī, tribūtus; distribuō, -ere, -uī, -tribūtus.*
ditch, *fossa, -ae,* f.
divide, *dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus; distribuō, -ere, -uī, -tribūtus.*
do, *agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus; faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.*
doctor, *medicus, -ī,* m.
dog, *canis, -is,* m. and f.
donkey, *asinus, -ī,* m.
down from, *dē,* with abl.
draw, *trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractus.*
draw up, *īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus.*
dread, noun, *timor, -ōris,* m.
dread, verb, *vereor, -ērī, veritus sum; timeō, -ēre, -uī, —.*
drive, *agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus; pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus.*
drive back, *repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsus.*
drive out, *expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus; pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus.*
duty, *officium, -ī,* n.; *virtūs, -ūtis,* f.
dwell, *incolō, -ere, -uī, —;* **dwell in,** *incolō* (used with acc.).

E

each, *quisque, quidque.*
each of two, *uterque.*
eager, *cupidus, -a, -um; alacer, -cris, -cre.*
eager, be, *cupiō, -ere, cupīvī, cupītus; studeō, -ēre, studuī, —.*
early, *prīmus, -a, -um* (with noun); **at early dawn,** *prīmā lūce.*
earth, *terra, -ae,* f.
easy, *facilis, -e.*
easily, *facile.*
eight, *octō.*
eighteen, *octōdecim.*
eighth, *octāvus.*
either . . . or, *vel . . . vel* (denotes a slight difference), *aut . . . aut* (denotes a very great difference).
elephant, *elephantus, -ī,* m.
eleven, *ūndecim.*
embassy, *lēgātiō, -ōnis,* f.
encamp, *cōnsīdō, -ere, -sēdī, —; castra pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus.*
encourage, *cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum; animōs augeō* or *cōnfirmō.*
end, noun, *fīnis, -is,* m.
end, verb, *fīniō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītus.*
enemy (**of one's country**), *hostis, -is,* m., **the enemy,** *hostis,* in pl.; **personal,** *inimīcus, -ī,* m.
engage (**in battle**), *proelium committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.*
enjoy, *fruor, fruī, frūctus sum* (used with abl.).
enlist, *cōnscrībō, -ere, -psī, -ptus.*
Ennius, *Ennius, -ī,* m.
enough, *satis,* indecl.
enroll, *cōnscrībō, -ere, -psī, -ptus.*
enter, *ineō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itus; intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
entrust, *committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.*
epistle, *epistula, -ae,* f.; *litterae, -ārum,* f. pl.
equal, *pār, paris; aequus, -a, -um.*
erect (**a bridge**), *exstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus.*
escape, *effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —.*

establish (peace), (*pācem*) *cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
esteem, *honor, -ōris,* m.; **hold in esteem,** *in honōre habeō.*
even, *etiam.*
evening, *vesper, -ī,* m.
every, *omnis, -e;* **every one,** *quisque, quidque.*
every day, *cotīdiē,* adv.
evident (it is), *cōnstat.*
evil, *malus, -a, -um.*
example, *exemplum, -ī,* n.
excel, *antecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus; superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stitūrus.*
excellent, *optimus, -a, -um.*
exchange, *inter sē dare* (see **dō**).
explain, *expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus.*
exposed, *apertus, -a, -um.*
extend, *pateō, -ēre, -uī,* —; *pertineō, -ēre, -uī,* —.
extraordinary, *ēgregius, -a, -um; singulāris, -e.*
eye, *oculus, -ī,* m.

F

Fabricius, *Fabricius, -ī,* m.
face to face, *adversus, -a, -um.*
facing, *adversus, -a, -um.*
fail, *dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectūrus* (used with *ā* or *ab* and abl.); *dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.*
faith, *fidēs, -eī,* f.
faithful, *fīdus, -a, -um; fidēlis, -e.*
fall (of city), *occāsus, -ūs,* m.
fame, *fāma, -ae,* f.
famous, *nōbilis, -e.*
far, *longē.*
farmer, *agricola, -ae,* m.
farmhouse, *vīlla, -ae,* f.
far off, *longinquus, -a, -um.*
farther, *ulterior, -ius.*
father, *pater, -tris,* m.
favor, *beneficium, -ī,* n.
fear, noun, *timor, -ōris,* m.; *metus, -ūs,* m.
fear, verb, *timeō, -ēre, -uī,* —; *vereor, -ērī, -itus sum.*
fearful, *timidus, -a, -um.*
feel, *sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus; intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus.*
few, *paucī, -ae, -a;* **very few,** *perpaucī, -ae, -a.*
field, *ager, agrī,* m.
fiercely, *ācriter.*
fifteen, *quīndecim.*
fifth, *quīntus, -a, -um.*
fight, *pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus.*
fill, *compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus.*
finally, *tandem,* adv.; *ad extrēmum.*
find, *inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus.*
find out, *comperiō, -īre, comperī, compertus; reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus; cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus.*
finger, *digitus, -ī,* m.
finish, *fīniō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītus; perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.*
fire, *ignis, -is,* m.
first, first part of, *prīmus, -a, -um;* **at first** (in a contrast), *prīmō,* (in a series), *prīmum;* **for the first time,** *prīmum.*
fit, *idōneus, -a, -um.*
five, *quīnque.*
flee, *fugiō, -ere, fūgī,* —; *effugiō, -ere, -fūgī,* —.
fleet, *classis, -is,* f.
flight, *fuga, -ae,* f.
follow, *sequor, sequī, secūtus sum.*
following, *posterus, -a, -um; proximus, -a, -um.*

foot, at foot of, *sub*, with abl.
foot, *pēs, pedis*, m.
footrace, *certāmen pedum.*
foot-soldier, *pedes, -itis*, m.
for (= **in behalf of, in defense of**), *prō*, with abl.; = **on account of,** *ob* or *propter* with acc.; (= **because**), *quod, nam.*
force, *vīs, vīs*, f.
forces, *cōpiae, -ārum*, f.; *mīlitēs, -tum*, m.
ford, *vadum, -ī*, n.
foreign, *barbarus, -a, -um.*
forest, *silva, -ae*, f.
for indeed, *enim.*
form (**a plan**), (*cōnsilium*) *capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus.*
former, *prior, -ius.*
fort, *castellum, -ī*, n.
fortifications, *moenia, -ium*, n.; *mūnītiō, -ōnis*, f.
fortify, *mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.*
fortune, *fortūna, -ae*, f.
forum, Forum, *forum, -ī, Forum, -ī*, n.
four, *quattuor.*
fourteen, *quattuordecim.*
fourth, *quārtus, -a, -um.*
free, set free, verb, *līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
free, adj., *līber, -era, -erum.*
freedom, *lībertās, -tātis*, f.
frequent, *crēber, -bra, -brum.*
fresh, *recēns, -entis.*
friend, *amīcus, -ī*, m.
friendly, *amīcus, -a, -um.*
friendship, *amīcitia, -ae*, f.
frighten, *terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus;* **frighten thoroughly,** *perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.*
from, *ā, ab, dē, ē, ex*, with abl.
front, in front of, *prō*, with abl.
full, *plēnus, -a, -um;* **full of,** *plēnus*, with gen.
further, *amplius*, adv.

G

gain possession of, *potior, potīrī, potītus sum*, with abl.
Galba, *Galba, -ae*, m.
garrison, *praesidium, praesidī*, n.
gate (of city or a camp), *porta, -ae*, f.
gather, *colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus; cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus.*
Gaul, *Gallia, -ae*, f.
Gauls, *Gallī, -ōrum*, m.
general, *imperātor, -ōris*, m.
generally, *plērumque*, adv.
German, *Germānus, -ī*, m.
get possession of, *potior, -īrī, -ītus sum*, with abl.
gift, *dōnum, -ī*, n.
girl, *puella, -ae*, f.
give, *dō, dare, dedī, datus;* **give aid,** *auxilium ferre*, or *auxiliō* (dat.) *mittere* (with dat. of person); **give alarm,** *strepitum ēmittere.*
give back, *reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditus.*
give up, *dēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus; trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditus;* **give up hope,** *spem dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus; animōs dēmittō.*
gladly, *libenter.*
glory, *glōria, -ae*, f.; *honor, -ōris*, m.
go, *eō, īre, iī (īvī), itūrus.*
go across, *trānseō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itus.*
go away, *cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus.* See also **depart.**
go out, *excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus; exeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itūrus.*

go to, *adeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itus.*
god, *deus, -ī,* m.
goddess, *dea, -ae,* f.
good, *bonus, -a, -um.*
goose, *ānser, ānseris,* m. and f.
grain, *frūmentum, -ī,* n.; **grain growing in the fields,** *frūmenta,* pl.
great, *magnus, -a, -um;* **so great,** *tantus, -a, -um;* **how great,** *quantus, -a, -um.*
greatly, *magnopere.*
greatness, *magnitūdō, -dinis,* f.
great size, *magnitūdō, -dinis,* f.
Greece, *Graecia, -ae,* f.
Greek, *Graecus, -a, -um.*
guard, noun, *custōs, -ōdis,* m.; *praesidium, praesidī,* n.
guard, verb, *dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus; custodiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.*
guide, *dux, ducis,* m.

H

habit, *cōnsuētūdō, -inis,* f.
halfway, halfway up the hill (mountain), *in mediō colle (monte).*
halt, *cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī,* —.
hand, *manus, -ūs,* f.
hand over, *trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditus; dēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus.*
Hannibal, *Hannibal, -balis,* m.
happen, *fīō, fierī, factus sum.*
harm, noun, *iniūria, -ae,* f.; *maleficium, -ī,* n.
harm, verb, *noceō, -ēre, -uī,* —, with dat.
hasten, *properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus; contendō, -ere, -dī, -tentūrus.*
have, *habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.*
he, *is;* often not expressed.
head, *caput, -itis,* n.
head, verb (= **be at the head of**), *praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.*
hear, *audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.*
heavy, *gravis, -e.*
heavy baggage, *impedīmenta, -ōrum,* n.
height, *altitūdō, -inis,* f.
help, noun, *auxilium, auxilī,* n.
help, verb, *iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus; auxilium ferre; auxiliō mittere* (used with dat. of person).
Helvetians, *Helvētiī, -ōrum,* m.
hem in, *contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.*
her, *eius; suus, -a, -um* (reflexive).
here, *hīc.*
hesitate, *dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus* (used with inf.).
hero, *vir, virī,* m.
hide, *cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
hidden, *occultus, -a, -um.*
high, *altus, -a, -um; superus, -a, -um.*
hill, *collis, -is,* m.
himself, *suī* (reflexive); *ipse* (intensive).
hinder, *prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.*
hindrance, *impedīmentum, -ī,* n.
his, *eius; suus, -a, -um* (reflexive).
hither, adj., *citerior, -ius;* adv., *hūc.*
hold, *habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus; teneō, -ēre, -uī,* —.
hold back, *retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.*
hold in esteem, *in honōre habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.*
hold together, *contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.*
home, *domus, -ūs,* f.; **at home,** *domī;* **homeward,** *domum.*
home (= **homeland**), *patria, -ae,* f.

honor, *honor, -ōris,* m.
hope, *spēs, -eī,* f.
horn, *cornū, -ūs,* n.
horse, *equus, equī,* m.
horseman, *eques, -itis,* m.
hostage, *obses, -idis,* m. and f.
hour, *hōra, -ae,* f.
house, *domus, -ūs,* f.; *aedēs, -ium,* f. pl.
how, *quam, quōmodo.*
however, *autem,* adv.; *tamen,* adv.
how far, *quam longē.*
how great, *quantus, -a, -um.*
how long, *quam diū.*
how many, *quot.*
how much, *quantus, -a, -um.*
human being, *homō, -inis,* m. and f.
humble, *humilis, -e.*
hundred, *centum.*
hurl, *iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus.*
hurl forward, *prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus.*
hurl together, *coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus.*
hurry, *properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus; contendō, -ere, -dī, -tentūrus.*
hut, *casa, -ae,* f.

I

I, *ego, meī;* **I myself,** *ego ipse.*
if, *sī.*
if not, *nisi.*
ignorant, be ignorant of, *ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
immediately, *statim.*
immortal, *immortālis, -e.*
in, *in,* with abl.
incite, *impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus.*
increase, *augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus.*
incredible, *incrēdibilis, -e.*
in defense of, *prō,* with abl.
indeed, *enim, vērō.*
infantry, *peditēs, -itum,* m.
inferior, *īnferior, -ius.*
influence, noun, *auctōritās, -tātis,* f.
influence, verb, *addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus; indūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus; permoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus.*
inform, *certiōrem facere; ēdoceō, -ēre, -uī, -doctus;* **be informed,** *certior fīō, fierī, factus sum.*
in front of, *prō,* with abl.
inhabit, *incolō, -ere, -uī,* — (used with acc.).
injure, *noceō, -ēre, -uī,* — (used with dat.).
injury, *iniūria, -ae,* f.
injustice, *iniūstitia, -ae,* f.; *iniūria, -ae,* f.
inner, *interior, -ius.*
in order that, *ut,* with subjunctive; **in order that . . . not,** *nē,* with subjunctive.
instruct, *ēdoceō, -ēre, -uī, -doctus.*
interrupt, *intermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.*
into, *in,* with acc.
intrust, *committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus* (with acc. of thing and dat. of person).
invincible, *invictus, -a, -um.*
island, *īnsula, -ae,* f.
it, *is, ea, id;* often not expressed.
Italy, *Ītalia, -ae,* f.

J

javelin, *pīlum, -ī,* n.
join, *coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus;* **join battle,** *proelium committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.*
journey, noun, *iter, itineris,* n.
journey, verb, *iter facere.*

judge, *iūdex, -icis,* m.
Julia, *Iūlia, -ae,* f.
Jura, *Iūra, -ae,* m.
just, *aequus, -a, -um.*

K

keen, *ācer, ācris, ācre.*
keep away from, *prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.*
keep from, *prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.*
keep in, *contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.*
keeper, *custōs, -ōdis,* m.
kill, *interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus; occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus; necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
kind, noun, *genus, -eris,* n.
kind, kindly, adj., *bonus, -a, -um; aequus, -a, -um.*
king, *rēx, rēgis,* m.
kingdom, *rēgnum, -ī,* n.
know, *sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus; cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus* (in perf. system).
known, *nōtus, -a, -um.*

L

labor, noun, *labor, -ōris,* m.
labor, verb, *labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus.*
lack, noun, *inopia, -ae,* f.
lack, verb, *dēsum, dēesse, dēfuī,* —.
lacking, be, *dēsum, dēesse, dēfuī,* —.
land, *terra, -ae,* f.
language, *lingua, -ae,* f.
large, *magnus, -a, -um; amplus, -a, -um.*
last, *extrēmus, -a, -um.*
late, late in the day, *multō diē.*
later, adv., *posteā.*
law, *lēx, lēgis,* f.
lay waste, *vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; populor, -ārī, -ātus sum.*
lead, *dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus.*
lead across, *trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.*
lead back, *redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.*
leader, *dux, ducis,* m.
lead forth or **out,** *ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.*
lead forward, *prōdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.*
lead from, lead away from, *āvertō, -ere, āvertī, āversus.*
lead in, *indūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.*
lead on, *indūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.*
lead to, *addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.*
learn, *cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus; comperiō, -īre, comperī, compertus; reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus.*
least, at, *certē.*
leave, leave behind, *relinquō, -ere, relīquī, relictus.*
left, *sinister, -tra, -trum.*
legion, *legiō, -ōnis,* f.
length, *longitūdō, -inis,* f.
Lentulus, *Lentulus, -ī,* m.
less, adj., *minor, minus.*
less, adv., *minus.*
lest, *nē,* with subjunctive.
letter, of alphabet, *littera, -ae,* f.; = **epistle,** *litterae, -ārum,* f. pl.; *epistula, -ae,* f.
level, *aequus, -a, -um.*
levy, *cōnscrībō, -ere, -psī, -ptus.*
liberty, *lībertās, -ātis,* f.
lie open, *pateō, -ēre, -uī,* —.
lieutenant, *lēgātus, -ī,* m.
life, *vīta, -ae,* f.
light, noun, *lūx, lūcis,* f.
light, adj., *levis, -e.*
like, adj., *similis, -e.*
like, verb, *amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*

likewise, *item.*
line of battle, *aciēs, -ēī,* f.
line of march, *agmen, -minis,* n.
lion, *leō, leōnis,* m.
little, adv., *paulum;* **a little while ago,** *paulō ante.*
live, *vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctus.*
live in, *incolō, -ere, -uī,* — (used with acc.).
location, *locus, -ī,* m.
long, adj., *longus, -a, -um.*
long, adv., *diū.*
long ago, *iam prīdem,* adv.
longing for, *amor, -ōris,* m.; *cupiditās, -tātis,* f.
look, look at, *spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
lord, *dominus, -ī,* m.
lose, *āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus; dēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus;* **lose courage,** *animōs dēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.*
loud (**of the voice**), *magnus, -a, -um.*
Louis, *Ludovīcus, -ī,* m.
love, verb, *amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
love, noun, *amor, -ōris,* m.
low, *īnferus, -a, -um.*
loyal, *fīdus, -a, -um.*
Ludovicus, *Ludovīcus, -ī,* m.

M

make, *faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus; efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus; cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.*
man, *vir, -ī,* m.; *homō, -inis,* m. and f.
manage, *regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus.*
Manlius, *Mānlius, -ī,* m.
manner (**of attack**), (*impetūs*) *modus, -ī,* m.; **manner of life, living,** *cultus, -ūs,* m.
manners, pl. of *mōs, mōris,* m.
many, *multī, -ae, -a.*
march, verb, *iter facere.*
march, noun, *iter, itineris,* n.
marching column, *agmen, -inis,* n.
Marcus, *Mārcus, -ī,* m.
maritime, *maritimus, -a, -um.*
marsh, *palūs, -ūdis,* f.
master, *dominus, -ī,* m.; *magister, -trī,* m.
me: see **I.**
meantime, meanwhile, *intereā; interim.*
meet, *occurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursūrus.*
meeting, *conventus, -ūs,* m.
memory, *memoria, -ae,* f.
merchant, *mercātor, -ōris,* m.
message, *nūntius, nūntī,* m.
messenger, *nūntius, nūntī,* m.
midday, *merīdiēs, -ēī,* f.
middle, middle (**part**) **of,** *medius, -a, -um.*
midnight, *media nox.*
mile, *mīlle passūs;* **miles,** *mīlia passuum.*
mind, *mēns, mentis,* f.; *animus, -ī,* m.; **to have in mind,** *in animō esse* (with dat. of person), or *in animō habēre.*
mistaken, to be, *errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus.*
mistress, *domina, -ae,* f.
money, *pecūnia, -ae,* f.
month, *mēnsis, -is,* m.
moon, *lūna, -ae,* f.
more, adv., *magis, amplius;* with an adjective, use the comparative form.
moreover, *autem, tamen* (both postpositive).

mother, *māter, -tris,* f.
mountain, *mōns, montis,* m.
move, *moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus.*
move back, *removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus.*
move forward, *prōmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus.*
movement, *mōtus, -ūs,* m.
much, *multus, -a, -um;* **of money,** *magnus, -a, -um.*
Mucius, *Mūcius, -ī,* m.
multitude, *multitūdō, -inis,* f.
must, *dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus;* or pass. periphrastic.
my, *meus, -a, -um.*
myself, with nom. case, *ipse;* with other cases, *meī,* etc.
myself, (I) myself, (*ego*) *ipse;* in cases other than nom., *meī, mihi, mē.*

N

name, *nōmen, -inis,* n.
Nasica, *Nāsīca, -ae,* m.
nation, *nātiō, -ōnis,* f.
native land, *patria, -ae,* f.
nature, *nātūra, -ae,* f.
near, *ad, prope,* with acc.
near, be, *adsum, -esse, adfuī,* —.
nearby, *fīnitimus, -a, -um; propinquus, -a, -um.*
nearer, *propior, -ius.*
nearly, *paene, prope.*
necessary, *necessārius, -a, -um;* **necessary, it is,** *oportet* (used with acc. of person and inf.).
neighbor, *fīnitimus, -ī,* m.
neighboring, *fīnitimus, -a, -um; vīcīnus, -a, -um.*
neither, conj., *neque.*
neither, adj., *neuter, -tra, -trum.*
neither . . . nor, *neque* (*nec*) . . . *neque* (*nec*).
never, *numquam.*
nevertheless, *tamen.*
new, *novus, -a, -um.*
new name, *cognōmen, -inis,* n.
next, *proximus, -a, -um.*
night, *nox, noctis,* f.
nine, *novem.*
nineteen, *novendecim.*
no, *nūllus, -a, -um.*
noise, *clāmor, -ōris,* m.
none, *nūllus, -a, -um; nēmō,* —, dat., *nēminī,* m.
no one, *nūllus, -a, -um; nēmō,* —, dat., *nēminī,* m.
noon, *merīdiēs, -ēī,* f.
nor, *neque.*
not, *nōn.*
not even, *nē . . . quidem.*
not only . . . but also, *nōn sōlum* or *nōn modo . . . sed etiam.*
not . . . or, *neque . . . neque.*
nothing, *nihil,* indecl., n.
now, *nunc.*
number, *numerus, -ī,* m.
numerous, *crēber, -bra, -brum.*
Numitor, *Numitor, -ōris,* m.

O

oath, *iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī,* n.; **give, exchange an oath,** *iūs iūrandum inter sē dare.*
obey, *pāreō, -ēre, -uī,* —.
obtain, *potior, potīrī, potītus sum; obtineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.*
of (= **concerning**), *dē,* with abl.
often, *saepe.*
old, *senex, senis.*
old woman, *anus, -ūs,* f.
on, *in,* with abl.
on account of, *ob* or *propter,* with acc.

on all sides, *undique, omnibus ex partibus.*
once, on one occasion, *ōlim.*
one, *ūnus, -a, -um.*
one another, *inter sē.*
one by one, *singulī, -ae, -a.*
one hundred, *centum.*
only, *sōlus, -a, -um.*
open, *apertus, -a, -um.*
opinion, *sententia, -ae,* f.
opportunity, *facultās, -tātis,* f.; *potestās, -tātis,* f.
oppose, *resistō, -ere, restitī,* —; *oppōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus.*
or, *aut, vel, an.*
oration, *ōrātiō, -ōnis,* f.; **deliver an oration,** *ōrātiōnem habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.*
order, noun, *ōrdō, ōrdinis,* m.
order, verb, *iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus* (with acc. and infin.); *imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus* (with dat. of person, and *ut* or *nē* with subjunctive).
orders, without, *iniussus, -a, -um.*
Orgetorix, *Orgetorīx, -īgis,* m.
other, *alius, -a, -ud;* **all the others,** *cēterī, -ae, -a.*
otherwise, adv., *aliter.*
ought, *dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus* (used with infin.); *oportet* (used with acc. of person and infin.).
our, *noster, -tra, -trum;* **our men,** *nostrī, -ōrum,* m. pl.
outcome, *exitus, -ūs,* m.
outer, *exterus, -a, -um.*
out of, *ē, ex,* with abl.
outside, *extrā,* with acc.
outstanding, *ēgregius, -a, -um.*
over, *in,* with abl.
overcome, *superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus.*
overwhelm, *obruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutus.*

P

pace, *passus, -ūs,* m.
pacify, *pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
part, *pars, partis,* f.; **first part of,** *prīmus, -a, -um;* **in the first part of summer,** *prīmā aestāte,* or *aestāte initā;* **for the most part,** *plērumque.*
pass the winter, *hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus.*
path, *sēmita, -ae,* f.
peace, *pāx, pācis,* f.
penalty, *poena, -ae,* f.; *supplicium, -ī,* n.
people, *populus, -ī,* m.
peril, *perīculum, -ī,* n.
permit, *licet, -ēre, licuit; patior, patī, passus sum.*
persuade, *persuādeō, -ēre, -sī, -suāsūrus.*
picture, *pictūra, -ae,* f.
pitch (camp), (*castra*) *pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus.*
place, noun, *locus, -ī,* m.
place, verb, *pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus.*
place before, *antepōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus.*
place in charge of, place in command of, *praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus; praepōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus.*
place, to the same, *eōdem,* adv.
plain, *campus, -ī,* m.; *plānitiēs, -ēī,* f.
plan, *cōnsilium, cōnsilī,* n.
play, *lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsūrus.*
please, *placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus* (used with dat.).
pledge, *fidēs, -eī,* f.

plenty, *cōpia, -ae,* f.
poet, *poēta, -ae,* m.
Pompey, *Pompeius, Pompeī,* m.
ponder, *cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
Porsena, *Porsena, -ae,* m.
port, *portus, -ūs,* m.
possess, *possideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus.*
possession, get possession of, *potior, potīrī, potītus sum* (used with abl.).
possessions, *bona, -ōrum,* n.; **his (their) possessions,** *sua* (n. pl. adj., used as noun).
possible (as), *quam* with superlative.
power, *potestās, -tātis,* f.
powerful, *potēns, potentis.*
powerful, be (very), *multum (plūrimum) possum, posse, potuī,* —.
praise, noun, *laus, laudis,* f.
praise, verb, *laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
predict, *praedīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus.*
prefer, *mālō, mālle, māluī; antepōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus; praepōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus.*
prepare, *parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
presence, *cōnspectus, -ūs,* m.; **in the presence of,** *apud,* with acc.; **into the presence of,** *ad,* with acc.
present, *dōnum, -ī,* n.
present, adj., *praesēns, -entis.*
present, be present, *adsum, adesse, adfuī,* —.
press, press hard, *premō; -ere, pressī, pressus.*
price, *pretium, -ī,* n.
private, *prīvātus, -a, -um* (opposed to *pūblicus*).
previously, *anteā.*
proclaim, *renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
prohibit, *prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.*
promise, *polliceor, -ērī, -itus sum* (generally used with future infin., with pronoun subject, *mē, tē, sē,* etc.).
promote, *prōmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus.*
protect, *servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; prōtegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctus.*
protection, *praesidium, praesidī,* n.
province, *prōvincia, -ae,* f.
public, *pūblicus, -a, -um.*
publicly (= **openly**), *apertē, palam;* (= **officially, by act of the State**), *pūblicē.*
punish, *pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.*
punishment, *poena, -ae,* f.; *supplicium, -ī,* n.
pupil, *discipulus, -ī,* m.
purpose, *mēns, mentis,* f.
put, *pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus.*
put aside, *dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus.*
put before, *prōpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus; expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus.*
put down (aside), *dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus.*
put forth, *expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus.*
put in (charge) command, *praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus; praepōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus.*
put to flight, *pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus; in fugam dō, dare, dedī, datus.*
Pyrrhus, *Pyrrhus, -ī,* m.

Q

queen, *rēgīna, -ae,* f.
quick, *celer, celeris, celere.*
quickly, *celeriter.*

R

race, *certāmen, -inis,* n.
rain, *imber, imbris,* m.
rampart, *vāllum, -ī,* n.
rank, *ōrdō, -inis,* m.
rather (comparative).
read, *legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus.*
rear, *novissimum agmen.*
receive, *accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.*
recently (**most**), *proximē.*
reckon, *exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
recover, *recuperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
recruit, *novus mīles.*
regain, *recuperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
region, *regiō, -ōnis,* f.
remain, *maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus; permaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsūrus; remaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsūrus.*
remaining, *reliquus, -a, -um; cēterī, -ae, -a.*
remember, *memoriā tenēre.*
Remi, *Rēmī, -ōrum,* m.
remove, *removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus.*
Remus, *Remus, -ī,* m.
renown, *fāma, -ae,* f.
repel, *repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsus.*
reply, make reply, *respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -spōnsus.*
report, noun, *rūmor, -ōris,* m.
report, verb, *nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; referō, -ferre, rettulī, -lātus.*
republic, *rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae,* f.
repulse, *reiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus; repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsus.*
reputation, *fāma, -ae,* f.
resist, *resistō, -ere, restitī, —; sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus.*
respects, in all, *omnibus rēbus.*
respond, *respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -sus.*
rest, rest of, *reliquus, -a, -um; cēterī, -ae, -a.*
restrain, *retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.*
retain, *retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.*
retreat, *mē, tē, sē recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.*
return, *revertor, -ī, reversus sum;* (= **give back**), *reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditus.*
return, in return for, *prō* with abl.
revolt, *mōtus, -ūs,* m.
revolution, *rēs novae.*
reward, *praemium, praemī,* n.
Rhea Silvia, *Rhēa Silvia, Rhēae Silviae,* f.
Rhine, *Rhēnus, -ī,* m.
Rhone, *Rhodanus, -ī,* m.
ridge, *iugum, -ī,* n.
right, adj., *dexter, -tra, -trum.*
river, *flūmen, -inis,* n.
road, *via, -ae,* f.
Roman, noun, *Rōmānus, -ī,* m.
Roman, adj., *Rōmānus, -a, -um.*
Rome, *Rōma, -ae,* f.
Romulus, *Rōmulus, -ī,* m.
rose, *rosa, -ae,* f.
rout, *pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus; in fugam dō, dare, dedī, datus.*
row, *ōrdō, -inis,* m.
royal power, *rēgnum, -ī,* n.
ruin, *ruīna, -ae,* f.
rule, *regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus.*
rumor, *rūmor, -ōris,* m.; *fāma, -ae,* f.
run, *currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursūrus.*

S

Sabinus, *Sabīnus, -ī,* m.
safe, *tūtus, -a, -um.*
safety, *salūs, -ūtis,* f.
sail, *nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus.*
sailor, *nauta, -ae,* m.
sake of, *causā,* with genitive.
salute, *salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
same, *īdem, eadem, idem.*
same place, to the, *eōdem.*
satisfy, *satisfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factūrus,* used with dat.
save, *servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
say, *dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus; loquor, loquī, locūtus sum.*
scarcity, *inopia, -ae,* f.
scatter, *differō, -ferre, distulī, dilātus.*
scout, *explōrātor, -ōris,* m.
sea, *mare, -is,* n.
seashore, *lītus, -oris,* n.
secret, adj., *occultus, -a, -um.*
see, *videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus.*
seek, *petō, -ere, -iī (-īvī), -ītus; quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus.*
seem, *videor, -ērī, vīsus sum.*
seize, *capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus; occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
select, *dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus.*
senate, *senātus, -ūs,* m.
senator, *senātor, -ōris,* m.
send, *mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus.*
send ahead, *praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.*
send away, *dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus;* (= **lose**), *āmittō, -ere, āmīsī, āmissus.*
send back, *remittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.*
send in different directions, *dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.*
send to the assistance of, *auxilium mittere* (used with dat.); *auxiliō mittere* (used with dat. of person).
Sequanian, *Sēquanus, -ī,* m.
set before, *praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus; praepōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus.*
set fire to, *incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus.*
set free, *līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
set out, *proficīscor, -ī, profectus sum.*
setting, *occāsus, -ūs,* m.
settle, *cōnsīdō, -ere, -sēdī,* —.
seven, *septem.*
seventeen, *septendecim.*
several, *complūrēs, -a.*
severe, *gravis, -e.*
share, *commūnicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
sharp (only of persons, = **keen**), *ācer, ācris, ācre.*
sharply, keenly, *ācriter.*
shelter, *perfugium, -ī,* n.
shepherd, *pāstor, -ōris, m.*
ship, *nāvis, -is,* f.
shore, *lītus, -oris,* n.
short, *brevis, -e.*
shout, noun, *clāmor, -ōris,* m.
shout, verb, *clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus.*
show, *doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctus; mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; dēmōnstrō; ostendō, -ere, ostendī, ostentus.*
shut, *claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus.*
Sibylline, *Sibyllīnus, -a, -um.*
side, *pars, partis,* f.; *latus, -eris,* n.: **on all sides,** *omnibus ex partibus,* or *undique,* adv.
sight, *cōnspectus, -ūs,* m.
signal, *signum, -ī,* n.
similar, *similis, -e.*

since, *cum* (used with subjunctive).
sister, *soror, -ōris,* f.
six, *sex.*
six hundred, *sescentī, -ae, -a.*
sixteen, *sēdecim.*
sixth, *sextus, -a, -um.*
six thousand, *sex mīlia.*
size, great, *magnitūdō, -inis,* f.; **of great size,** *magnus, -a, -um, maximus, -a, -um.*
skilled, skillful, *perītus, -a, -um.*
slaughter, *caedēs, -is,* f.
slave, *servus, -ī,* m.
slavery, *servitūs, -ūtis,* f.
slay, *occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus; interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.*
small, *parvus, -a, -um.*
snatch away, *ēripiō, -ere, -uī, ēreptus.*
so, *ita, sīc* (manner); *tam* (degree).
so great, *tantus, -a, -um.*
soldier, *mīles, -itis,* m.
some, *alius, alia, aliud.*
some, *nonnūllus, -a, -um.*
some one, *aliquis, aliquid.*
some . . . others, *aliī . . . aliī.*
sometimes, *interdum.*
somewhat, *paulum.*
son, *fīlius, fīlī,* m.
soon, *mox;* **as soon as,** *cum prīmum* (used with the indicative).
Spartacus, *Spartacus, -ī,* m.
space, *spatium, -ī,* n.
speak, *loquor, loquī, locūtus sum.*
speech, *ōrātiō, -ōnis,* f.
speed, *celeritās, -tātis,* f.
spend winter, *hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus.*
splendid, *amplus, -a, -um.*
spy, *explōrātor, -ōris,* m.
stand, *stō, -āre, stetī, stātūrus.*
standard, *signum, -ī,* n.
star, *stella, -ae,* f.
state, *cīvitās, -tātis,* f.; *rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae,* f.
stay, *remaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsūrus; permaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsūrus.*
still, adv., *adhūc.*
stone, *lapis, -idis,* m.
stop, *intermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus; cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitūrus.*
storm, noun, *tempestās, -tātis,* f.
storm, take by storm, verb, *expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
stormy weather, *hiems, hiemis,* f.
story, *fābula, -ae,* f.
strange, *aliēnus, -a, -um; novus, -a, -um.*
strength, *vīrēs, vīrium,* f.
strengthen, *cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
strip, *nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
stronghold, *castellum, -ī,* n.
strongly, *fortiter, ācriter, vehementer.*
subdue, *pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
succeed to, *succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus* (used with dat.).
such, *tantus, -a, -um.*
Suessiones, *Suessiōnēs, -um,* m.
suffer, *patior, patī, passus sum* (used with acc. and infin.).
sufficient, noun, *satis* (used with gen.).
sufficiently, *satis.*
suitable, *idōneus, -a, -um.*
suitor, *procus, -ī, m.*
summer, *aestās, -tātis,* f.
summon, *convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
sun, *sōl, sōlis,* m.
sunset, at, *sōlis occāsū.*
superior, *superior, -ius.*

supplies, *commeātus, -ūs,* m.
supply, *cōpia, -ae,* f.
sure, *certus, -a, -um.*
surely, *certē, prō certō.*
surpass, *superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stitūrus; antecēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus.*
surrender, noun, *dēditiō, -ōnis,* f.
surrender, verb, *dēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus; trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditus.*
surround, *circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, ventus* (used with one acc.); *circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datus* (= surround, enclose a person or a place, acc., with something, abl.).
survive, *supersum, -esse, -fuī.*
suspicion, *suspīciō, -ōnis,* f.
swamp, *palūs, -ūdis,* f.
swift, *celer, celeris, celere; vēlōx, vēlōcis.*
swiftly, *celeriter, vēlōciter.*
swiftness, *celeritās, -tātis,* f.
sword, *gladius, gladī,* m.

T

table, *mēnsa, -ae,* f.
take, *capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus; sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus.*
take away, *auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus.*
take back, *recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.*
take by storm, *expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
take out, *excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.*
take possession of, *potior, potīrī, potītus sum* (used with abl.); *occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
tall, *altus, -a, -um; longus, -a, -um.*
Tarquin, *Tarquinius, -ī,* m.
task, *negōtium, -ī,* n.: *labor, -ōris,* m.; *opus, operis,* n.
teach, *doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctus* (used with two accusatives).
teacher, *magister, -trī,* m.
tell, *nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
ten, *decem.*
tent, *tabernāculum, -ī,* n.
tenth, *decimus, -a, -um.*
terms (of peace, etc.), *condiciō, -ōnis,* f.
territory, pl. of *fīnis, -is,* m.
than, *quam.*
thanks, give (by words), *grātiās agō, agere, ēgī, āctus;* (by substantial return), *grātiam referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātus.*
that, demon. pron. and adj., *is, ea, id; ille, illa, illud.*
that, rel. pron., *quī, quae, quod.*
that: not expressed after verbs of saying, thinking, and the like.
that, in order that, conj., *ut,* with subjunctive.
that of yours, *iste, ista, istud.*
theirs, gen. pl. of *is; suus, -a, -um,* (reflexive).
themselves, intensive, *ipsī.*
then (= **at that time**), *tum, eō tempore, iam* (= **by that time**).
there, *ibi;* (= **to that place**), *eō.*
thence, *inde.*
theory, *ratiō, -ōnis,* f.
thing, *rēs, reī,* f.
think, *putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum; exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
third, *tertius, -a, -um.*
thirteen, *tredecim.*
this, demon. pron. and adj., *hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id.*
thither, *eō.*

thousand, *mīlle;* in pl., *mīlia, mīlium,* n.
three, *trēs, tria.*
three days, *trīduum, -ī,* n.
through, *per,* with acc.
throw, *iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus.*
throw against, *obiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus.*
throw back, *reiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus.*
throw down, *dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus.*
throw to, *adiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus.*
time, *tempus, -oris,* n.
timidly, *timidē.*
tired, *dēfessus, -a, -um.*
to, *ad,* with acc.
toe, *digitus, -ī,* m.
toga, *toga, -ae,* f.
toil, *labor, -ōris,* m.
tomorrow, *crās.*
tongue, *lingua, -ae,* f.
tooth, *dēns, dentis,* m.
top, top of, *summus, -a, -um.*
torture, *cruciātus, -ūs,* m.
toward, *ad,* with acc.
tower, *turris, -is,* f.
town, *oppidum, -ī,* n.
tree, *arbor, -oris,* f.
trench, *fossa, -ae,* f.
Trojan, *Trōiānus, -a, -um.*
troops, *cōpiae, -ārum,* f.; *mīlitēs, -um,* m.
Troy, *Trōia, -ae,* f.
true, *vērus, -a, -um.*
trumpet, *tuba, -ae,* f.
truth, *Vēritās, -ātis,* f.; **to speak the truth,** *vēra dīcere.*
trust, *crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditūrus; cōnfīdō, -ere, cōnfīsus sum.*
try, *cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum; temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus.*
tumult, *tumultus, -ūs,* m.
twelve, *duodecim.*
twenty, *vīgintī.*
twenty-one, *vīgintī ūnus,* or *ūnus et vīgintī.*
twenty-five, *vīgintī quīnque.*
twice, *bis.*
two, *duo, duae, duo.*
two days, *bīduum, -ī,* n.
two hundred, *ducentī, -ae, -a.*

U

unable, be, *nōn possum, posse, potuī, —.*
unacquainted with, be, *ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
unconquerable, *invictus, -a, -um.*
under, with verb that expresses motion, *sub,* with acc.; with verb that does not express motion, *sub,* with abl.
understand, *intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus; sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus.*
undertake, *incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus* (see **incipiō**); *suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.*
uneven, *inīquus, -a, -um.*
unfair, *inīquus, -a, -um.*
unfavorable, *aliēnus, -a, -um.*
unfriendly, *inimīcus, -a, -um.*
unhappy, *miser, misera, miserum.*
unite, *coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus.*
unjust, *inīquus, -a, -um.*
unknown, *ignōtus, -a, -um.*
unless, *nisi.*
unlike, *dissimilis, -e.*
unwilling, be, *nōlō, nōlle, nōluī,—.*
upon, with verb that expresses motion, *in,* with acc.; with verb that does not express motion, *in,* with abl.

up to, *ad,* or *sub,* with acc.
upper, *superior, -ius.*
urge, *hortor, -ārī, hortātus sum; persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsūrus* (used with dat. of person, followed by *ut* or *nē* with the subjunctive).
urge on, *excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus.*
us, pl. of *ego.*
use, *ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum* (with abl.).
useful, *ūtilis, -e.*
useless, *inūtilis, -e.*

V

vain, in vain, *frūstrā.*
valor, *virtūs, -ūtis,* f.
van, *prīmum agmen.*
Veneti, *Venetī, -ōrum,* m.
very: expressed by superlative.
victor, *victor, ōris,* m.
victory, *victōria, -ae,* f.
view, *cōnspectus, -ūs,* m.
village, *vīcus, -ī,* m.
violence, *vīs, vīs,* f.
violently, *vehementer.*
virtue, *virtūs, -ūtis,* f.
visit, *adeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itus.*
voice, *vōx, vōcis,* f.

W

wage, *gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus.*
wait for, *exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
walk, *ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus.*
wall, *mūrus, -ī,* m. (= **rampart**), *vāllum, -ī,* n.
want, *inopia, -ae,* f.
war, noun, *bellum, -ī,* n.
war, make war on, verb, *bellum īnferō, -ferre, intulī, illātus.*
warn, *moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.*
war-ship, *nāvis longa.*
watch (of the night), *vigilia, -ae,* f.; (= **watchman**), *custōs, -ōdis,* m.
water, *aqua, -ae,* f.
way, *via, -ae,* f.
we, *nōs.*
weapon, *tēlum, -ī,* n.
wear, *gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus.*
weary, *dēfessus, -a, -um.*
weather, stormy, *hiems, hiemis,* f.; *tempestās, -tātis,* f.
well, *bene.*
well-known, *nōtus, -a, -um.*
what, *quis, quid* (substantive); *quī, quae, quod* (adjective).
when, *cum, ubi.*
whence, *unde.*
where, *ubi;* (= **whither**), *quō.*
wherefore, *cūr, quam ob rem.*
whether, *utrum, num.*
which, *quī, quae, quod.*
which of two, *uter, utra, utrum.*
white, *albus, -a, -um.*
who, *quī, quae, quod* (relative); *quis, quid* (interrog.).
whole, *tōtus, -a, -um;* (= **unimpaired**), *integer, -gra, -grum.*
why, *cūr, quam ob rem.*
wicked, *malus, -a, -um.*
wide, *lātus, -a, -um.*
width, *lātitūdō, -inis,* f.
wife, *uxor, -ōris,* f.
willing, be, *volō, velle, voluī,* —.
wind, *ventus, -ī,* m.
wing (**of an army**), *cornū, -ūs,* n.
winter, noun, *hiems, hiemis,* f.
winter quarters, *hīberna, -ōrum,* n.
wise, *prūdēns, -entis; sapiēns, -entis.*
wisely, *sapienter, prūdenter.*
wish, *cupiō, -ere, cupīvī, cupītus; volō, velle, voluī,* —.

with, *cum,* with abl.; **with the aid of,** *auxiliō, per auxilium.*
withdraw, intransitive, *exeō, -īre, -iī* (*-īvī*), *-itūrus;* transitive, *redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.*
within (three hours, etc.): express by abl. case without prep.
without, *sine,* with abl.
without orders, *iniussus, -a, -um.*
withstand, *sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.*
wolf, *lupus, -ī,* m.; **she-wolf,** *lupa, -ae,* f.
woman, *fēmina, -ae,* f.
woods, *silva, -ae,* f.
word, *verbum, -ī,* n.
work, noun, *opera, -ae,* f.; *opus, operis,* n.
work, verb, *labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus.*
worn out, *dēfessus, -a, -um.*
worse, *peior, peius.*
worth, noun, *dignitās, -ātis,* f.
would that, *utinam* (used with subjunctive).
wound, noun, *vulnus, -eris,* n.
wound, verb, *vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
wretched, *miser, -era, -erum.*
write, *scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus.*
wrong, *iniūria, -ae,* f.

Y

year, *annus, -ī,* m.
yet, *tamen.*
yield, *submittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus; cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessūrus.*
yoke, *iugum, -ī,* n.
you, *tū, tuī;* pl., *vōs.*
young, *iuvenis, -e.*
young man, *adulēscēns, -centis,* m.
your, *tuus, -a, -um; vester, -tra, -trum.*
yourself, in nom. case, *ipse;* in other cases, *tuī,* etc.
youth, *iuvenis, -is,* m.

INDEX

References are to sections, unless it is otherwise stated.

A

ā or **ab** with ablative of agent, 167;
  place whence, 112;
abbreviations, page 370.
ablative case,
  absolute, 508;
  adverbial, 486;
  of accompaniment, 136;
  of agent, 167;
  of cause, 312;
  of degree of difference, 486;
  of manner, 151;
  of means, 87;
  of quality, 425;
  of separation, 351;
  of specification, 294;
  of time, 245;
  with *ūtor*, etc., 479;
  with prepositions, 367;
  with *dē* or *ex* instead of genitive of the whole, 305 and note;
  with *quaerō* and *postulō*, 451.
accent: see Introduction IX.
accompaniment, 136.
accusative case,
  adverbial, 486;
  direct object, 21;
  duration of time, 328;
  extent of space, 328;
  place whither, 112;
  subject of infinitive, 342;
  with prepositions, 368.
ācer, declension, 593;
  comparison, 599.
ācriter, comparison, 601.
ad, with accusative, place to which, 112.
adjectives, 52, 640–644;
  agreement of, 56;
  of first and second declensions, 52;
  of third declension, one termination, 250; two terminations, 250; three terminations, 242;
  of peculiar declension, 442;
  comparison, 268; regular, 269, irregular, 284, 600; with *magis* and *maximē*, 284 (c);
  meaning of comparatives, 269 (a);
  meaning of superlatives, 269 (a);
  declension of comparatives, 270;
  declension of superlatives, 270 (a);
  ending in *-er*, 276;
  four ending in *-lis*, 277;
  with dative, 280, 290;
  numerals, 211, 361.

adverbial ablative, 486.
adverbial accusative, 486.
adverbs, 669–672;
derivation, 210, 290;
formation, 210, 290;
comparison, 291, 601.
agent, expressed by ablative with *ā* or *ab*, 167;
expressed by dative with passive periphrastic, 569.
agreement of adjectives, 56;
of appositives, 186;
of possessive pronouns, 395 (a), 398;
of relative pronouns, 220;
of verb with subject, 18.
aliquis, declension, 498.
alius, declension, 597.
alphabet: see Introduction II.
answers, 26.
Appendix I, pages 367–373.
Appendix II, pages 374–390.
Appendix III, pages 391–424.
apposition, 186.
audiō, 612.

B

base, 8 (b).
bene, comparison, 601.
bonus, declension, 592;
comparison, 600.

C

Caesar Phrases, 216, 249, 255, 289, 297, 308, 323, 366, 373, 412, 420, 564.
capiō, conjugation, 613.
cardinals, 211, 361; list of, 602; indeclinable, 361 (a).
case, 635.
cases, names and uses, 5, 572–574, 577–580, 636–638.
causal clauses, 516.
cause, ablative of, 312.
circumstantial clauses, 515.
comparative, declension, 270;
meaning, 269 (a).
comparison of adjectives, 643–644;
regular, 269;
irregular, 284, 600;
positive wanting, 284 (b);
ending in *-er*, 276;
four ending in *-lis*, 277;
of adverbs, 291, 601.
complementary infinitive, 264.
composition, 208, 241, 248, 252, 259, 267, 378.
compound nouns, 309 (a).
compound verbs, 396 (a).
concessive clauses, 517.
conditional sentences, 522–528.
conjugations, 140;
how distinguished, 140;
portō, 67, 73, 74, 609;
moneō, 141, 142, 610;
dūcō, 611;
audiō, 612;
capiō, 613;
sum, *possum*, 614;
volō, *nōlō*, *mālō*, 615;
ferō, 616;
eō, 617;
fīō, 618.
conjunctions, 674.
connected English sentences, English to Latin, 51, 59, 64, 82, 90, 105, 111, 119, 124, 132, 139, 147, 154, 159, 170, 178, 185, 190, 196, 209, 216, 223, 228, 241, 249, 267, 275, 283, 289, 297, 308, 315, 323, 332, 337, 347, 354, 360, 366, 373, 379, 385, 393, 401, 404, 412, 421, 427, 432, 448, 456.

consonants, how pronounced: see Introduction V.
cum clauses, 514–517.

D

dative case,
of agent, 569;
with adjectives, 280;
with compound verbs, 396 (a);
of indirect object, 79;
with intransitive verbs, 540;
of possessor, 552;
of purpose, 546;
reference, 546.
dē or ex, with ablative instead of genitive of the whole, 305 and note.
dea, declension, 591.
declensions, defined, 4;
how distinguished, 32;
first, 8;
second, 32, 33, 45, 46;
third, 125, 133, 148, 155–157;
fourth, 302;
fifth, 309.
definite measurement, 425 (a) and note.
degree of difference, 486, note.
demonstrative pronouns, 224, 406, 605.
deponent verbs, 478.
derivation, 10, 16, 23, 28, 35, 48, 55, 60, 69, 76, 86, 93, 102, 116, 120, 127, 135, 144, 150, 155, 166, 173, 182, 193, 199, 205, 213, 219, 226, 229, 238, 244, 256, 263, 272, 279, 286, 293, 298, 304, 311, 318, 327, 333, 341, 350, 357, 363, 370, 374, 382, 389, 397, 402, 409, 417, 424, 430, 435, 438, 445, 452, 459, 474, 480, 487, 493, 500, 503, 511, 519, 527, 533, 539, 545, 551, 559, 568.
descriptive ablative or genitive, 425 and note.
deus, declension, 591.
difficilis, comparison, 277.
diphthongs, pronunciation: see Introduction IV.
direct object, 21.
domus, declension, 591;
in expressions of place, 443.
dūcō, conjugation, 611.
duo, declension, 598.
duration of time, 328.

E

ē or ex, place out of which, 112.
ego, declension, 603.
English Grammar, 6, 619–681.
English-Latin Letter, 2.
English readings, Introduction, I; 31, 51, 72, 97, 119, 139, 159, 185, 204, 216, 233, 255, 275, 297, 323, 337, 360, 401, 427, 441, 472, 490, 507, 537.
English word study, 28 (b), 29, 60 (b), 61 (c), 120 (b), 155 (b) and (e), 205 (b), 256 (b), 298 (b), 333 (b), 374 (b), 402 (b), 438 (b), 474 (b), 503 (b), 533 (b).
eō, conjugation, 617.
ex, with ablative instead of genitive of the whole, 305 and note.
expressions of place, 112.
extent of space, 328.
exterus, comparison, 600.

F

facile, comparison, 601.
facilis, comparison, 277, 600.

feminine gender: see Introduction X (b).
ferō, conjugation, 616.
fīlius, vocative, 33 (b).
fiō, conjugation, 618.
future perfect, formation, 106.
future tense, formation, 74, 179.

G

gender, 633;
rules for, Introduction X;
in first declension, 8;
in second declension, 32, 45;
in third declension, 125;
in fourth declension, 302;
in fifth declension, 309;
of possessive pronouns, 398.
genitive case,
of description or quality, 425 (a) and note;
of definite measurement, 425 (a);
of the whole, 305, note;
of possession, 36.
gerund, 555.
gerundive, 556;
gerundive construction, 557;
takes dative of agent, 569;
used with *ad* to express purpose, 560, 3;
used with *causā* to express purpose, 560, 4;
used with *sum* to form passive periphrastic, 566;
with *sum* implies duty or necessity, 566.

H

helpful hints, Appendix II.
hic, declension, 605.
historical tenses, 460.
hostis, distinguished from *inimīcus,* 310.

I

i, takes place of **j,** Introduction II;
i-stems, 234, 235.
īdem, declension, 605.
idōneus, comparison, 600.
ille, declension, 605.
imperative, 658.
imperfect, distinguished from perfect, 100 (a);
formation of, 73.
imperō, governs dative and subjunctive, 451 and note.
impersonal verbs, 648.
in, with accusative and ablative, 368 (a).
indefinite pronouns, 498.
indicative, 656.
indirect discourse, 339, 5; 342, 470.
indirect object, 79, 680.
indirect question, 470.
infinitive, 659, 660;
complementary, 264;
formation, 338;
used as subject, 339, 1; 339, 4;
in indirect discourse, 339, 5;
takes accusative as subject, 342;
not used to express purpose, 450;
time denoted by, 467.
inflection, 3, 639.
inimīcus, distinguished from *hostis,* 310.
instrumental ablative, 87.
intensive pronoun, 407.
interior, comparison, 600.
interjections, 675.
interrogative particles, 96.
interrogative pronouns, 380.

-iō verbs of the third conjugation, 355.
ipse, declension, 605.
irregular adjectives, comparison, 600.
irregular verbs, *sum*, 614; *possum*, *eō*, *ferō*, *fīō*, *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*, 614–618.
is, declension, 605; used as pronoun, 386.
iste, declension, 605.
iubeō, governs accusative and infinitive, 408.

J

j, supplied by **i**: see Introduction II.

L

Latin in every day use, page 367.
Latin Phrases, pages 369, 370.
Latin Quotations, pages 371–373.
Latin Songs, pages 359–366.
Latin words in the Constitution, page 369.
locative case, 443.
longior, declension, 270.

M

magis, used in comparison, 284 (c).
magnopere, comparison, 601.
magnus, comparison, 600; declension, 53.
male, comparison, 601.
mālō, conjugation, 615.
malus, comparison, 600.
manner, ablative of, 151.
masculine gender, Introduction X (a).
means, ablative of, 87.
melior, declension, 596.
meus, 187.
mile, how expressed, 325.
mīlle, how used, 325.
miser, declension, 83; comparison, 599.
miserē, comparison, 601.
moneō, 610.
mood, 655–660.
multus, comparison, 600.

N

nē, introducing negative clause of purpose, 450.
-ne, enclitic, 26.
neuter gender, Introduction X (c).
nōlō, conjugation, 615.
nominative case, 636; subject of finite verb, 17; of pronouns expressed only for emphasis, page 228, footnote 1; predicate nominative, 41.
nōnne, 96.
nōs, declension, 603.
noster, formation and declension, 395.
note book suggestions, pages 381, 389.
nouns, 619–624; first declension, 8; second declension, 32, 33, 45, 46; third declension, 125, 133, 148, 234–236; fourth declension, 302; fifth declension, 309; compound nouns, 309 (a); parsing of, 128.
num, 96.
number, 13, 634.
numerals, list of, 211, 361, 602; indeclinable, 361 (a).

O

object, direct, 21, 677;
indirect, 79.
Oral Exercises, 27, 39, 44, 51, 59, 64, 72, 82, 90, 97, 105, 111, 119, 124, 132, 139, 147, 154, 159, 170, 178, 185, 190, 196, 204, 223, 275, 283, 315, 331, 347, 354, 360, 385, 393, 401, 448, 455, 465, 473, 484, 490, 497.
ordinals, list of, 211, 361, 602.

P

parsing, nouns, 128;
verbs, 187.
participles, 413, 509, 668;
agreement, 414 (a);
declension, 414;
time denoted by, 415;
how translated, 414 (a);
future, with *sum*, to form active periphrastic, 565;
of deponent verbs, 509 (b).
partitive genitive, 305, note.
parum, comparison, 601.
parvus, comparison, 600.
passive, 160, 161, 162.
penult, when accented, Introduction IX (b).
perfect, distinguished from imperfect, 100 (a).
periphrastic conjugations, 565 and note 1, 566.
personal endings, 13, 99, 160.
personal pronouns, 386;
supplied by *is*, 386.
Phrases from Caesar: see **Caesar.**
Phrases, Latin, pages 369, 370.
place constructions, 112, 443;
with names of towns, etc., 443.
portō, conjugation, 609.
possession, genitive of, 36, 679.
possessive adjectives, 395;
gender of, 398.
possessor, dative of, 552.
possum, composition, 261;
conjugation, 614.
posterus, comparison, 600.
potēns, declension, 595.
potior, governs ablative, 479, note.
predicate nominative, 41, 678.
prefixes, 112, 433, 499, 510 (a), 518, 533 (c), 558.
prepositions, 673; govern accusative, 368; govern ablative, 367.
principal parts of verbs, 65;
why so called, 65.
principal tenses, 460.
prior, comparison, 600.
pronouns, 625–633;
demonstrative, 406;
indefinite, 498;
intensive, 407;
interrogative, 380;
personal, 386; order of, page 228, footnote 1;
"possessive," 395; agreement, 395; gender, 398; used substantively, page 232, footnote 1;
relative, 217, 220;
reflexive, 387.
pronunciation: see Introduction.
propior, comparison, 600.
pulchrē, comparison, 601.
purpose, clauses of,
subjunctive with *ut* or *nē*, 450;
subjunctive with *quī*, 560, 2;
gerundive construction with *ad*, 560, 3;
gerundive construction with *causā*, 560, 4;
expressed by the dative, 546;
not expressed by infinitive, 450.

Q

quaerō, 451.
quality, genitive, or ablative, 425 and note.
quantity of syllables, Introduction VIII.
quantity of vowels, Introduction VI.
questions, direct, 26, 131; indirect, 470.
quī, declension, 606; equivalent to *ut* and personal pronoun, 560, 2.
quis, declension, 607.
quotations, Latin, pages 371–373.

R

Reading Lessons (pages),
Arena Romana, 16;
Legatus, 22;
Gallia, 24;
Bella in Gallia, 27;
Oppugnatio Oppidi, 32;
Via Appia, 36;
Regina Galliae, 44;
Servus Malus, 49;
Triumphus Romanus, 56;
Ludi Romani, 58;
Carolus et Poma, 63;
Appius Claudius, 67;
Pyrrhus, 71;
Servus Fidus, 75;
Coriolanus, 82;
Carthago, 86;
Spartacus et Gladiatores, 90;
Androclus et Leo, 98;
Dux Militibus, 101;
Cincinnatus, 105;
Mucius Scaevola, 110;
Puer et Poma, 113;
Rex Galliae, 121;
Horatius Cocles, 126;
Brutus et Oraculum, 131;
Mettius Curtius, 135;
Helvetii, 142;
Auxilium Amici, 146;
Populus Romanus, 155;
L. Iunius Brutus, I, 159;
L. Iunius Brutus, II, 164;
A Practical Joke, 168;
T. Manlius Torquatus, 171;
The Mouse-Tower, I, 179;
The Mouse-Tower, II, 182;
C. Fabricius, 187;
Corneliae Ornamenta, 190;
Forum Romanum, 194;
Obsidio Troiae, 201;
The Weather-Wise Donkey, 205;
Libri Sibyllini, 208;
A Breach of Discipline, 213;
Orgetorix, 217;
Nasica et Ennius, 221;
The Beginnings of Rome, 224;
Romulus and Remus, 228;
Anseres Sacri, 232;
The Death of Amulius, 237;
Decius, Consul Romanus, 240;
The Naming of Rome, 245;
Cloelia, 249;
Atalanta, 252;
The Reign of Romulus, 256;
Deucalion et Pyrrha, 264;
Numa and Tullus, 269;
The Fourth and Fifth Kings, 276;
Servius Tullius, 284;
Tarquin the Proud, 291;
Tarpeia, 297;
Domus Romana, 302;
Robert, King of Scots, I, 311;
Robert, King of Scots, II, 315;
Virgines Vestales, 322;
The First Punic War, 326;
The Capture of Regulus, 330;
The Heroism of Regulus, 340;

reflexive pronouns, 387.
relative pronoun, 217, 220.
result, clauses of, 485.
review, Lessons 6, 11, 19, 24, 31, 35, 39, 45, 50, 56, 60, 66, 71, 76, 80.
of cases, Lessons 86, 87.
of subjunctives, Lesson 88.

S

semi-deponent verbs, 549.
separation, ablative of, 350.
sequence of tenses, 461.
sī, introducing conditions, 522.
Sight Reading Exercises, 209, 233, 260, 301, 337, 379, 477, 506, 536.
similis, governing dative, 280.
Songs, pages 359–366.
space, extent of, 328.
specification, ablative of, 294.
State Mottoes, page 368.
stem, of nouns, 234 (a); of verbs, 66, 98, 162.
sub with accusative and ablative, 368 (a).
subject, of finite verb, 17; agreement of verb, 18; of infinitive, 342; not expressed, 13.
subjunctive, 583, 657; translation of, 449 (b);
formation of, 449, 457;
in causal clauses, 516;
in circumstantial clauses, 515;
in concessive clauses, 517;
in conditional clauses, 524, 525, 528;
in purpose clauses, 450;
in result clauses, 485;
in temporal clauses, 515 (a);
in indirect discourse, 468;
in indirect questions, 470.
Suffixes, 149, 172, 303 (a), 349, note, 381, note, 433, 510 (b), 526, 533 (d).
suī, declension, 604.
sum, 40; conjugation, 614.
Supplementary Reading,
Story of Perseus, pages 343–346;
Story of Ulysses, pages 347–358.
suus, 395.
syllables, how many, how divided, quantity, Introduction VII, VIII.
synopsis, 108, 652.

T

temporal clauses, 515 (a).
tenses, 661–666;
principal and historical, 460;
sequence of, 461.
time, when, 245;
duration of, 328.
towns, construction with names of, 443.
tuus, formation and declension, 395.

U

ūnus, declension [illegible] 7.
ut, in[illegible] ng [illegible] uses of pur[illegible]; of result, 485; of neg[illegible] e result (*ut nōn*), 485.
or, go[illegible] as ablative, 479, note.

V

Value of Latin, 1, 2.
verbs, 645–668; agreement of, with subject, 18, 667; personal endings, 13, 99, 160;
first conjugation, 609;
second conjugation, 610;
third conjugation, 588, 611;
verbs in -iō, 355, 613;

fourth conjugation, 612;
conjugations distinguished, 140;
stems of, how found, 66, 98, 162;
deponent, 478;
why so called, page 282, footnote 2;
how distinguished, 478;
semi-deponent, 549;
compounded with prepositions, 396, note;
impersonal, 648;
parsing, 187;
irregular: see *sum*, *possum*, *eō*, *ferō*, *fīō*, *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*.
vester, formation and declension, 395.
vīs, declension, 591.
Vocabularies, Latin-English, page 1;
English-Latin, page 49.
vocative case, 5; form of, 8 (a), 33 (b), (c).
voice, 653, 654.
volō, conjugation of, 615;
syntax of, 543.
vowels, quantity, long, short: see Introduction VI.

W

word formation, pages 379–381, 388, 389;
review of, 232, 433.

Pages

28	127	234
40	138	250
52	149	258
63	168	279
77	172	287
91	186	298
106	194	315
48	209	